NOTICE OF PROPOSED GUIDANCE DOCUMENT

MUTCD updates to Chapters 1, 2 and 6 DTSD 81

Pursuant to Wis. Stat. s. 227.112, the Wisconsin Department of Transportation is hereby seeking comment on MUTCD updates to Chapters 1, 2 and 6 DTSD 81, WI STAT Ch. 84, a proposed guidance document.

PUBLIC COMMENTS AND DEADLINE FOR SUBMISSION

Comments may be submitted to the Wisconsin Department of Transportation for 21 days by:

1. Department's website: https://appengine.egov.com/apps/wi/dot/guidance-docs?guidDocId=DTSD81
2. Mailing written comments to:

Division of Transportation System Development
Wisconsin Department of Transportation
4822 Madison Yards Way
PO Box 7965
Madison, WI 53707-7965

WEBSITE LOCATION OF FINAL GUIDANCE DOCUMENT

The final version of this guidance document will be posted at wisconsindot.gov to allow for ongoing comment.

AGENCY CONTACT

dotdtsdguidancedocs@dot.wi.gov

PART 1. GENERAL

CHAPTER 1A. GENERAL

CHAPTER 1A. GENERAL

Section 1A.01 Purpose of Traffic Control Devices

Support:

1 The purpose of traffic control devices, as well as the principles for their use, is to promote highway safety and efficiency by providing for the orderly movement of all road users on streets, highways, bikeways, and private roads open to public travel throughout the Nation.

2 Traffic control devices notify road users of regulations and provide warning and guidance needed for the uniform and efficient operation of all elements of the traffic stream in a manner intended to minimize the occurrences of crashes.

Standard:

3 **Traffic control devices or their supports shall not bear any advertising message or any other message that is not related to traffic control.**

Support:

4 Tourist-oriented directional signs and Specific Service signs are not considered advertising; rather, they are classified as motorist service signs.

Section 1A.02 Principles of Traffic Control Devices

Support:

1 This Manual contains the basic principles that govern the design and use of traffic control devices for all streets, highways, bikeways, and private roads open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13) regardless of type or class or the public agency, official, or owner having jurisdiction. This Manual's text specifies the restriction on the use of a device if it is intended for limited application or for a specific system. It is important that these principles be given primary consideration in the selection and application of each device.

Guidance:

2 *To be effective, a traffic control device should meet five basic requirements:*

- *a. Fulfill a need;*
- *b. Command attention;*
- *c. Convey a clear, simple meaning;*
- *d. Command respect from road users; and*
- *e. Give adequate time for proper response.*

3 *Design, placement, operation, maintenance, and uniformity are aspects that should be carefully considered in order to maximize the ability of a traffic control device to meet the five requirements listed in the previous paragraph. Vehicle speed should be carefully considered as an element that governs the design, operation, placement, and location of various traffic control devices.*

Support:

4 The definition of the word "speed" varies depending on its use. The definitions of specific speed terms are contained in Section 1A.13.

Guidance:

5 *The actions required of road users to obey regulatory devices should be specified by State statute, or in cases not covered by State statute, by local ordinance or resolution. Such statutes, ordinances, and resolutions should be consistent with the "Uniform Vehicle Code" (see Section 1A.11).*

6 *The proper use of traffic control devices should provide the reasonable and prudent road user with the information necessary to efficiently and lawfully use the streets, highways, pedestrian facilities, and bikeways.*

Support:

7 Uniformity of the meaning of traffic control devices is vital to their effectiveness. The meanings ascribed to devices in this Manual are in general accord with the publications mentioned in Section 1A.11.

Section 1A.03 Design of Traffic Control Devices

Guidance:

1 *Devices should be designed so that features such as size, shape, color, composition, lighting or retroreflection, and contrast are combined to draw attention to the devices; that size, shape, color, and simplicity of message combine to*

produce a clear meaning; that legibility and size combine with placement to permit adequate time for response; and that uniformity, size, legibility, and reasonableness of the message combine to command respect.

2 *Aspects of a device's standard design should be modified only if there is a demonstrated need.*

Support:

3 An example of modifying a device's design would be to modify the Combination Horizontal Alignment/Intersection (W1-10) sign to show intersecting side roads on both sides rather than on just one side of the major road within the curve.

Option:

4 With the exception of symbols and colors, minor modifications in the specific design elements of a device may be made provided the essential appearance characteristics are preserved.

Section 1A.04 Placement and Operation of Traffic Control Devices

Guidance:

1 *Placement of a traffic control device should be within the road user's view so that adequate visibility is provided. To aid in conveying the proper meaning, the traffic control device should be appropriately positioned with respect to the location, object, or situation to which it applies. The location and legibility of the traffic control device should be such that a road user has adequate time to make the proper response in both day and night conditions.*

2 *Traffic control devices should be placed and operated in a uniform and consistent manner.*

3 *Unnecessary traffic control devices should be removed. The fact that a device is in good physical condition should not be a basis for deferring needed removal or change.*

Section 1A.05 Maintenance of Traffic Control Devices

Guidance:

1 *Functional maintenance of traffic control devices should be used to determine if certain devices need to be changed to meet current traffic conditions.*

2 *Physical maintenance of traffic control devices should be performed to retain the legibility and visibility of the device, and to retain the proper functioning of the device.*

Support:

3 Clean, legible, properly mounted devices in good working condition command the respect of road users.

Section 1A.06 Uniformity of Traffic Control Devices

Support:

1 Uniformity of devices simplifies the task of the road user because it aids in recognition and understanding, thereby reducing perception/reaction time. Uniformity assists road users, law enforcement officers, and traffic courts by giving everyone the same interpretation. Uniformity assists public highway officials through efficiency in manufacture, installation, maintenance, and administration. Uniformity means treating similar situations in a similar way. The use of uniform traffic control devices does not, in itself, constitute uniformity. A standard device used where it is not appropriate is as objectionable as a non-standard device; in fact, this might be worse, because such misuse might result in disrespect at those locations where the device is needed and appropriate.

Section 1A.07 Responsibility for Traffic Control Devices

Standard:

1 **The responsibility for the design, placement, operation, maintenance, and uniformity of traffic control devices shall rest with the public agency or the official having jurisdiction, or, in the case of private roads open to public travel, with the private owner or private official having jurisdiction. 23 CFR 655.603 adopts the MUTCD as the national standard for all traffic control devices installed on any street, highway, bikeway, or private road open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13). When a State or other Federal agency manual or supplement is required, that manual or supplement shall be in substantial conformance with the National MUTCD.**

2 **23 CFR 655.603 also states that traffic control devices on all streets, highways, bikeways, and private roads open to public travel in each State shall be in substantial conformance with standards issued or endorsed by the Federal Highway Administrator.**

The Department is responsible for the installation, maintenance and operation of traffic control devices on the State Trunk Highway System and for such devices as it erects on the detours thereof, and for guide signs (route markers and other directional signs) on Connecting Highways. No traffic control devices shall be placed upon the State Trunk Highway System except by authorization of the Department or pursuant to Wisconsin Statutes.
Stop and Yield signs and traffic control signals which control traffic proceeding along a Connecting Highway shall not be placed without the approval of the Department.

Support:

3 The Introduction of this Manual contains information regarding the meaning of substantial conformance and the applicability of the MUTCD to private roads open to public travel.

4 The "Uniform Vehicle Code" (see Section 1A.11) has the following provision in Section 15-104 for the adoption of a uniform manual:

> "(a) The [State Highway Agency] shall adopt a manual and specification for a uniform system of traffic control devices consistent with the provisions of this code for use upon highways within this State. Such uniform system shall correlate with and so far as possible conform to the system set forth in the most recent edition of the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, and other standards issued or endorsed by the Federal Highway Administrator."
>
> "(b) The Manual adopted pursuant to subsection (a) shall have the force and effect of law."

5 All States have officially adopted the National MUTCD either in its entirety, with supplemental provisions, or as a separate published document.

Guidance:

6 *These individual State manuals or supplements should be reviewed for specific provisions relating to that State.*

Support:

7 The National MUTCD has also been adopted by the National Park Service, the U.S. Forest Service, the U.S. Military Command, the Bureau of Indian Affairs, the Bureau of Land Management, and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

Guidance:

8 *States should adopt Section 15-116 of the "Uniform Vehicle Code," which states that, "No person shall install or maintain in any area of private property used by the public any sign, signal, marking, or other device intended to regulate, warn, or guide traffic unless it conforms with the State manual and specifications adopted under Section 15-104."*

9 *Wis. Stat. s. 349.07 provides department authority to declare connecting highways as "through highways," which thereby prohibits local governments from placing stop or yield signs those connecting highways, except for temporary signs erected under Wis. Stat. s. 349.07*

Section 1A.08 Authority for Placement of Traffic Control Devices

Standard:

1 **Traffic control devices, advertisements, announcements, and other signs or messages within the highway right-of-way shall be placed only as authorized by a public authority or the official having jurisdiction, or, in the case of private roads open to public travel, by the private owner or private official having jurisdiction, for the purpose of regulating, warning, or guiding traffic.**

2 **When the public agency or the official having jurisdiction over a street or highway or, in the case of private roads open to public travel, the private owner or private official having jurisdiction, has granted proper authority, others such as contractors and public utility companies shall be permitted to install temporary traffic control devices in temporary traffic control zones. Such traffic control devices shall conform with the Standards of this Manual.**

3 **All regulatory traffic control devices shall be supported by laws, ordinances, or regulations.**

Support:

4 Provisions of this Manual are based upon the concept that effective traffic control depends upon both appropriate application of the devices and reasonable enforcement of the regulations.

5 Although some highway design features, such as curbs, median barriers, guardrails, speed humps or tables, and textured pavement, have a significant impact on traffic operations and safety, they are not considered to be traffic control devices and provisions regarding their design and use are generally not included in this Manual.

6 Certain types of signs and other devices that do not have any traffic control purpose are sometimes placed within the highway right-of-way by or with the permission of the public agency or the official having jurisdiction over the street or highway. Most of these signs and other devices are not intended for use by road users in general, and their message is only important to individuals who have been instructed in their meanings. These signs and other devices are not considered to be traffic control devices and provisions regarding their design and use are not included in this Manual. Among these signs and other devices are the following:

A. Devices whose purpose is to assist highway maintenance personnel. Examples include markers to guide snowplow operators, devices that identify culvert and drop inlet locations, and devices that precisely identify highway locations for maintenance or mowing purposes.
B. Devices whose purpose is to assist fire or law enforcement personnel. Examples include markers that identify fire hydrant locations, signs that identify fire or water district boundaries, speed measurement pavement markings, small indicator lights to assist in enforcement of red light violations, and photo enforcement systems.
C. Devices whose purpose is to assist utility company personnel and highway contractors, such as markers that identify underground utility locations.
D. Signs posting local non-traffic ordinances.
E. Signs giving civic organization meeting information.

Standard:

7 **Signs and other devices that do not have any traffic control purpose that are placed within the highway right-of-way shall not be located where they will interfere with, or detract from, traffic control devices.**

Guidance:

8 *Any unauthorized traffic control device or other sign or message placed on the highway right-of-way by a private organization or individual constitutes a public nuisance and should be removed. All unofficial or non-essential traffic control devices, signs, or messages should be removed.*

Section 1A.09 Engineering Study and Engineering Judgment

Support:

1 Definitions of an engineering study and engineering judgment are contained in Section 1A.13.

Standard:

2 **This Manual describes the application of traffic control devices, but shall not be a legal requirement for their installation.**

3 **Nothing in this manual shall be construed to create a ministerial duty for any highway official to engineer or design a highway facility or a device placed on the facility in a particular manner. The decision to use a particular device at a particular location involves the application of engineering judgment and involves the weighing of the risks created by a design or device against the informative and safety benefits of that design or device.**

Guidance:

4 *The decision to use a particular device at a particular location should be made on the basis of either an engineering study or the application of engineering judgment. Thus, while this Manual provides Standards, Guidance, and Options for design and applications of traffic control devices, this Manual should not be considered a substitute for engineering judgment. Engineering judgment should be exercised in the selection and application of traffic control devices, as well as in the location and design of roads and streets that the devices complement.*

5 *Early in the processes of location and design of roads and streets, engineers should coordinate such location and design with the design and placement of the traffic control devices to be used with such roads and streets.*

6 *Jurisdictions, or owners of private roads open to public travel, with responsibility for traffic control that do not have engineers on their staffs who are trained and/or experienced in traffic control devices should seek engineering assistance from others, such as the State transportation agency, their county, a nearby large city, or a traffic engineering consultant.*

Support:

7 As part of the Federal-aid Program, each State is required to have a Local Technical Assistance Program (LTAP) and to provide technical assistance to local highway agencies. Requisite technical training in the application of the principles of the MUTCD is available from the State's Local Technical Assistance Program for needed engineering guidance and assistance.

Standard:

8 **Performance of engineering studies and exercising engineering judgment are presumed to include the use of Engineering Technicians or other qualified personnel who are trained in the principles and practices of traffic engineering studies or traffic control devices, and whose normal duties include performing engineering studies and designing, placing, operating and maintaining traffic control devices within a jurisdiction.**

Section 1A.10 Interpretations, Experimentations, Changes, and Interim Approvals

Standard:

1 **Design, application, and placement of traffic control devices other than those adopted in this Manual shall be prohibited unless the provisions of this Section are followed.**

The Department shall be sent copies of any correspondence sent to FHWA for permission to experiment, interim approval or changes. Copies of the correspondence shall be sent to the Wisconsin Department of Transportation, Bureau of Traffic Operations, 4822 Madison Yards Way, 5th Floor, and Madison, WI 53707 Attn: State Traffic Engineer.

Support:

2 Continuing advances in technology will produce changes in the highway, vehicle, and road user proficiency; therefore, portions of the system of traffic control devices in this Manual will require updating. In addition, unique situations often arise for device applications that might require interpretation or clarification of this Manual. It is important to have a procedure for recognizing these developments and for introducing new ideas and modifications into the system.

Standard:

3 **Except as provided in Paragraph 4, requests for any interpretation, permission to experiment, interim approval, or change shall be submitted electronically to the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA), Office of Transportation Operations, MUTCD team, at the following e-mail address: MUTCDofficialrequest@dot.gov.**

Option:

4 If electronic submittal is not possible, requests for interpretations, permission to experiment, interim approvals, or changes may instead be mailed to the Office of Transportation Operations, HOTO-1, Federal Highway Administration, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20590.

Support:

5 Communications regarding other MUTCD matters that are not related to official requests will receive quicker attention if they are submitted electronically to the MUTCD Team Leader or to the appropriate individual MUTCD team member. Their e-mail addresses are available through the links contained on the "Who's Who" page on the MUTCD website at http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/team.htm.

6 An interpretation includes a consideration of the application and operation of standard traffic control devices, official meanings of standard traffic control devices, or the variations from standard device designs.

Guidance:

7 *Requests for an interpretation of this Manual should contain the following information:*

A. A concise statement of the interpretation being sought;
B. A description of the condition that provoked the need for an interpretation;
C. Any illustration that would be helpful to understand the request; and
D. *Any supporting research data that is pertinent to the item to be interpreted.*

Support:

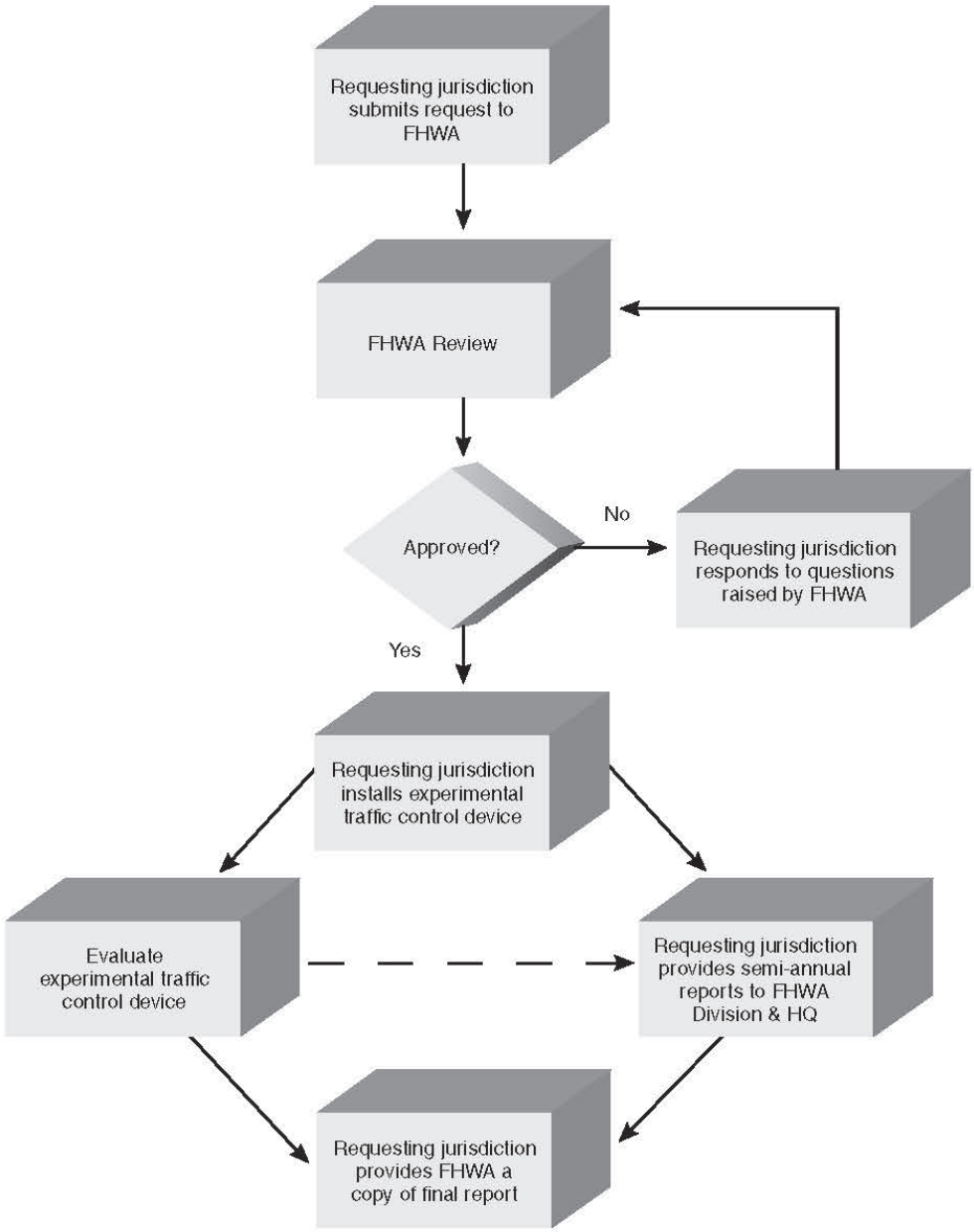
8 Requests to experiment include consideration of field deployment for the purpose of testing or evaluating a new traffic control device, its application or manner of use, or a provision not specifically described in this Manual.

9 A request for permission to experiment will be considered only when submitted by the public agency or toll facility operator responsible for the operation of the road or street on which the experiment is to take place. For a private

road open to public travel, the request will be considered only if it is submitted by the private owner or private official having jurisdiction.

10 A diagram indicating the process for experimenting with traffic control devices is shown in Figure 1A-1.

Figure 1A-1. Process for Requesting and Conducting Experimentations for New Traffic Control Devices



Guidance:

11 *The request for permission to experiment should contain the following:*

A. A statement indicating the nature of the problem.
B. A description of the proposed change to the traffic control device or application of the traffic control device, how it was developed, the manner in which it deviates from the standard, and how it is expected to be an improvement over existing standards.
C. Any illustration that would be helpful to understand the traffic control device or use of the traffic control device.
D. Any supporting data explaining how the traffic control device was developed, if it has been tried, in what ways it was found to be adequate or inadequate, and how this choice of device or application was derived.
E. A legally binding statement certifying that the concept of the traffic control device is not protected by a patent or copyright. (An example of a traffic control device concept would be countdown pedestrian signals

in general. Ordinarily an entire general concept would not be patented or copyrighted, but if it were it would not be acceptable for experimentation unless the patent or copyright owner signs a waiver of rights acceptable to the FHWA. An example of a patented or copyrighted specific device within the general concept of countdown pedestrian signals would be a manufacturer's design for its specific brand of countdown signal, including the design details of the housing or electronics that are unique to that manufacturer's product. As long as the general concept is not patented or copyrighted, it is acceptable for experimentation to incorporate the use of one or more patented devices of one or several manufacturers.)

F. *The time period and location(s) of the experiment.*
G. *A detailed research or evaluation plan that must provide for close monitoring of the experimentation, especially in the early stages of its field implementation. The evaluation plan should include before and after studies as well as quantitative data describing the performance of the experimental device.*
H. *An agreement to restore the site of the experiment to a condition that complies with the provisions of this Manual within 3 months following the end of the time period of the experiment. This agreement must also provide that the agency sponsoring the experimentation will terminate the experimentation at any time that it determines significant safety concerns are directly or indirectly attributable to the experimentation. The FHWA's Office of Transportation Operations has the right to terminate approval of the experimentation at any time if there is an indication of safety concerns. If, as a result of the experimentation, a request is made that this Manual be changed to include the device or application being experimented with, the device or application will be permitted to remain in place until an official rulemaking action has occurred.*
I. *An agreement to provide semi-annual progress reports for the duration of the experimentation, and an agreement to provide a copy of the final results of the experimentation to the FHWA's Office of Transportation Operations within 3 months following completion of the experimentation. The FHWA's Office of Transportation Operations has the right to terminate approval of the experimentation if reports are not provided in accordance with this schedule.*

Support:

12 A change includes consideration of a new device to replace a present standard device, an additional device to be added to the list of standard devices, or a revision to a traffic control device application or placement criteria.

Guidance:

13 *Requests for a change to this Manual should contain the following information:*

a. A statement indicating what change is proposed;
b. Any illustration that would be helpful to understand the request; and
c. Any supporting research data that is pertinent to the item to be reviewed.

Support:

14 Interim approval allows interim use, pending official rulemaking, of a new traffic control device, a revision to the application or manner of use of an existing traffic control device, or a provision not specifically described in this Manual. The FHWA issues an Interim Approval by official memorandum signed by the Associate Administrator for Operations and posts this memorandum on the MUTCD website. The issuance by FHWA of an interim approval will typically result in the traffic control device or application being placed into the next scheduled rulemaking process for revisions to this Manual.

15 Interim approval is considered based on the results of successful experimentation, results of analytical or laboratory studies, and/or review of non-U.S. experience with a traffic control device or application. Interim approval considerations include an assessment of relative risks, benefits, costs, impacts, and other factors.

16 Interim approval allows for optional use of a traffic control device or application and does not create a new mandate or recommendation for use. Interim approval includes conditions that jurisdictions agree to comply with in order to use the traffic control device or application until an official rulemaking action has occurred.

Standard:

17 **A jurisdiction, toll facility operator, or owner of a private road open to public travel that desires to use a traffic control device for which FHWA has issued an interim approval shall request permission from FHWA.**

Guidance:

18 *The request for permission to place a traffic control device under an interim approval should contain the following:*

1 A description of where the device will be used, such as a list of specific locations or highway segments or types of situations, or a statement of the intent to use the device jurisdiction-wide;

An agreement to abide by the specific conditions for use of the device as contained in the FHWA's interim approval document;

An agreement to maintain and continually update a list of locations where the device has been installed; and

An agreement to:

1. *Restore the site(s) of the interim approval to a condition that complies with the provisions in this Manual within 3 months following the issuance of a Final Rule on this traffic control device; and*
2. *Terminate use of the device or application installed under the interim approval at any time that it determines significant safety concerns are directly or indirectly attributable to the device or application. The FHWA's Office of Transportation Operations has the right to terminate the interim approval at any time if there is an indication of safety concerns.*

Option:

19 A State may submit a request for the use of a device under interim approval for all jurisdictions in that State, as long as the request contains the information listed in Paragraph 18.

Guidance:

20 *A local jurisdiction, toll facility operator, or owner of a private road open to public travel using a traffic control device or application under an interim approval that was granted by FHWA either directly or on a statewide basis based on the State's request should inform the State of the locations of such use.*

21 *A local jurisdiction, toll facility operator, or owner of a private road open to public travel that is requesting permission to experiment or permission to use a device or application under an interim approval should first check for any State laws and/or directives covering the application of the MUTCD provisions that might exist in their State.*

Option:

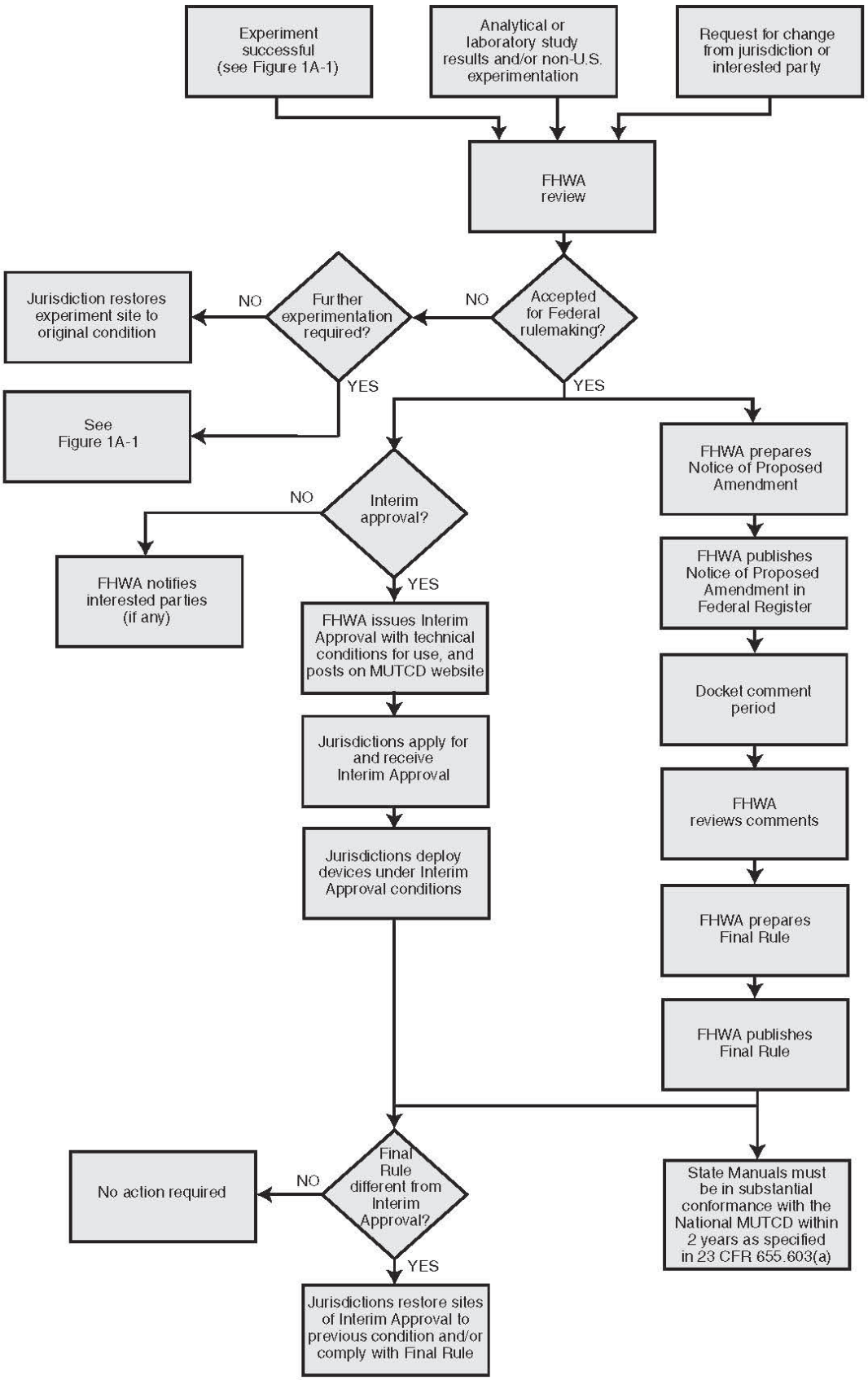
22 A device or application installed under an interim approval may remain in place, under the conditions established in the interim approval, until an official rulemaking action has occurred.

Support:

23 A diagram indicating the process for incorporating new traffic control devices into this Manual is shown in Figure 1A-2.

24 For additional information concerning interpretations, experimentation, changes, or interim approvals, visit the MUTCD website at http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov.

Figure 1A-2. Process for Incorporating New Traffic Control Devices into the MUTCD



Section 1A.11 Relation to Other Publications

Standard:

1 **To the extent that they are incorporated by specific reference, the latest editions of the following publications, or those editions specifically noted, shall be a part of this Manual: "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (FHWA); and "Color Specifications for Retroreflective Sign and Pavement Marking Materials" (appendix to subpart F of Part 655 of Title 23 of the Code of Federal Regulations).**

Support:

2 The "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book includes standard alphabets and symbols and arrows for signs and pavement markings.

3 For information about the publications mentioned in Paragraph 1, visit the Federal Highway Administration's MUTCD website at http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov, or write to the FHWA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, HOTO, Washington, DC 20590.

4 Other publications that are useful sources of information with respect to the use of this Manual are listed in this paragraph. See Page i of this Manual for ordering information for the following publications (later editions might also be available as useful sources of information):

1. "AAA School Safety Patrol Operations Manual," 2006 Edition (American Automobile Association—AAA)
2. "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets," 2004 Edition (American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials—AASHTO)
3. "Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities," 1999 Edition (AASHTO)
4. "Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities," 2004 Edition (AASHTO)
5. "Guide to Metric Conversion," 1993 Edition (AASHTO)
6. "Guidelines for the Selection of Supplemental Guide Signs for Traffic Generators Adjacent to Freeways," 4th Edition/Guide Signs, Part II: Guidelines for Airport Guide Signing/Guide Signs, Part III: List of Control Cities for Use in Guide Signs on Interstate Highways," Item Code: GSGLC-4, 2001 Edition (AASHTO)
7. "Roadside Design Guide," 2006 Edition (AASHTO)
8. "Standard Specifications for Movable Highway Bridges," 1988 Edition (AASHTO)
9. "Traffic Engineering Metric Conversion Folders—Addendum to the Guide to Metric Conversion," 1993 Edition (AASHTO)
10. "2009 AREMA Communications & Signals Manual," (American Railway Engineering & Maintenance-of-Way Association—AREMA)
11. "Changeable Message Sign Operation and Messaging Handbook (FHWA-OP-03-070)," 2004 Edition (Federal Highway Administration—FHWA)
12. "Designing Sidewalks and Trails for Access—Part 2—Best Practices Design Guide (FHWA-EP-01-027)," 2001 Edition (FHWA)
13. "Federal-Aid Highway Program Guidance on High Occupancy Vehicle (HOV) Lanes," 2001 (FHWA)
14. "Maintaining Traffic Sign Retroreflectivity," 2007 Edition (FHWA)
15. "Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Handbook—Revised Second Edition (FHWA-SA-07-010)," 2007 Edition (FHWA)
16. "Ramp Management and Control Handbook (FHWA-HOP-06-001)," 2006 Edition (FHWA)
17. "Roundabouts-An Informational Guide (FHWA-RD-00-067)," 2000 Edition (FHWA)
18. "Signal Timing Manual (FHWA-HOP-08-024)," 2008 Edition (FHWA)
19. "Signalized Intersections: an Informational Guide (FHWA-HRT-04-091)," 2004 Edition (FHWA)
20. "Travel Better, Travel Longer: A Pocket Guide to Improving Traffic Control and Mobility for Our Older Population (FHWA-OP-03-098)," 2003 Edition (FHWA)
21. "Practice for Roadway Lighting," RP-8, 2001 (Illuminating Engineering Society—IES)
22. "Safety Guide for the Prevention of Radio Frequency Radiation Hazards in the Use of Commercial Electric Detonators (Blasting Caps)," Safety Library Publication No. 20, July 2001 Edition (Institute of Makers of Explosives)
23. "American National Standard for High-Visibility Public Safety Vests," (ANSI/ISEA 207-2006), 2006 Edition (International Safety Equipment Association—ISEA)
24. "American National Standard for High-Visibility Safety Apparel and Headwear," (ANSI/ISEA 107-2004), 2004 Edition (ISEA)
25. "Manual of Traffic Signal Design," 1998 Edition (Institute of Transportation Engineers—ITE)
26. "Manual of Transportation Engineering Studies," 1994 Edition (ITE)

27. "Pedestrian Traffic Control Signal Indications," Part 1—1985 Edition; Part 2 (LED Pedestrian Traffic Signal Modules)—2004 Edition (ITE)
28. "Preemption of Traffic Signals Near Railroad Crossings," 2006 Edition (ITE)
29. "Purchase Specification for Flashing and Steady Burn Warning Lights," 1981 Edition (ITE)
30. "Traffic Control Devices Handbook," 2001 Edition (ITE)
31. "Traffic Detector Handbook," 1991 Edition (ITE)
32. "Traffic Engineering Handbook," 2009 Edition (ITE)
33. "Traffic Signal Lamps," 1980 Edition (ITE)
34. "Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads," Part 1—1985 Edition; Part 2 (LED Circular Signal Supplement)—2005 Edition; Part 3 (LED Vehicular Arrow Traffic Signal Supplement)—2004 Edition (ITE)
35. "Uniform Vehicle Code (UVC) and Model Traffic Ordinance," 2000 Edition (National Committee on Uniform Traffic Laws and Ordinances—NCUTLO)
36. "NEMA Standards Publication TS 4-2005 Hardware Standards for Dynamic Message Signs (DMS) With NTCIP Requirements," 2005 Edition (National Electrical Manufacturers Association—NEMA)
37. "Occupational Safety and Health Administration Regulations (Standards - 29 CFR), General Safety and Health Provisions - 1926.20," amended June 30, 1993 (Occupational Safety and Health Administration—OSHA)
38. "Accessible Pedestrian Signals—A Guide to Best Practices (NCHRP Web-Only Document 117A)," 2008 Edition (Transportation Research Board—TRB)
39. "Guidelines for Accessible Pedestrian Signals (NCHRP Web-Only Document 117B)," 2008 Edition (TRB)
40. "Highway Capacity Manual," 2000 Edition (TRB)
41. "Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Features," (NCHRP Report 350), 1993 Edition (TRB)
42. "The Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)," July 1998 Edition (The U.S. Access Board)
43. Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH 2016), 2016 Second Edition (AASHTO)

Section 1A.12 Color Code

Support:

1 The following color code establishes general meanings for 11 colors of a total of 13 colors that have been identified as being appropriate for use in conveying traffic control information. Tolerance limits for each color are contained in 23 CFR Part 655, Appendix to Subpart F and are available at the Federal Highway Administration's MUTCD website at http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov or by writing to the FHWA, Office of Safety Research and Development (HRD-T-301), 6300 Georgetown Pike, McLean, VA 22101.

2 The two colors for which general meanings have not yet been assigned are being reserved for future applications that will be determined only by FHWA after consultation with the States, the engineering community, and the general public. The meanings described in this Section are of a general nature. More specific assignments of colors are given in the individual Parts of this Manual relating to each class of devices.

Standard:

3 **The general meaning of the 13 colors shall be as follows:**

A. **Black—regulation**
B. **Blue—road user services guidance, tourist information, and evacuation route**
C. **Brown—recreational and cultural interest area guidance**
D. **Coral—unassigned**
E. **Fluorescent Pink—incident management**
F. **Fluorescent Yellow-Green—pedestrian warning, bicycle warning, playground warning, school bus and school warning**
G. **Green—indicated movements permitted, direction guidance**
H. **Light Blue—unassigned**
I. **Orange—temporary traffic control**
J. **Purple—lanes restricted to use only by vehicles with registered electronic toll collection (ETC) accounts**
K. **Red—stop or prohibition**
L. **White—regulation**
M. **Yellow—warning**

Section 1A.13 Definitions of Headings, Words, and Phrases in this Manual

Standard:

1 **When used in this Manual, the text headings of Standard, Guidance, Option, and Support shall be defined as follows:**

A. Standard—a statement of required, mandatory, or specifically prohibitive practice regarding a traffic control device. All Standard statements are labeled, and the text appears in bold type. The verb "shall" is typically used. The verbs "should" and "may" are not used in Standard statements. Standard statements are sometimes modified by Options.

Standard statements shall not be modified or compromised based on engineering judgment or engineering study, except as described in Section 1A.09.

B. Guidance—a statement of recommended, but not mandatory, practice in typical situations, with deviations allowed if engineering judgment or engineering study indicates the deviation to be appropriate. All Guidance statements are labeled, and the text appears in unbold type. The verb "should" is typically used. The verbs "shall" and "may" are not used in Guidance statements. Guidance statements are sometimes modified by Options.

C. Option—a statement of practice that is a permissive condition and carries no requirement or recommendation. Option statements sometime contain allowable modifications to a Standard or Guidance statement. All Option statements are labeled, and the text appears in unbold type. The verb "may" is typically used. The verbs "shall" and "should" are not used in Option statements.

D. Support—an informational statement that does not convey any degree of mandate, recommendation, authorization, prohibition, or enforceable condition. Support statements are labeled, and the text appears in unbold type. The verbs "shall," "should," and "may" are not used in Support statements.

2 **Unless otherwise defined in this Section, or in other Parts of this Manual, words or phrases shall have the meaning(s) as defined in the most recent editions of the "Uniform Vehicle Code," "AASHTO Transportation Glossary (Highway Definitions)," and other publications mentioned in Section 1A.11.**

3 **The following words and phrases, when used in this Manual, shall have the following meanings:**

1. **Accessible Pedestrian Signal—a device that communicates information about pedestrian signal timing in non-visual format such as audible tones, speech messages, and/or vibrating surfaces.**
2. **Accessible Pedestrian Signal Detector—a device designated to assist the pedestrian who has visual or physical disabilities in activating the pedestrian phase.**
3. **Active Grade Crossing Warning System—the flashing-light signals, with or without warning gates, together with the necessary control equipment used to inform road users of the approach or presence of rail traffic at grade crossings.**
4. **Actuated Operation—a type of traffic control signal operation in which some or all signal phases are operated on the basis of actuation.**
5. **Actuation—initiation of a change in or extension of a traffic signal phase through the operation of any type of detector.**
6. **Advance Preemption—the notification of approaching rail traffic that is forwarded to the highway traffic signal controller unit or assembly by the railroad or light rail transit equipment in advance of the activation of the railroad or light rail transit warning devices.**
7. **Advance Preemption Time—the period of time that is the difference between the required maximum highway traffic signal preemption time and the activation of the railroad or light rail transit warning devices.**
8. **Advisory Speed—a recommended speed for all vehicles operating on a section of highway and based on the highway design, operating characteristics, and conditions.**
9. **Alley—a street or highway intended to provide access to the rear or side of lots or buildings in urban areas and not intended for the purpose of through vehicular traffic.**
10. **Altered Speed Zone—a speed limit, other than a statutory speed limit, that is based upon an engineering study.**
11. **Approach—all lanes of traffic moving toward an intersection or a midblock location from one direction, including any adjacent parking lane(s).**
12. **Arterial Highway (Street)—a general term denoting a highway primarily used by through traffic, usually on a continuous route or a highway designated as part of an arterial system.**

13. **Attended Lane (Manual Lane)—a toll lane adjacent to a toll booth occupied by a human toll collector who makes change, issues receipts, and perform other toll-related functions. Attended lanes at toll plazas typically require vehicles to stop to pay the toll.**
14. **Automatic Lane—see Exact Change Lane.**
15. **Average Annual Daily Traffic (AADT)—the total volume of traffic passing a point or segment of a highway facility in both directions for one year divided by the number of days in the year. Normally, periodic daily traffic volumes are adjusted for hours of the day counted, days of the week, and seasons of the year to arrive at average annual daily traffic.**
16. **Average Daily Traffic (ADT)—the average 24 hour volume, being the total volume during a stated period divided by the number of days in that period. Normally, this would be periodic daily traffic volumes over several days, not adjusted for days of the week or seasons of the year.**
17. **Average Day—a day representing traffic volumes normally and repeatedly found at a location, typically a weekday when volumes are influenced by employment or a weekend day when volumes are influenced by entertainment or recreation.**
18. **Backplate—see Signal Backplate.**
19. **Barrier-Separated Lane—a preferential lane or other special purpose lane that is separated from the adjacent general-purpose lane(s) by a physical barrier.**
20. **Beacon—a highway traffic signal with one or more signal sections that operates in a flashing mode.**
21. **Bicycle—a pedal-powered vehicle upon which the human operator sits.**
22. **Bicycle Facilities—a general term denoting improvements and provisions that accommodate or encourage bicycling, including parking and storage facilities, and shared roadways not specifically defined for bicycle use.**
23. **Bicycle Lane—a portion of a roadway that has been designated for preferential or exclusive use by bicyclists by pavement markings and, if used, signs.**
24. **Bikeway—a generic term for any road, street, path, or way that in some manner is specifically designated for bicycle travel, regardless of whether such facilities are designated for the exclusive use of bicycles or are to be shared with other transportation modes.**
25. **Buffer-Separated Lane—a preferential lane or other special purpose lane that is separated from the adjacent general-purpose lane(s) by a pattern of standard longitudinal pavement markings that is wider than a normal or wide lane line marking. The buffer area might include rumble strips, textured pavement, or channelizing devices such as tubular markers or traversable curbs, but does not include a physical barrier.**
26. **Cantilevered Signal Structure—a structure, also referred to as a mast arm, that is rigidly attached to a vertical pole and is used to provide overhead support of highway traffic signal faces or grade crossing signal units.**
27. **Center Line Markings—the yellow pavement marking line(s) that delineates the separation of traffic lanes that have opposite directions of travel on a roadway. These markings need not be at the geometrical center of the pavement.**
28. **Changeable Message Sign—a sign that is capable of displaying more than one message (one of which might be a "blank" display), changeable manually, by remote control, or by automatic control. Electronic-display changeable message signs are referred to as Dynamic Message Signs in the National Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS) Architecture and are referred to as Variable Message Signs in the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) standards publication.**
29. **Channelizing Line Markings—a solid wide or double white line used to form islands where traffic in the same direction of travel is permitted on both sides of the island.**
30. **Circular Intersection—an intersection that has an island, generally circular in design, located in the center of the intersection where traffic passes to the right of the island. Circular intersections include roundabouts, rotaries, and traffic circles.**
31. **Circulatory Roadway—the roadway within a circular intersection on which traffic travels in a counterclockwise direction around an island in the center of the circular intersection.**
32. **Clear Storage Distance—when used in Part 8, the distance available for vehicle storage measured between 6 feet from the rail nearest the intersection to the intersection stop line or the normal stopping point on the highway. At skewed grade crossings and intersections, the 6-foot distance shall be measured perpendicular to the nearest rail either along the center line or edge line of the highway, as appropriate, to obtain the shorter distance. Where exit gates are used, the distance available for vehicle storage is measured from the point where the rear of the vehicle would be clear**

of the exit gate arm. In cases where the exit gate arm is parallel to the track(s) and is not perpendicular to the highway, the distance is measured either along the center line or edge line of the highway, as appropriate, to obtain the shorter distance.

33. **Clear Zone—the total roadside border area, starting at the edge of the traveled way, that is available for an errant driver to stop or regain control of a vehicle. This area might consist of a shoulder, a recoverable slope, and/or a non-recoverable, traversable slope with a clear run-out area at its toe. See 2A.16-7.**
34. **Collector Highway—a term denoting a highway that in rural areas connects small towns and local highways to arterial highways, and in urban areas provides land access and traffic circulation within residential, commercial, and business areas and connects local highways to the arterial highways.**
35. **Concurrent Flow Preferential Lane—a preferential lane that is operated in the same direction as the adjacent mixed flow lanes, separated from the adjacent general-purpose freeway lanes by a standard lane stripe, painted buffer, or barrier.**
36. **Conflict Monitor—a device used to detect and respond to improper or conflicting signal indications and improper operating voltages in a traffic controller assembly.**
37. **Constant Warning Time Detection—a means of detecting rail traffic that provides relatively uniform warning time for the approach of trains or light rail transit traffic that are not accelerating or decelerating after being detected.**
38. **Contiguous Lane—a lane, preferential or otherwise, that is separated from the adjacent lane(s) only by a normal or wide lane line marking.**
39. **Controller Assembly—a complete electrical device mounted in a cabinet for controlling the operation of a highway traffic signal.**
40. **Controller Unit—that part of a controller assembly that is devoted to the selection and timing of the display of signal indications.**
41. **Conventional Road—a street or highway other than a low-volume road (as defined in Section 5A.01), expressway, or freeway.**
42. **Counter-Flow Lane—a lane operating in a direction opposite to the normal flow of traffic designated for peak direction of travel during at least a portion of the day. Counter-flow lanes are usually separated from the off-peak direction lanes by tubular markers or other flexible channelizing devices, temporary lane separators, or movable or permanent barrier.**
43. **Crashworthy—a characteristic of a roadside appurtenance that has been successfully crash tested in accordance with a national standard such as the National Cooperative Highway Research Program Report 350, "Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Features," or AASHTO Manual on Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH 2016). Agencies are urged to establish a process to replace existing highway safety hardware that has not been successfully tested to NCHRP Report 350 or later criteria. Agencies are encouraged to upgrade existing highway safety hardware to comply with the 2016 edition of MASH either when it becomes damaged beyond repair, or when an individual agency's policies require an upgrade to the safety hardware. Where a national standard-compliant device exists but does not meet the maintaining authority's needs given project or regional conditions, the maintaining authority may exercise engineering judgement in identifying the appropriate traffic control device.**
    Guidance: A roadside appurtenance that does not meet a national standard may be used in the clear zone, with or without protection, if the maintaining authority has concluded the appurtenance has benefits outweighing any crash risk.
44. **Crosswalk—(a) that part of a roadway at an intersection included within the connections of the lateral lines of the sidewalks on opposite sides of the highway measured from the curbs or in the absence of curbs, from the edges of the traversable roadway, and in the absence of a sidewalk on one side of the roadway, the part of a roadway included within the extension of the lateral lines of the sidewalk at right angles to the center line; (b) any portion of a roadway at an intersection or elsewhere distinctly indicated as a pedestrian crossing by pavement marking lines on the surface, which might be supplemented by contrasting pavement texture, style, or color.**
45. **Crosswalk Lines—white pavement marking lines that identify a crosswalk.**
46. **Cycle Length—the time required for one complete sequence of signal indications.**

47. **Dark Mode—the lack of all signal indications at a signalized location. (The dark mode is most commonly associated with power failures, ramp meters, hybrid beacons, beacons, and some movable bridge signals.)**
48. **Delineator—a retroreflective device mounted on the roadway surface or at the side of the roadway in a series to indicate the alignment of the roadway, especially at night or in adverse weather.**
49. **Design Vehicle—the longest vehicle permitted by statute of the road authority (State or other) on that roadway.**
50. **Designated Bicycle Route—a system of bikeways designated by the jurisdiction having authority with appropriate directional and informational route signs, with or without specific bicycle route numbers.**
51. **Detectable—having a continuous edge within 6 inches of the surface so that pedestrians who have visual disabilities can sense its presence and receive usable guidance information.**
52. **Detector—a device used for determining the presence or passage of vehicles or pedestrians.**
53. **Downstream—a term that refers to a location that is encountered by traffic subsequent to an upstream location as it flows in an "upstream to downstream" direction. For example, "the downstream end of a lane line separating the turn lane from a through lane on the approach to an intersection" is the end of the lane line that is closest to the intersection.**
54. **Dropped Lane—a through lane that becomes a mandatory turn lane on a conventional roadway, or a through lane that becomes a mandatory exit lane on a freeway or expressway. The end of an acceleration lane and reductions in the number of through lanes that do not involve a mandatory turn or exit are not considered dropped lanes.**
55. **Dual-Arrow Signal Section—a type of signal section designed to include both a yellow arrow and a green arrow.**
56. **Dynamic Envelope—the clearance required for light rail transit traffic or a train and its cargo overhang due to any combination of loading, lateral motion, or suspension failure (see Figure 8B-8).**
57. **Dynamic Exit Gate Operating Mode—a mode of operation where the exit gate operation is based on the presence of vehicles within the minimum track clearance distance.**
58. **Edge Line Markings—white or yellow pavement marking lines that delineate the right or left edge(s) of a traveled way.**
59. **Electronic Toll Collection (ETC)—a system for automated collection of tolls from moving or stopped vehicles through wireless technologies such as radio-frequency communication or optical scanning. ETC systems are classified as one of the following: (1) systems that require users to have registered toll accounts, with the use of equipment inside or on the exterior of vehicles, such as a transponder or barcode decal, that communicates with or is detected by roadside or overhead receiving equipment, or with the use of license plate optical scanning, to automatically deduct the toll from the registered user account, or (2) systems that do not require users to have registered toll accounts because vehicle license plates are optically scanned and invoices for the toll amount are sent through postal mail to the address of the vehicle owner.**
60. **Electronic Toll Collection (ETC) Account Only Lane—a non-attended toll lane that is restricted to use only by vehicles with a registered toll payment account.**
61. **Emergency-Vehicle Hybrid Beacon—a special type of hybrid beacon used to warn and control traffic at an unsignalized location to assist authorized emergency vehicles in entering or crossing a street or highway.**
62. **Emergency-Vehicle Traffic Control Signal—a special traffic control signal that assigns the right-of-way to an authorized emergency vehicle.**
63. **End-of-Roadway Marker—a device used to warn and alert road users of the end of a roadway in other than temporary traffic control zones.**
64. **Engineering Judgment—the evaluation of available pertinent information, and the application of appropriate principles, provisions, and practices as contained in this Manual and other sources, for the purpose of deciding upon the applicability, design, operation, or installation of a traffic control device. Engineering judgment shall be exercised by an engineer, or by an individual working under the supervision of an engineer, through the application of procedures and criteria established by the engineer. Documentation of engineering judgment is not required.**
Engineering judgment shall be exercised by an engineer trained and experienced in the principles and practices of traffic engineering and the administration of traffic control devices, or by an

individual working under the supervision of such an engineer, through the application of procedures and criteria established by the engineer.

65. **Engineering Study—the comprehensive analysis and evaluation of available pertinent information, and the application of appropriate principles, provisions, and practices as contained in this Manual and other sources, for the purpose of deciding upon the applicability, design, operation, or installation of a traffic control device. An engineering study shall be performed by an engineer, or by an individual working under the supervision of an engineer, through the application of procedures and criteria established by the engineer. An engineering study shall be documented. An engineering study shall be performed by an engineer trained and/or experienced in traffic engineering studies, or by an individual working under the supervision of such an engineer, through the application of procedures and criteria established by the engineer.**
66. **Entrance Gate—an automatic gate that can be lowered across the lanes approaching a grade crossing to block road users from entering the grade crossing.**
67. **Exact Change Lane (Automatic Lane)—a non-attended toll lane that has a receptacle into which road users deposit coins totaling the exact amount of the toll. Exact Change lanes at toll plazas typically require vehicles to stop to pay the toll.**
68. **Exit Gate—an automatic gate that can be lowered across the lanes departing a grade crossing to block road users from entering the grade crossing by driving in the opposing traffic lanes.**
69. **Exit Gate Clearance Time—for Four-Quadrant Gate systems at grade crossings, the amount of time provided to delay the descent of the exit gate arm(s) after entrance gate arm(s) begin to descend.**
70. **Exit Gate Operating Mode—for Four-Quadrant Gate systems at grade crossings, the mode of control used to govern the operation of the exit gate arms.**
71. **Expressway—a divided highway with partial control of access.**
72. **Flagger—a person who actively controls the flow of vehicular traffic into and/or through a temporary traffic control zone using hand-signaling devices or an Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD).**
73. **Flasher—a device used to turn highway traffic signal indications on and off at a repetitive rate of approximately once per second.**
74. **Flashing—an operation in which a light source, such as a traffic signal indication, is turned on and off repetitively.**
75. **Flashing-Light Signals—a warning device consisting of two red signal indications arranged horizontally that are activated to flash alternately when rail traffic is approaching or present at a grade crossing.**
76. **Flashing Mode—a mode of operation in which at least one traffic signal indication in each vehicular signal face of a highway traffic signal is turned on and off repetitively.**
77. **Freeway—a divided highway with full control of access.**
78. **Full-Actuated Operation—a type of traffic control signal operation in which all signal phases function on the basis of actuation.**
79. **Gate—an automatically-operated or manually-operated traffic control device that is used to physically obstruct road users such that they are discouraged from proceeding past a particular point on a roadway or pathway, or such that they are discouraged from entering a particular grade crossing, ramp, lane, roadway, or facility.**
80. **Grade Crossing—the general area where a highway and a railroad and/or light rail transit route cross at the same level, within which are included the tracks, highway, and traffic control devices for traffic traversing that area.**
81. **Guide Sign—a sign that shows route designations, destinations, directions, distances, services, points of interest, or other geographical, recreational, or cultural information.**
82. **High-Occupancy Vehicle (HOV)—a motor vehicle carrying at least two or more persons, including carpools, vanpools, and buses.**
83. **Highway—a general term for denoting a public way for purposes of vehicular travel, including the entire area within the right-of-way.**
84. **Highway-Light Rail Transit Grade Crossing—the general area where a highway and a light rail transit route cross at the same level, within which are included the light rail transit tracks, highway, and traffic control devices for traffic traversing that area.**

85. **Highway-Rail Grade Crossing—the general area where a highway and a railroad cross at the same level, within which are included the railroad tracks, highway, and traffic control devices for highway traffic traversing that area.**
86. **Highway Traffic Signal—a power-operated traffic control device by which traffic is warned or directed to take some specific action. These devices do not include power-operated signs, steadily-illuminated pavement markers, warning lights (see Section 6F.83), or steady burning electric lamps.**
87. **HOV Lane—any preferential lane designated for exclusive use by high-occupancy vehicles for all or part of a day—including a designated lane on a freeway, other highway, street, or independent roadway on a separate right-of-way.**
88. **Hybrid Beacon—a special type of beacon that is intentionally placed in a dark mode (no indications displayed) between periods of operation and, when operated, displays both steady and flashing traffic control signal indications.**
89. **Inherently Low Emission Vehicle (ILEV)—any kind of vehicle that, because of inherent properties of the fuel system design, will not have significant evaporative emissions, even if its evaporative emission control system has failed.**
90. **In-Roadway Lights—a special type of highway traffic signal installed in the roadway surface to warn road users that they are approaching a condition on or adjacent to the roadway that might not be readily apparent and might require the road users to slow down and/or come to a stop.**
91. **Interchange—a system of interconnecting roadways providing for traffic movement between two or more highways that do not intersect at grade.**
92. **Interconnection—when used in Part 8, the electrical connection between the railroad or light rail transit active warning system and the highway traffic signal controller assembly for the purpose of preemption.**
93. **Intermediate Interchange—an interchange with an urban or rural route that is not a major or minor interchange as defined in this Section.**
94. **Intersection—intersection is defined as follows:**
    a. **The area embraced within the prolongation or connection of the lateral curb lines, or if none, the lateral boundary lines of the roadways of two highways that join one another at, or approximately at, right angles, or the area within which vehicles traveling on different highways that join at any other angle might come into conflict.**
    b. **The junction of an alley or driveway with a roadway or highway shall not constitute an intersection, unless the roadway or highway at said junction is controlled by a traffic control device.**
    c. **If a highway includes two roadways that are 30 feet or more apart (see definition of Median), then every crossing of each roadway of such divided highway by an intersecting highway shall be a separate intersection.**
    d. **If both intersecting highways include two roadways that are 30 feet or more apart, then every crossing of any two roadways of such highways shall be a separate intersection.**
    e. **At a location controlled by a traffic control signal, regardless of the distance between the separate intersections as defined in (c) and (d) above:**
        i. **If a stop line, yield line, or crosswalk has not been designated on the roadway (within the median) between the separate intersections, the two intersections and the roadway (median) between them shall be considered as one intersection;**
        ii. **Where a stop line, yield line, or crosswalk is designated on the roadway on the intersection approach, the area within the crosswalk and/or beyond the designated stop line or yield line shall be part of the intersection; and**
        iii. **Where a crosswalk is designated on a roadway on the departure from the intersection, the intersection shall include the area extending to the far side of such crosswalk.**
95. **Intersection Control Beacon—a beacon used only at an intersection to control two or more directions of travel.**
96. **Interval—the part of a signal cycle during which signal indications do not change.**
97. **Interval Sequence—the order of appearance of signal indications during successive intervals of a signal cycle.**
98. **Island—a defined area between traffic lanes for control of vehicular movements, for toll collection, or for pedestrian refuge. It includes all end protection and approach treatments. Within an intersection area, a median or an outer separation is considered to be an island.**

99. **Lane Drop—see Dropped Lane.**
100. **Lane Line Markings—white pavement marking lines that delineate the separation of traffic lanes that have the same direction of travel on a roadway.**
101. **Lane-Use Control Signal—a signal face displaying indications to permit or prohibit the use of specific lanes of a roadway or to indicate the impending prohibition of such use.**
102. **Legend—see Sign Legend.**
103. **Lens—see Signal Lens.**
104. **Light Rail Transit Traffic (Light Rail Transit Equipment)—every device in, upon, or by which any person or property can be transported on light rail transit tracks, including single-unit light rail transit cars (such as streetcars and trolleys) and assemblies of multiple light rail transit cars coupled together.**
105. **Locomotive Horn—an air horn, steam whistle, or similar audible warning device (see 49 CFR Part 229.129) mounted on a locomotive or control cab car. The terms "locomotive horn," "train whistle," "locomotive whistle," and "train horn" are used interchangeably in the railroad industry.**
106. **Logo—a distinctive emblem or trademark that identifies a commercial business and/or the product or service offered by the business.**
107. **Longitudinal Markings—pavement markings that are generally placed parallel and adjacent to the flow of traffic such as lane lines, center lines, edge lines, channelizing lines, and others.**
108. **Louver—see Signal Louver.**
109. **Major Interchange—an interchange with another freeway or expressway, or an interchange with a high-volume multi-lane highway, principal urban arterial, or major rural route where the interchanging traffic is heavy or includes many road users unfamiliar with the area.**
110. **Major Street—the street normally carrying the higher volume of vehicular traffic.**
111. **Malfunction Management Unit—same as Conflict Monitor.**
112. **Managed Lane—a highway lane or set of lanes, or a highway facility, for which variable operational strategies such as direction of travel, tolling, pricing, and/or vehicle type or occupancy requirements are implemented and managed in real-time in response to changing conditions. Managed lanes are typically buffer- or barrier-separated lanes parallel to the general-purpose lanes of a highway in which access is restricted to designated locations. There are also some highways on which all lanes are managed.**
113. **Manual Lane—see Attended Lane.**
114. **Maximum Highway Traffic Signal Preemption Time—the maximum amount of time needed following initiation of the preemption sequence for the highway traffic signals to complete the timing of the right-of-way transfer time, queue clearance time, and separation time.**
115. **Median—the area between two roadways of a divided highway measured from edge of traveled way to edge of traveled way. The median excludes turn lanes. The median width might be different between intersections, interchanges, and at opposite approaches of the same intersection.**
116. **Minimum Track Clearance Distance—for standard two-quadrant warning devices, the minimum track clearance distance is the length along a highway at one or more railroad or light rail transit tracks, measured from the highway stop line, warning device, or 12 feet perpendicular to the track center line, to 6 feet beyond the track(s) measured perpendicular to the far rail, along the center line or edge line of the highway, as appropriate, to obtain the longer distance. For Four-Quadrant Gate systems, the minimum track clearance distance is the length along a highway at one or more railroad or light rail transit tracks, measured either from the highway stop line or entrance warning device, to the point where the rear of the vehicle would be clear of the exit gate arm. In cases where the exit gate arm is parallel to the track(s) and is not perpendicular to the highway, the distance is measured either along the center line or edge line of the highway, as appropriate, to obtain the longer distance.**
117. **Minimum Warning Time—when used in Part 8, the least amount of time active warning devices shall operate prior to the arrival of rail traffic at a grade crossing.**
118. **Minor Interchange—an interchange where traffic is local and very light, such as interchanges with land service access roads. Where the sum of the exit volumes is estimated to be lower than 100 vehicles per day in the design year, the interchange is classified as local.**
119. **Minor Street—the street normally carrying the lower volume of vehicular traffic.**

120. **Movable Bridge Resistance Gate—a type of traffic gate, which is located downstream of the movable bridge warning gate, that provides a physical deterrent to vehicle and/or pedestrian traffic when placed in the appropriate position.**
121. **Movable Bridge Signal—a highway traffic signal installed at a movable bridge to notify traffic to stop during periods when the roadway is closed to allow the bridge to open.**
122. **Movable Bridge Warning Gate—a type of traffic gate designed to warn, but not primarily to block, vehicle and/or pedestrian traffic when placed in the appropriate position.**
123. **Multi-Lane—more than one lane moving in the same direction. A multi-lane street, highway, or roadway has a basic cross-section comprised of two or more through lanes in one or both directions. A multi-lane approach has two or more lanes moving toward the intersection, including turning lanes.**
124. **Neutral Area—the paved area between the channelizing lines separating an entrance or exit ramp or a channelized turn lane or channelized entering lane from the adjacent through lane(s).**
125. **Object Marker—a device used to mark obstructions within or adjacent to the roadway.**
126. **Occupancy Requirement—any restriction that regulates the use of a facility or one or more lanes of a facility for any period of the day based on a specified number of persons in a vehicle.**
127. **Occupant—a person driving or riding in a car, truck, bus, or other vehicle.**
128. **Open-Road ETC Lane—a non-attended lane that is designed to allow toll payments to be electronically collected from vehicles traveling at normal highway speeds. Open-Road ETC lanes are typically physically separated from the toll plaza, often following the alignment of the mainline lanes, with toll plaza lanes for cash toll payments being on a different alignment after diverging from the mainline lanes or a subset thereof.**
129. **Open-Road Tolling—a system designed to allow electronic toll collection (ETC) from vehicles traveling at normal highway speeds. Open-Road Tolling might be used on toll roads or toll facilities in conjunction with toll plazas. Open-Road Tolling is also typically used on managed lanes and on toll facilities that only accept payment by ETC.**
130. **Open-Road Tolling Point—the location along an Open-Road ETC lane at which roadside or overhead detection and receiving equipment are placed and vehicles are electronically assessed a toll.**
131. **Opposing Traffic—vehicles that are traveling in the opposite direction. At an intersection, vehicles entering from an approach that is approximately straight ahead would be considered to be opposing traffic, but vehicles entering from approaches on the left or right would not be considered to be opposing traffic.**
132. **Overhead Sign—a sign that is placed such that a portion or the entirety of the sign or its support is directly above the roadway or shoulder such that vehicles travel below it. Typical installations include signs placed on cantilever arms that extend over the roadway or shoulder, on sign support structures that span the entire width of the pavement, on mast arms or span wires that also support traffic control signals, and on highway bridges that cross over the roadway.**
133. **Parking Area—a parking lot or parking garage that is separated from a roadway. Parallel or angle parking spaces along a roadway are not considered a parking area.**
134. **Passive Grade Crossing—a grade crossing where none of the automatic traffic control devices associated with an Active Grade Crossing Warning System are present and at which the traffic control devices consist entirely of signs and/or markings.**
135. **Pathway—a general term denoting a public way for purposes of travel by authorized users outside the traveled way and physically separated from the roadway by an open space or barrier and either within the highway right-of-way or within an independent alignment. Pathways include shared-use paths, but do not include sidewalks.**
136. **Pathway Grade Crossing—the general area where a pathway and railroad or light rail transit tracks cross at the same level, within which are included the tracks, pathway, and traffic control devices for pathway traffic traversing that area.**
137. **Paved—a bituminous surface treatment, mixed bituminous concrete, or Portland cement concrete roadway surface that has both a structural (weight bearing) and a sealing purpose for the roadway.**
138. **Pedestrian—a person on foot, in a wheelchair, on skates, or on a skateboard.**
139. **Pedestrian Change Interval—an interval during which the flashing UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK) signal indication is displayed.**

140. Pedestrian Clearance Time—the time provided for a pedestrian crossing in a crosswalk, after leaving the curb or shoulder, to travel to the far side of the traveled way or to a median.

141. Pedestrian Facilities—a general term denoting improvements and provisions made to accommodate or encourage walking.

142. Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon— a special type of hybrid beacon used to warn and control traffic at an unsignalized location to assist pedestrians in crossing a street or highway at a marked crosswalk.

143. Pedestrian Signal Head—a signal head, which contains the symbols WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) and UPRAISED HAND (symbolizing DONT WALK), that is installed to direct pedestrian traffic at a traffic control signal.

144. Permissive Mode—a mode of traffic control signal operation in which left or right turns are permitted to be made after yielding to pedestrians, if any, and/or opposing traffic, if any. When a CIRCULAR GREEN signal indication is displayed, both left and right turns are permitted unless otherwise prohibited by another traffic control device. When a flashing YELLOW ARROW or flashing RED ARROW signal indication is displayed, the turn indicated by the arrow is permitted.

145. Physical Gore—a longitudinal point where a physical barrier or the lack of a paved surface inhibits road users from crossing from a ramp or channelized turn lane or channelized entering lane to the adjacent through lane(s) or vice versa.

146. Pictograph—a pictorial representation used to identify a governmental jurisdiction, an area of jurisdiction, a governmental agency, a military base or branch of service, a governmental-approved university or college, a toll payment system, or a government-approved institution.

147. Plaque—a traffic control device intended to communicate specific information to road users through a word, symbol, or arrow legend that is placed immediately adjacent to a sign to supplement the message on the sign. The difference between a plaque and a sign is that a plaque cannot be used alone. The designation for a plaque includes a "P" suffix.

148. Platoon—a group of vehicles or pedestrians traveling together as a group, either voluntarily or involuntarily, because of traffic signal controls, geometrics, or other factors.

149. Portable Traffic Control Signal—a temporary traffic control signal that is designed so that it can be easily transported and reused at different locations.

150. Post-Mounted Sign—a sign that is placed to the side of the roadway such that no portion of the sign or its support is directly above the roadway or shoulder.

151. Posted Speed Limit—a speed limit determined by law or regulation and displayed on Speed Limit signs.

152. Preemption—the transfer of normal operation of a traffic control signal to a special control mode of operation.

153. Preferential Lane—a highway lane reserved for the exclusive use of one or more specific types of vehicles or vehicles with at least a specific number of occupants.

154. Pre-Signal—traffic control signal faces that control traffic approaching a grade crossing in conjunction with the traffic control signal faces that control traffic approaching a highway-highway intersection beyond the tracks. Supplemental near-side traffic control signal faces for the highway-highway intersection are not considered pre-signals. Pre-signals are typically used where the clear storage distance is insufficient to store one or more design vehicles.

155. Pretimed Operation—a type of traffic control signal operation in which none of the signal phases function on the basis of actuation.

156. Primary Signal Face—one of the required or recommended minimum number of signal faces for a given approach or separate turning movement, but not including near-side signal faces required as a result of the far-side signal faces exceeding the maximum distance from the stop line.

157. Principal Legend—place names, street names, and route numbers placed on guide signs.

158. Priority Control—a means by which the assignment of right-of-way is obtained or modified.

159. Private Road Open to Public Travel—private toll roads and roads (including any adjacent sidewalks that generally run parallel to the road) within shopping centers, airports, sports arenas, and other similar business and/or recreation facilities that are privately owned, but where the public is allowed to travel without access restrictions. Roads within private gated properties (except for gated toll roads) where access is restricted at all times, parking areas, driving aisles within parking areas, and private grade crossings shall not be included in this definition.

160. Protected Mode—a mode of traffic control signal operation in which left or right turns are permitted to be made when a left or right GREEN ARROW signal indication is displayed.

161. Public Road—any road, street, or similar facility under the jurisdiction of and maintained by a public agency and open to public travel.

162. Pushbutton—a button to activate a device or signal timing for pedestrians, bicyclists, or other road users.

163. Pushbutton Information Message—a recorded message that can be actuated by pressing a pushbutton when the walk interval is not timing and that provides the name of the street that the crosswalk associated with that particular pushbutton crosses and can also provide other information about the intersection signalization or geometry.

164. Pushbutton Locator Tone—a repeating sound that informs approaching pedestrians that a pushbutton exists to actuate pedestrian timing or receive additional information and that enables pedestrians who have visual disabilities to locate the pushbutton.

165. Queue Clearance Time—when used in Part 8, the time required for the design vehicle of maximum length stopped just inside the minimum track clearance distance to start up and move through and clear the entire minimum track clearance distance. If pre-signals are present, this time shall be long enough to allow the vehicle to move through the intersection, or to clear the tracks if there is sufficient clear storage distance. If a Four-Quadrant Gate system is present, this time shall be long enough to permit the exit gate arm to lower after the design vehicle is clear of the minimum track clearance distance.

166. Quiet Zone—a segment of a rail line, with one or a number of consecutive public highway-rail grade crossings at which locomotive horns are not routinely sounded per 49 CFR Part 222.

167. Rail Traffic—every device in, upon, or by which any person or property can be transported on rails or tracks and to which all other traffic must yield the right-of-way by law at grade crossings, including trains, one or more locomotives coupled (with or without cars), other railroad equipment, and light rail transit operating in exclusive or semi-exclusive alignments. Light rail transit operating in a mixed-use alignment, to which other traffic is not required to yield the right-of-way by law, is a vehicle and is not considered to be rail traffic.

168. Raised Pavement Marker—a device mounted on or in a road surface that has a height generally not exceeding approximately 1 inch above the road surface for a permanent marker, or not exceeding approximately 2 inches above the road surface for a temporary flexible marker, and that is intended to be used as a positioning guide and/or to supplement or substitute for pavement markings.

169. Ramp Control Signal—a highway traffic signal installed to control the flow of traffic onto a freeway at an entrance ramp or at a freeway-to-freeway ramp connection.

170. Ramp Meter—see Ramp Control Signal.

171. Red Clearance Interval—an interval that follows a yellow change interval and precedes the next conflicting green interval.

172. Regulatory Sign—a sign that gives notice to road users of traffic laws or regulations.

173. Retroreflectivity—a property of a surface that allows a large portion of the light coming from a point source to be returned directly back to a point near its origin.

174. Right-of-Way [Assignment]—the permitting of vehicles and/or pedestrians to proceed in a lawful manner in preference to other vehicles or pedestrians by the display of a sign or signal indications.

175. Right-of-Way Transfer Time—when used in Part 8, the maximum amount of time needed for the worst case condition, prior to display of the track clearance green interval. This includes any railroad or light rail transit or highway traffic signal control equipment time to react to a preemption call, and any traffic control signal green, pedestrian walk and clearance, yellow change, and red clearance intervals for conflicting traffic.

176. Road—see Roadway.

177. Road User—a vehicle operator, bicyclist, or pedestrian, including persons with disabilities, within the highway or on a private road open to public travel.

178. Roadway—that portion of a highway improved, designed, or ordinarily used for vehicular travel and parking lanes, but exclusive of the sidewalk, berm, or shoulder even though such sidewalk, berm, or shoulder is used by persons riding bicycles or other human-powered vehicles. In the event a highway includes two or more separate roadways, the term roadway as used in this Manual shall refer to any such roadway separately, but not to all such roadways collectively.

179. Roadway Network—a geographical arrangement of intersecting roadways.

180. **Roundabout—a circular intersection with yield control at entry, which permits a vehicle on the circulatory roadway to proceed, and with deflection of the approaching vehicle counter-clockwise around a central island.**
181. **Rumble Strip—a series of intermittent, narrow, transverse areas of rough-textured, slightly raised, or depressed road surface that extend across the travel lane to alert road users to unusual traffic conditions or are located along the shoulder, along the roadway center line, or within islands formed by pavement markings to alert road users that they are leaving the travel lanes.**
182. **Rural Highway—a type of roadway normally characterized by lower volumes, higher speeds, fewer turning conflicts, and less conflict with pedestrians.**
183. **Safe-Positioned—the positioning of emergency vehicles at an incident in a manner that attempts to protect both the responders performing their duties and road users traveling through the incident scene, while minimizing, to the extent practical, disruption of the adjacent traffic flow.**
184. **School—a public or private educational institution recognized by the State education authority for one or more grades K through 12 or as otherwise defined by the State.**
185. **School Zone—a designated roadway segment approaching, adjacent to, and beyond school buildings or grounds, or along which school related activities occur.**
186. **Semi-Actuated Operation—a type of traffic control signal operation in which at least one, but not all, signal phases function on the basis of actuation.**
187. **Separate Turn Signal Face—a signal face that exclusively controls a turn movement and that displays signal indications that are applicable only to the turn movement.**
188. **Separation Time—the component of maximum highway traffic signal preemption time during which the minimum track clearance distance is clear of vehicular traffic prior to the arrival of rail traffic.**
189. **Shared Roadway—a roadway that is officially designated and marked as a bicycle route, but which is open to motor vehicle travel and upon which no bicycle lane is designated.**
190. **Shared Turn Signal Face—a signal face, for controlling both a turn movement and the adjacent through movement, that always displays the same color of circular signal indication that the adjacent through signal face or faces display.**
191. **Shared-Use Path—a bikeway outside the traveled way and physically separated from motorized vehicular traffic by an open space or barrier and either within the highway right-of-way or within an independent alignment. Shared-use paths are also used by pedestrians (including skaters, users of manual and motorized wheelchairs, and joggers) and other authorized motorized and non-motorized users.**
192. **Sidewalk—that portion of a street between the curb line, or the lateral line of a roadway, and the adjacent property line or on easements of private property that is paved or improved and intended for use by pedestrians.**
193. **Sign—any traffic control device that is intended to communicate specific information to road users through a word, symbol, and/or arrow legend. Signs do not include highway traffic signals, pavement markings, delineators, or channelization devices.**
194. **Sign Assembly—a group of signs, located on the same support(s), that supplement one another in conveying information to road users.**
195. **Sign Illumination—either internal or external lighting that shows similar color by day or night. Street or highway lighting shall not be considered as meeting this definition.**
196. **Sign Legend—all word messages, logos, pictographs, and symbol and arrow designs that are intended to convey specific meanings. The border, if any, on a sign is not considered to be a part of the legend.**
197. **Sign Panel—a separate panel or piece of material containing a word, symbol, and/or arrow legend that is affixed to the face of a sign.**
198. **Signal Backplate—a thin strip of material that extends outward from and parallel to a signal face on all sides of a signal housing to provide a background for improved visibility of the signal indications.**
199. **Signal Coordination—the establishment of timed relationships between adjacent traffic control signals.**
200. **Signal Face—an assembly of one or more signal sections that is provided for controlling one or more traffic movements on a single approach.**
201. **Signal Head—an assembly of one or more signal faces that is provided for controlling traffic movements on one or more approaches.**

202. **Signal Housing—that part of a signal section that protects the light source and other required components.**
203. **Signal Indication—the illumination of a signal lens or equivalent device.**
204. **Signal Lens—that part of the signal section that redirects the light coming directly from the light source and its reflector, if any.**
205. **Signal Louver—a device that can be mounted inside a signal visor to restrict visibility of a signal indication from the side or to limit the visibility of the signal indication to a certain lane or lanes, or to a certain distance from the stop line.**
206. **Signal Phase—the right-of-way, yellow change, and red clearance intervals in a cycle that are assigned to an independent traffic movement or combination of movements.**
207. **Signal Section—the assembly of a signal housing, signal lens, if any, and light source with necessary components to be used for displaying one signal indication.**
208. **Signal System—two or more traffic control signals operating in signal coordination.**
209. **Signal Timing—the amount of time allocated for the display of a signal indication.**
210. **Signal Visor—that part of a signal section that directs the signal indication specifically to approaching traffic and reduces the effect of direct external light entering the signal lens.**
211. **Signing—individual signs or a group of signs, not necessarily on the same support(s), that supplement one another in conveying information to road users.**
212. **Simultaneous Preemption—notification of approaching rail traffic is forwarded to the highway traffic signal controller unit or assembly and railroad or light rail transit active warning devices at the same time.**
213. **Special Purpose Road—a low-volume, low-speed road that serves recreational areas or resource development activities.**
214. **Speed—speed is defined based on the following classifications:**
    a. **Average Speed—the summation of the instantaneous or spot-measured speeds at a specific location of vehicles divided by the number of vehicles observed.**
    b. **Design Speed—a selected speed used to determine the various geometric design features of a roadway.**
    c. **85th-Percentile Speed—the speed at or below which 85 percent of the motor vehicles travel.**
    d. **Operating Speed—a speed at which a typical vehicle or the overall traffic operates. Operating speed might be defined with speed values such as the average, pace, or 85th-percentile speeds.**
    e. **Pace—the 10 mph speed range representing the speeds of the largest percentage of vehicles in the traffic stream.**
215. **Speed Limit—the maximum (or minimum) speed applicable to a section of highway as established by law or regulation.**
216. **Speed Limit Sign Beacon—a beacon used to supplement a SPEED LIMIT sign.**
217. **Speed Measurement Markings—a white transverse pavement marking placed on the roadway to assist the enforcement of speed regulations.**
218. **Speed Zone—a section of highway with a speed limit that is established by law or regulation, but which might be different from a legislatively specified statutory speed limit.**
219. **Splitter Island—a median island used to separate opposing directions of traffic entering and exiting a roundabout.**
220. **Station Crossing—a pathway grade crossing that is associated with a station platform.**
221. **Statutory Speed Limit—a speed limit established by legislative action that typically is applicable for a particular class of highways with specified design, functional, jurisdictional and/or location characteristics and that is not necessarily displayed on Speed Limit signs.**
222. **Steady (Steady Mode)—the continuous display of a signal indication for the duration of an interval, signal phase, or consecutive signal phases.**
223. **Stop Beacon—a beacon used to supplement a STOP sign, a DO NOT ENTER sign, or a WRONG WAY sign.**
224. **Stop Line—a solid white pavement marking line extending across approach lanes to indicate the point at which a stop is intended or required to be made.**
225. **Street—see Highway.**
226. **Supplemental Signal Face—a signal face that is not a primary signal face but which is provided for a given approach or separate turning movement to enhance visibility or conspicuity.**

227. Symbol—the approved design of a pictorial representation of a specific traffic control message for signs, pavement markings, traffic control signals, or other traffic control devices, as shown in the MUTCD.

228. Temporary Traffic Control Signal—a traffic control signal that is installed for a limited time period.

229. Temporary Traffic Control Zone—an area of a highway where road user conditions are changed because of a work zone or incident by the use of temporary traffic control devices, flaggers, uniformed law enforcement officers, or other authorized personnel.

230. Theoretical Gore—a longitudinal point at the upstream end of a neutral area at an exit ramp or channelized turn lane where the channelizing lines that separate the ramp or channelized turn lane from the adjacent through lane(s) begin to diverge, or a longitudinal point at the downstream end of a neutral area at an entrance ramp or channelized entering lane where the channelizing lines that separate the ramp or channelized entering lane from the adjacent through lane(s) intersect each other.

231. Timed Exit Gate Operating Mode—a mode of operation where the exit gate descent at a grade crossing is based on a predetermined time interval.

232. Toll Booth—a shelter where a toll attendant is stationed to collect tolls or issue toll tickets. A toll booth is located adjacent to a toll lane and is typically set on a toll island.

233. Toll Island—a raised island on which a toll booth or other toll collection and related equipment are located.

234. Toll Lane—an individual lane located within a toll plaza in which a toll payment is collected or, for toll-ticket systems, a toll ticket is issued.

235. Toll Plaza—the location at which tolls are collected consisting of a grouping of toll booths, toll islands, toll lanes, and, typically, a canopy. Toll plazas might be located on highway mainlines or on interchange ramps. A mainline toll plaza is sometimes referred to as a barrier toll plaza because it interrupts the traffic flow.

236. Toll-Ticket System—a system in which the user of a toll road receives a ticket from a machine or toll booth attendant upon entering a toll system. The ticket denotes the user's point of entry and, upon exiting the toll system, the user surrenders the ticket and is charged a toll based on the distance traveled between the points of entry and exit.

237. Traffic—pedestrians, bicyclists, ridden or herded animals, vehicles, streetcars, and other conveyances either singularly or together while using for purposes of travel any highway or private road open to public travel.

238. Traffic Control Device—a sign, signal, marking, or other device used to regulate, warn, or guide traffic, placed on, over, or adjacent to a street, highway, private road open to public travel, pedestrian facility, or shared-use path by authority of a public agency or official having jurisdiction, or, in the case of a private road open to public travel, by authority of the private owner or private official having jurisdiction.

239. Traffic Control Signal (Traffic Signal)—any highway traffic signal by which traffic is alternately directed to stop and permitted to proceed.

240. Train—one or more locomotives coupled, with or without cars, that operates on rails or tracks and to which all other traffic must yield the right-of-way by law at highway-rail grade crossings.

241. Transverse Markings—pavement markings that are generally placed perpendicular and across the flow of traffic such as shoulder markings; word, symbol, and arrow markings; stop lines; crosswalk lines; speed measurement markings; parking space markings; and others.

242. Traveled Way—the portion of the roadway for the movement of vehicles, exclusive of the shoulders, berms, sidewalks, and parking lanes.

243. Turn Bay—a lane for the exclusive use of turning vehicles that is formed on the approach to the location where the turn is to be made. In most cases where turn bays are provided, drivers who desire to turn must move out of a through lane into the newly formed turn bay in order to turn. A through lane that becomes a turn lane is considered to be a dropped lane rather than a turn bay.

244. Upstream—a term that refers to a location that is encountered by traffic prior to a downstream location as it flows in an "upstream to downstream" direction. For example, "the upstream end of a lane line separating the turn lane from a through lane on the approach to an intersection" is the end of the line that is furthest from the intersection.

245. **Urban Street—a type of street normally characterized by relatively low speeds, wide ranges of traffic volumes, narrower lanes, frequent intersections and driveways, significant pedestrian traffic, and more businesses and houses.**
246. **Vehicle—every device in, upon, or by which any person or property can be transported or drawn upon a highway, except trains and light rail transit operating in exclusive or semi-exclusive alignments. Light rail transit equipment operating in a mixed-use alignment, to which other traffic is not required to yield the right-of-way by law, is a vehicle.**
247. **Vibrotactile Pedestrian Device—an accessible pedestrian signal feature that communicates, by touch, information about pedestrian timing using a vibrating surface.**
248. **Visibility-Limited Signal Face or Visibility-Limited Signal Section—a type of signal face or signal section designed (or shielded, hooded, or louvered) to restrict the visibility of a signal indication from the side, to a certain lane or lanes, or to a certain distance from the stop line.**
249. **Walk Interval—an interval during which the WALKING PERSON (symbolizing WALK) signal indication is displayed.**
250. **Warning Beacon—a beacon used only to supplement an appropriate warning or regulatory sign or marker.**
251. **Warning Light—a portable, powered, yellow, lens-directed, enclosed light that is used in a temporary traffic control zone in either a steady burn or a flashing mode.**
252. **Warning Sign—a sign that gives notice to road users of a situation that might not be readily apparent.**
253. **Warrant—a warrant describes a threshold condition based upon average or normal conditions that, if found to be satisfied as part of an engineering study, shall result in analysis of other traffic conditions or factors to determine whether a traffic control device or other improvement is justified. Warrants are not a substitute for engineering judgment. The fact that a warrant for a particular traffic control device is met is not conclusive justification for the installation of the device.**
254. **Wayside Equipment—the signals, switches, and/or control devices for railroad or light rail transit operations housed within one or more enclosures located along the railroad or light rail transit right-of-way and/or on railroad or light rail transit property.**
255. **Wayside Horn System—a stationary horn (or series of horns) located at a grade crossing that is used in conjunction with train-activated or light rail transit-activated warning systems to provide audible warning of approaching rail traffic to road users on the highway or pathway approaches to a grade crossing, either as a supplement or alternative to the sounding of a locomotive horn.**
256. **Worker—a person on foot whose duties place him or her within the right-of-way of a street, highway, or pathway, such as street, highway, or pathway construction and maintenance forces, survey crews, utility crews, responders to incidents within the street, highway, or pathway right-of-way, and law enforcement personnel when directing traffic, investigating crashes, and handling lane closures, obstructed roadways, and disasters within the right-of-way of a street, highway, or pathway.**
257. **Wrong-Way Arrow—a slender, elongated, white pavement marking arrow placed upstream from the ramp terminus to indicate the correct direction of traffic flow. Wrong-way arrows are intended primarily to warn wrong-way road users that they are going in the wrong direction.**
258. **Yellow Change Interval—the first interval following the green or flashing arrow interval during which the steady yellow signal indication is displayed.**
259. **Yield Line—a row of solid white isosceles triangles pointing toward approaching vehicles extending across approach lanes to indicate the point at which the yield is intended or required to be made.**

Option:

The engineer described in these definitions may be certified as a Professional Traffic Operations Engineer.

Section 1A.14 Meanings of Acronyms and Abbreviations in this Manual

Standard:

1 **The following acronyms and abbreviations, when used in this Manual, shall have the following meanings:**

1. **AADT—annual average daily traffic**
2. **AASHTO—American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials**
3. **ADA—Americans with Disabilities Act**
4. **ADAAG—Americans with Disabilities Accessibility Guidelines**
5. **ADT—average daily traffic**

6. **AFAD—Automated Flagger Assistance Device**
7. **ANSI—American National Standards Institute**
8. **CFR—Code of Federal Regulations**
9. **CMS—changeable message sign**
10. **dBA—A-weighted decibels**
11. **EPA—Environmental Protection Agency**
12. **ETC—electronic toll collection**
13. **EV—electric vehicle**
14. **FHWA—Federal Highway Administration**
15. **FRA—Federal Railroad Administration**
16. **FTA—Federal Transit Administration**
17. **HOT—high occupancy tolls**
18. **HOTM—FHWA's Office of Transportation Management**
19. **HOTO—FHWA's Office of Transportation Operations**
20. **HOV—high-occupancy vehicle**
21. **ILEV—inherently low emission vehicle**
22. **ISEA—International Safety Equipment Association**
23. **ITE—Institute of Transportation Engineers**
24. **ITS—intelligent transportation systems**
25. **LED—light emitting diode**
26. **LP—liquid petroleum**
27. **LRT—light rail transit**
28. **MPH or mph—miles per hour**
29. **MUTCD—Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices**
30. **NCHRP—National Cooperative Highway Research Program**
31. **ORT—open-road tolling**
32. **PCMS—portable changeable message sign**
33. **PRT—perception-response time**
34. **RPM—raised pavement marker**
35. **RRPM—raised retroreflective pavement marker**
36. **RV—recreational vehicle**
37. **TDD—telecommunication devices for the deaf**
38. **TRB—Transportation Research Board**
39. **TTC—temporary traffic control**
40. **U.S.—United States**
41. **U.S.C.—United States Code**
42. **USDOT—United States Department of Transportation**
43. **UVC—Uniform Vehicle Code**
44. **VPH or vph—vehicles per hour**

Section 1A.15 Abbreviations Used on Traffic Control Devices

Standard:

1 **When the word messages shown in Table 1A-1 need to be abbreviated in connection with traffic control devices, the abbreviations shown in Table 1A-1 shall be used.**

2 **When the word messages shown in Table 1A-2 need to be abbreviated on a portable changeable message sign, the abbreviations shown in Table 1A-2 shall be used. Unless indicated by an asterisk, these abbreviations shall only be used on portable changeable message signs.**

Guidance:

3 *The abbreviations for the words listed in Table 1A-2 that also show a prompt word should not be used on a portable changeable message sign unless the prompt word shown in Table 1A-2 either precedes or follows the abbreviation, as applicable.*

Standard:

4 **The abbreviations shown in Table 1A-3 shall not be used in connection with traffic control devices because of their potential to be misinterpreted by road users.**

Guidance:

5 *If multiple abbreviations are permitted in Table 1A-1 or 1A-2, the same abbreviation should be used throughout a single jurisdiction.*

6 *Except as otherwise provided in Table 1A-1 or 1A-2 or unless necessary to avoid confusion, periods, commas, apostrophes, question marks, ampersands, and other punctuation marks or characters that are not letters or numerals should not be used in any abbreviation.*

7

Table 1A-1. Acceptable Abbreviations

Word Message	Standard Abbreviation
Afternoon / Evening	PM
Alternate	ALT
AM Radio	AM
Avenue	AVE, AV
Bicycle	BIKE
Boulevard	BLVD*
Bridge	(See Table 1A-2)
CB Radio	CB
Center (as part of a place name)	CTR
Circle	CIR*
Civil Defense	CD
Compressed Natural Gas	CNG
Court	CT*
Crossing (other than highway-rail)	X-ING
Drive	DR*
East	E
Electric Vehicle	EV
Expressway	EXPWY*
Feet	FT
FM Radio	FM
Freeway	FRWY, FWY*
Friday	FRI
Hazardous Material	HAZMAT
High Occupancy Vehicle	HOV
Highway	HWY*
Hospital	HOSP
Hour(s)	HR, HRS
Information	INFO
Inherently Low Emission Vehicle	ILEV
International	INTL
Interstate	(See Table 1A-2)
Junction / Intersection	JCT
Lane	(See Table 1A-2)
Liquid Propane Gas	LP-GAS
Maximum	MAX

Word Message	Standard Abbreviation
Mile(s)	MI
Miles Per Hour	MPH
Minimum	MIN
Minute(s)	MIN
Monday	MON
Morning / Late Night	AM
Mount	MT
Mountain	MTN
National	NATL
North	N
Parkway	PKWY*
Pedestrian	PED
Place	PL*
Pounds	LBS
Road	RD*
Saint	ST
Saturday	SAT
South	S
State, county, or other non-US or non-Interstate numbered route	(See Table 1A-2)
Street	ST*
Sunday	SUN
Telephone	PHONE
Temporary	TEMP
Terrace	TER*
Thursday	THURS
Thruway	THWY*
Tons of Weight	T
Trail	TR*
Tuesday	TUES
Turnpike	TPK*
Two-Way Intersection	2-WAY
US Numbered Route	(See Table 1A-2)
Wednesday	WED
West	W

*This abbreviation shall not be used for any application other than the name of a roadway.

Table 1A-2. Abbreviations that Shall be Used Only on Portable Changeable Message Signs

Word Message	Standard Abbreviation	Prompt Word That Should Precede the Abbreviation	Prompt Word That Should Follow the Abbreviation
Access	ACCS	—	Road
Ahead	AHD	Fog	—
Blocked	BLKD	Lane	—
Bridge	BR*	[Name]	—
Cannot	CANT	—	—
Center	CNTR	—	Lane
Chemical	CHEM	—	Spill
Condition	COND	Traffic	—
Congested	CONG	Traffic	—
Construction	CONST	—	Ahead
Crossing	XING	—	—
Do Not	DONT	—	—

Downtown	DWNTN	—	Traffic
Eastbound	E-BND	—	—
Emergency	EMER	—	—
Entrance, Enter	ENT	—	—
Exit	EX	Next	—
Express	EXP	—	Lane
Frontage	FRNTG	—	Road
Hazardous	HAZ	—	Driving
Highway-Rail Grade Crossing	RR XING	—	—
Interstate	I-*	—	[Number]
It Is	ITS	—	—
Lane	LN	[Roadway Name]*,Right, Left, Center	—
Left	LFT	—	—
Local	LOC	—	Traffic
Lower	LWR	—	Level
Maintenance	MAINT	—	—
Major	MAJ	—	Accident
Minor	MNR	—	Accident
Normal	NORM	—	—
Northbound	N-BND	—	—
Oversized	OVRSZ	—	Load
Parking	PKING	—	—
Pavement	PVMT	Wet	—
Prepare	PREP	—	To Stop
Quality	QLTY	Air	—
Right	RT	Keep, Next	—
Right	RT	—	Lane
Roadwork	RDWK	—	Ahead, [Distance]
Route	RT, RTE	Best	—
Service	SERV	—	—
Shoulder	SHLDR	—	—
Slippery	SLIP	—	—
Southbound	S-BND	—	—
Speed	SPD	—	—
State, county, or other non-US or non-Interstate numbered route	[Route Abbreviation determined by highway agency]*	—	[Number]**
Tires With Lugs	LUGS	—	—
Traffic	TRAF	—	—
Travelers	TRVLRS	—	—
Two-Wheeled Vehicles	CYCLES	—	—
Upper	UPR	—	Level
US Numbered Route	US*	—	[Number]**
Vehicle(s)	VEH, VEHS	—	—
Warning	WARN	—	—
Westbound	W-BND	—	—
Will Not	WONT	—	—

* This abbreviation, when accompanied by the prompt word, may be used on traffic control devices other than portable message signs.
than Portable Changeable Message Signs
** A space and no dash shall be placed between the abbreviation and the number of the route.

Table 1A-3. Unacceptable Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Intended Word	Common Misinterpretation
ACC	Accident	Access (Road)
CLRS	Clears	Colors
DLY	Delay	Daily
FDR	Feeder	Federal
L	Left	Lane (Merge)
LT	Light (Traffic)	Left
PARK	Parking	Park
POLL	Pollution (Index)	Poll
RED	Reduce	Red

STAD	Stadium	Standard
WRNG	Warning	Wrong

PART 2. SIGNS

CHAPTER 2A. GENERAL

CHAPTER 2A. GENERAL

Section 2A.01 Function and Purpose of Signs

Support:

1 This Manual contains Standards, Guidance, and Options for the signing of all types of highways, and private roads open to public travel. The functions of signs are to provide regulations, warnings, and guidance information for road users. Words, symbols, and arrows are used to convey the messages. Signs are not typically used to confirm rules of the road.

2 Detailed sign requirements are located in the following Chapters of Part 2:

Chapter 2B—Regulatory Signs, Barricades, and Gates
Chapter 2C—Warning Signs and Object Markers
Chapter 2D—Guide Signs for Conventional Roads
Chapter 2E—Guide Signs for Freeways and Expressways
Chapter 2F—Toll Road Signs
Chapter 2G—Preferential and Managed Lane Signs
Chapter 2H—General Information Signs
Chapter 2I—General Service Signs
Chapter 2J—Specific Service (Logo) Signs
Chapter 2K—Tourist-Oriented Directional Signs
Chapter 2L—Changeable Message Signs
Chapter 2M—Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Signs
Chapter 2N—Emergency Management Signs

Standard:

3 **Because the requirements and standards for signs depend on the particular type of highway upon which they are to be used, the definitions for freeway, expressway, conventional road, and special purpose road given in Section 1A.13 shall apply in Part 2.**

Section 2A.02 Definitions

Support:

1 Definitions and acronyms that are applicable to signs are given in Sections 1A.13 and 1A.14.

Section 2A.03 Standardization of Application

Support:

1 It is recognized that urban traffic conditions differ from those in rural environments, and in many instances signs are applied and located differently. Where pertinent and practical, this Manual sets forth separate recommendations for urban and rural conditions.

Guidance:

2 *Signs should be used only where justified by engineering judgment or studies, as provided in Section 1A.09.*

3 *Results from traffic engineering studies of physical and traffic factors should indicate the locations where signs are deemed necessary or desirable.*

4 *Roadway geometric design and sign application should be coordinated so that signing can be effectively placed to give the road user any necessary regulatory, warning, guidance, and other information.*

Standard:

5 **Each standard sign shall be displayed only for the specific purpose as prescribed in this Manual. Determination of the particular signs to be applied to a specific condition shall be made in accordance with the provisions set forth in Part 2. Before any new highway, private road open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13), detour, or temporary route is opened to public travel, all necessary signs shall be in place. Signs required by road conditions or restrictions shall be removed when those conditions cease to exist or the restrictions are withdrawn.**

Section 2A.04 Excessive Use of Signs

Guidance:

1 *Regulatory and warning signs should be used conservatively because these signs, if used to excess, tend to lose their effectiveness. If used, route signs and directional guide signs should be used frequently because their use promotes efficient operations by keeping road users informed of their location.*

Section 2A.05 Classification of Signs

Standard:

1 **Signs shall be defined by their function as follows:**

- **A. Regulatory signs give notice of traffic laws or regulations.**
- **B. Warning signs give notice of a situation that might not be readily apparent.**
- **C. Guide signs show route designations, destinations, directions, distances, services, points of interest, and other geographical, recreational, or cultural information.**

Support:

2 Object markers are defined in Section 2C.63.

Section 2A.06 Design of Signs

Support:

1 This Manual shows many typical standard signs and object markers approved for use on streets, highways, bikeways, and pedestrian crossings.

Throughout the Signs portion of the supplement, references are made to signs, which are not mentioned in the MUTCD. Details on the design of these signs can be obtained by writing the State Traffic Engineer's office or a Region Transportation Traffic section.

2 In the specifications for individual signs and object markers, the general appearance of the legend, color, and size are shown in the accompanying tables and illustrations, and are not always detailed in the text.

3 Detailed drawings of standard signs, object markers, alphabets, symbols, and arrows (see Figure 2D-2) are shown in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book. Section 1A.11 contains information regarding how to obtain this publication.

4 The basic requirements of a sign are that it be legible to those for whom it is intended and that it be understandable in time to permit a proper response. Desirable attributes include:

A. High visibility by day and night; and
B. High legibility (adequately sized letters, symbols, or arrows, and a short legend for quick comprehension by a road user approaching a sign).

5 Standardized colors and shapes are specified so that the several classes of traffic signs can be promptly recognized. Simplicity and uniformity in design, position, and application are important.

Standard:

6 **The term legend shall include all word messages and symbol and arrow designs that are intended to convey specific meanings.**

7 **Uniformity in design shall include shape, color, dimensions, legends, borders, and illumination or retroreflectivity.**

8 **Standardization of these designs does not preclude further improvement by minor changes in the proportion or orientation of symbols, width of borders, or layout of word messages, but all shapes and colors shall be as indicated.**

9 **All symbols shall be unmistakably similar to, or mirror images of, the adopted symbol signs, all of which are shown in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11). Symbols and colors shall not be modified unless otherwise provided in this Manual. All symbols and colors for signs not shown in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book shall follow the procedures for experimentation and change described in Section 1A.10.**

Option:

10 Although the standard design of symbol signs cannot be modified, the orientation of the symbol may be changed to better reflect the direction of travel, if appropriate.

Standard:

11 **Where a standard word message is applicable, the wording shall be as provided in this Manual.**

12 **In situations where word messages are required other than those provided in this Manual, the signs shall be of the same shape and color as standard signs of the same functional type.**

Option:

13 State and local highway agencies may develop special word message signs in situations where roadway conditions make it necessary to provide road users with additional regulatory, warning, or guidance information, such as when road users need to be notified of special regulations or warned about a situation that might not be readily apparent. Unlike colors that have not been assigned or symbols that have not been approved for signs, new word message signs may be used without the need for experimentation.

Standard:

14 **Except as provided in Paragraph 16 and except for the Carpool Information (D12-2) sign (see Section 2I.11), Internet addresses and e-mail addresses, including domain names and uniform resource locators (URL), shall not be displayed on any sign, supplemental plaque, sign panel (including logo sign panels on Specific Service signs), or changeable message sign.**

Guidance:

15 *Unless otherwise provided in this Manual for a specific sign, and except as provided in Paragraph 16, telephone numbers of more than four characters should not be displayed on any sign, supplemental plaque, sign panel (including logo sign panels on Specific Service signs), or changeable message sign.*

Option:

16 Internet addresses, e-mail addresses, or telephone numbers with more than four characters may be displayed on signs, supplemental plaques, sign panels, and changeable message signs that are intended for viewing only by pedestrians, bicyclists, occupants of parked vehicles, or drivers of vehicles on low-speed roadways where engineering judgment indicates that an area is available for drivers to stop out of the traffic flow to read the message.

Usage of phone numbers with more than 4 characters will be allowed for the Rideshare info signs (State sign plate D12-2 and D12-2A) in Wisconsin with the example phone numbers: 272-RIDE and 1-800-455-POOL.

Standard:

17 **Pictographs (see definition in Section 1A.13) shall not be displayed on signs except as specifically provided in this Manual. Pictographs shall be simple, dignified, and devoid of any advertising. When used to represent a political jurisdiction (such as a State, county, or municipal corporation) the pictograph shall be the official designation adopted by the jurisdiction. When used to represent a college or university, the pictograph shall be the official seal adopted by the institution. Pictorial representations of university or college programs shall not be permitted to be displayed on a sign.**

Section 2A.07 Retroreflectivity and Illumination

Support:

1 There are many materials currently available for retroreflection and various methods currently available for the illumination of signs and object markers. New materials and methods continue to emerge. New materials and methods can be used as long as the signs and object markers meet the standard requirements for color, both by day and by night.

Table 2A-1. Illumination of Sign Elements

Means of Illumination	Sign Element to be Illuminated
Light behind the sign face	• Symbol or word message • Background • Symbol, word message, and background (through a translucent material)
Attached or independently mounted light source designed to direct essentially uniform illumination onto the sign face	• Entire sign face
Light emitting diodes (LEDs)	• Symbol or word message • Portions of the sign border
Other devices or treatments that highlight the sign shape, color, or message: Luminous tubing Fiber optics Incandescent light bulbs Luminescent panels	• Symbol or word message • Entire sign face

Standard:

2 **Regulatory, warning, and guide signs and object markers shall be retroreflective (see Section 2A.08) or illuminated to show the same shape and similar color by both day and night, unless otherwise provided in the text discussion in this Manual for a particular sign or group of signs.**

3 **The requirements for sign illumination shall not be considered to be satisfied by street or highway lighting.**

Option:

4 Sign elements may be illuminated by the means shown in Table 2A-1.

5 Retroreflection of sign elements may be accomplished by the means shown in Table 2A-2.

Table 2A-2. Retroreflection of Sign Elements

Means of Retroreflection	Sign Element
Reflector "buttons" or similar units	Symbol Word message Border
A material that has a smooth, sealed outer surface over a microstructure that reflects light	Symbol Word message Border Background

6 Light Emitting Diode (LED) units may be used individually within the legend or symbol of a sign and in the border of a sign, except for changeable message signs, to improve the conspicuity, increase the legibility of sign legends and borders, or provide a changeable message.

Guidance:

Typical applications of LED signs (blinker signs) should be similar to Flashing Beacons in Section 4L. Use of LED (Light Emitting Diodes) sign units may be considered and use should be limited to conditions where:

Guideline 1:

A traffic and engineering study of a special location with demonstrated crash problem shows that a LED sign is desirable. The study should include an investigation of the crash history, approach speeds and local conditions.

Guideline 2:

A visibility restriction per the minimum visibility distance chart in 2C.46 as follows:

Minimum Visibility Distance

Posted or 85th Percentile Speed	Minimum Visibility Distance
25 MPH	280
30 MPH	335
35 MPH	390
40 MPH	445
45 MPH	500
50 MPH	555
55 MPH	610
60 MPH	665
65 MPH	720
70 MPH	775

This table on minimum visibility distances references Exhibit 9-55 (Intersection sight distance – left turn from stop) of the 2004 AASHTO Standard Highway and Street Design Manual. Note – This Table is just for determination if the sign is needed: these are not sign placement criteria. This provides an added factor of safety beyond the stopping sight distance criteria.

Guideline 3:

Unusual geometrics (horizontal curves, vertical curves, large number of approach lanes at an intersection.)

Guideline 4:

A sight line or visibility problem where the stop sign blends in with the surroundings and is not seen by approaching motorists.

Standard:

7 **Except as provided in Paragraphs 11 and 12, neither individual LEDs nor groups of LEDs shall be placed within the background area of a sign.**

8 **If used, the LEDs shall have a maximum diameter of 1/4 inch and shall be the following colors based on the type of sign:**

A. White or red, if used with STOP or YIELD signs.
B. White, if used with regulatory signs other than STOP or YIELD signs.
C. White or yellow, if used with warning signs.
D. White, if used with guide signs.
E. White, yellow, or orange, if used with temporary traffic control signs.
F. White or yellow, if used with school area signs.

9 **If flashed, all LED units shall flash simultaneously at a rate of more than 50 and less than 60 times per minute.**

10 **The uniformity of the sign design shall be maintained without any decrease in visibility, legibility, or driver comprehension during either daytime or nighttime conditions.**

Option:

11 For STOP and YIELD signs, LEDs may be placed within the border or within one border width within the background of the sign.

12 For STOP/SLOW paddles (see Section 6E.03) used by flaggers and the STOP paddles (see Section 7D.05) used by adult crossing guards, individual LEDs or groups of LEDs may be used.

Support:

13 Other methods of enhancing the conspicuity of standard signs are described in Section 2A.15.

14 Information regarding the use of retroreflective material on the sign support is contained in Section 2A.21.

Section 2A.08 Maintaining Minimum Retroreflectivity

Support:

1 Retroreflectivity is one of several factors associated with maintaining nighttime sign visibility (see Section 2A.22).

Standard:

2 **Public agencies or officials having jurisdiction shall use an assessment or management method that is designed to maintain sign retroreflectivity at or above the minimum levels in Table 2A-3.**

Support:

3 Compliance with the Standard in Paragraph 2 is achieved by having a method in place and using the method to maintain the minimum levels established in Table 2A-3. Provided that an assessment or management method is being used, an agency or official having jurisdiction would be in compliance with the Standard in Paragraph 2 even if there are some individual signs that do not meet the minimum retroreflectivity levels at a particular point in time.

Guidance:

4 *Except for those signs specifically identified in Paragraph 6, one or more of the following assessment or management methods should be used to maintain sign retroreflectivity:*

A. Visual Nighttime Inspection—The retroreflectivity of an existing sign is assessed by a trained sign inspector conducting a visual inspection from a moving vehicle during nighttime conditions. Signs that are visually identified by the inspector to have retroreflectivity below the minimum levels should be replaced.
B. Measured Sign Retroreflectivity—Sign retroreflectivity is measured using a retroreflectometer. Signs with retroreflectivity below the minimum levels should be replaced.
C. Expected Sign Life—When signs are installed, the installation date is labeled or recorded so that the age of a sign is known. The age of the sign is compared to the expected sign life. The expected sign life is based on the experience of sign retroreflectivity degradation in a geographic area compared to the minimum levels. Signs older than the expected life should be replaced.
D. Blanket Replacement—All signs in an area/corridor, or of a given type, should be replaced at specified intervals. This eliminates the need to assess retroreflectivity or track the life of individual signs. The replacement interval is based on the expected sign life, compared to the minimum levels, for the shortest-life material used on the affected signs.

Table 2A-3. Minimum Maintained Retroreflectivity Levels [1]

Sign Color	Sheeting Type (ASTM D4956-04)				Additional Criteria
	Beaded Sheeting			Prismatic Sheeting	
	I	II	III	III, IV, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X	
White on Green	W*; G ≥ 7	W*; G ≥ 15	W*; G ≥ 25	W ≥ 250; G ≥ 25	Overhead
	W*; G ≥ 7	W ≥ 120; G ≥ 15			Post-mounted
Black on Yellow or Black on Orange	Y*; O*	Y ≥ 50; O ≥ 50			[2]
	Y*; O*	Y ≥ 75; O ≥ 75			[3]
White on Red	W ≥ 35; R ≥ 7				[4]
Black on White	W ≥ 50				–

[1] The minimum maintained retroreflectivity levels shown in this table are in units of cd/lx/m2 measured at an observation angle of 0.2° and an entrance angle of -4.0°.
[2] For text and fine symbol signs measuring at least 48 inches and for all sizes of bold symbol signs
[3] For text and fine symbol signs measuring less than 48 inches
[4] Minimum sign contrast ratio ≥ 3:1 (white retroreflectivity ÷ red retroreflectivity)
* This sheeting type shall not be used for this color for this application

Bold Symbol Signs

• W1-1,2 – Turn and Curve • W1-3,4 – Reverse Turn and Curve • W1-5 – Winding Road • W1-6,7 – Large Arrow • W1-8 – Chevron • W1-10 – Intersection in Curve • W1-11 – Hairpin Curve • W1-15 – 270 Degree Loop • W2-1 – Cross Road • W2-2,3 – Side Road • W2-4,5 – T and Y Intersection • W2-6 – Circular Intersection • W2-7,8 – Double Side Roads	• W3-1 – Stop Ahead • W3-2 – Yield Ahead • W3-3 – Signal Ahead • W4-1 – Merge • W4-2 – Lane Ends • W4-3 – Added Lane • W4-5 – Entering Roadway Merge • W4-6 – Entering Roadway Added Lane • W6-1,2 – Divided Highway Begins and Ends • W6-3 – Two-Way Traffic • W10-1,2,3,4,11,12 – Grade Crossing Advance Warning	• W11-2 – Pedestrian Crossing • W11-3,4,16-22 – Large Animals • W11-5 – Farm Equipment • W11-6 – Snowmobile Crossing • W11-7 – Equestrian Crossing • W11-8 – Fire Station • W11-10 – Truck Crossing • W12-1 – Double Arrow • W16-5P,6P,7P – Pointing Arrow Plaques • W20-7 – Flagger • W21-1 – Worker

Fine Symbol Signs (symbol signs not listed as bold symbol signs)

Special Cases

- W3-1 – Stop Ahead: Red retroreflectivity ≥ 7
- W3-2 – Yield Ahead: Red retroreflectivity ≥ 7; White retroreflectivity ≥ 35
- W3-3 – Signal Ahead: Red retroreflectivity ≥ 7; Green retroreflectivity ≥ 7
- W3-5 – Speed Reduction: White retroreflectivity ≥ 50
- For non-diamond shaped signs, such as W14-3 (No Passing Zone), W4-4P (Cross Traffic Does Not Stop), or W13-1P,2,3,6,7 (Speed Advisory Signs), use the largest sign dimension to determine the proper minimum retroreflectivity level.

E. Control Signs—Replacement of signs in the field is based on the performance of a sample of control signs. The control signs might be a small sample located in a maintenance yard or a sample of signs in the field. The control signs are monitored to determine the end of retroreflective life for the associated signs. All field signs represented by the control sample should be replaced before the retroreflectivity levels of the control sample reach the minimum levels.

F. Other Methods—Other methods developed based on engineering studies can be used.

Support:

5 Additional information about these methods is contained in the 2007 Edition of FHWA's "Maintaining Traffic Sign Retroreflectivity" (see Section 1A.11).

Option:

6 Highway agencies may exclude the following signs from the retroreflectivity maintenance guidelines described in this Section:

A. Parking, Standing, and Stopping signs (R7 and R8 series)
B. Walking/Hitchhiking/Crossing signs (R9 series, R10-1 through R10-4b)
C. Acknowledgment signs

D. All signs with blue or brown backgrounds
E. Bikeway signs that are intended for exclusive use by bicyclists or pedestrians

Section 2A.09 Shapes

Standard:

1 **Particular shapes, as shown in Table 2A-4, shall be used exclusively for specific signs or series of signs, unless otherwise provided in the text discussion in this Manual for a particular sign or class of signs.**

Table 2A-4. Use of Sign Shapes

Shape	Signs
Octagon	Stop*
Equilateral Triangle (1 point down)	Yield*
Circle	Grade Crossing Advance Warning*
Pennant Shape/Isosceles Triangle (longer axis horizontal)	No Passing*
Pentagon (pointed up)	School Advance Warning Sign (squared bottom corners)* County Route Sign (tapered bottom corners)*
Crossbuck (two rectangles in an "X" configuration)	Grade Crossing*
Diamond	Warning Series
Rectangle (including square)	Regulatory Series Guide Series** Warning Series
Trapezoid	Recreational and Cultural Interest Area Series National Forest Route Sign

* This sign shall be exclusively the shape shown.
** Guide series includes general service, specific service, tourist-oriented directional, general information, recreational and cultural interest area, and emergency management signs.

Guidance:

See Section 2D.11 for the shape of county highway route markers.

Section 2A.10 Sign Colors

Standard:

1 **The colors to be used on standard signs and their specific use on these signs shall be as provided in the applicable Sections of this Manual. The color coordinates and values shall be as described in 23 CFR, Part 655, Subpart F, Appendix.**

Support:

2 As a quick reference, common uses of sign colors are shown in Table 2A-5. Color schemes on specific signs are shown in the illustrations located in each appropriate Chapter.

3 Whenever white is specified in this Manual or in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11) as a color, it is understood to include silver-colored retroreflective coatings or elements that reflect white light.

4 The colors coral and light blue are being reserved for uses that will be determined in the future by the Federal Highway Administration.

5 Information regarding color coding of destinations on guide signs, including community wayfinding signs, is contained in Chapter 2D.

Green background with white lettering is widely used and preferred for street name signs because of the good contrast between the two colors.

Option:

6 The approved fluorescent version of the standard red, yellow, green, or orange color may be used as an alternative to the corresponding standard color.

Table 2A-5. Common Uses of Sign Colors

Type of Sign	Legend								Background										
	Black	Green	Red	White	Yellow	Orange	Fluorescent Yellow-Green	Fluorescent Pink	Black	Blue	Brown	Green	Orange*	Red*	White	Yellow*	Purple	Fluorescent Yellow-Green	Fluorescent Pink
Regulatory	X		X	X					X					X	X				
Prohibitive			X	X										X	X				
Permissive		X													X				
Warning	X															X			
Pedestrian	X															X		X	
Bicycle	X															X		X	
Guide				X								X							
Interstate Route				X						X				X					
State Route	X														X				
U.S. Route	X														X				
County Route					X					X									
Forest Route				X							X								
Street Name				X								X							
Destination				X								X							
Reference Location				X								X							
Information				X						X		X							
Evacuation Route				X						X									
Road User Service				X						X									
Recreational				X							X	X							
Temporary Traffic Control	X												X						
Incident Management	X												X						X
School	X																	X	
ETC-Account Only	X																X****		
Changeable Message Signs																			
Regulatory			X***	X					X										
Warning					X				X										
Temporary Traffic Control					X	X			X										
Guide				X					X			X**							
Motorist Services				X					X	X**									
Incident Management					X			X	X										
School, Pedestrian, Bicycle					X		X		X										

* Fluorescent versions of these background colors may also be used.

** These alternative background colors would be provided by blue or green lighted pixels such that the entire CMS would be lighted, not just the legend.

*** Red is used only for the circle and slash or other red elements of a similar static regulatory sign.

**** The use of the color purple on signs is restricted per the provisions of Paragraph 1 of Section 2F.03.

Section 2A.11 Dimensions

Support:

1 The "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11) prescribes design details for up to five different sizes depending on the type of traffic facility, including bikeways. Smaller sizes are designed to be used on bikeways and some other off-road applications. Larger sizes are designed for use on freeways and expressways, and can also be used to enhance road user safety and convenience on other facilities, especially on multi-lane divided highways and on undivided highways having five or more lanes of traffic and/or high speeds. The intermediate sizes are designed to be used on other highway types.

Standard:

2 **The sign dimensions prescribed in the sign size tables in the various Parts and Chapters in this Manual and in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11) shall be used unless engineering**

judgment determines that other sizes are appropriate. Except as provided in Paragraph 3, where engineering judgment determines that sizes smaller than the prescribed dimensions are appropriate for use, the sign dimensions shall not be less than the minimum dimensions specified in this Manual. The sizes shown in the Minimum columns that are smaller than the sizes shown in the Conventional Road columns in the various sign size tables in this Manual shall only be used on low-speed roadways, alleys, and private roads open to public travel where the reduced legend size would be adequate for the regulation or warning or where physical conditions preclude the use of larger sizes.

The WisDOT Sign Plate Book shall also be used for section 2B.03 (Size of Regulatory Signs), 2C.04 (Size of Warning Signs), 7B.01 (Size of School Area Signs), 8B.02 (Size of Grade Crossing Signs) and 9B.02 (Design of Bicycle Signs).

Support:

The Department's Sign Plate Book contains sign designs that are predominantly used by the Department. Copies of the Department's sign plate books are available from the Bureau of Traffic Operations Extranet site. These sign designs generally follow the Federal Standard Highway Signs but sometimes use a different code number.

Option:

Unless otherwise provided in the description of a specific sign or sign type, the FHWA minimum size (Department size code 1) warning and regulatory signs may be used on streets and highways which are neither State Trunk Highways, nor connecting highways and which have no more than one lane for traffic in each direction, and which have a speed limit of 30 mph or less.

Standard:

FHWA minimum size (Department size code 1) signs erected in locations having a speed limit of 35 mph or more shall be replaced with a minimum of a size code 2 S (single lane roadway) and 2 M (multilane roadway) sign as applicable.

The minimum sign size on State Trunk Highways or Connecting Highways shall be conventional road size code 2 S or 2 M as noted in the guidance below and as outlined in the 2009 MUTCD sign size tables.

Guidance:

Conventional road single lane (size code 2S) – minimum size used for single lane roads as provided in Sections 2B.03 and 2C.04.

Conventional road multilane (size code 2M) – minimum size used for multilane roads as provided in Sections 2B.03 and 2C.04.

Oversize (size code 3) – generally used for conventional roads where special emphasis is needed based on engineering judgment. Note: The oversized table shown in Table 2B-1 does not equate to size code 3; but rather, is the largest size shown for special applications.

Expressways (size code 4)

Freeways (size code 5)

Bicycle (size code 6) intended for use on bicycle paths and trails

Snowmobile (size code 7) – intended for snowmobile trail. Snowmobile signs are referenced in DNR Trail Signing Handbook

Option:

3 For alleys with restrictive physical conditions and vehicle usage that limits installation of the Minimum size sign (or the Conventional Road size sign if no Minimum size is shown), both the sign height and the sign width may be decreased by up to 6 inches.

Guidance:

4 *The sizes shown in the Freeway and Expressway columns in the various sign size tables in this Manual should be used on freeways and expressways, and for other higher-speed applications based upon engineering judgment, to provide larger signs for increased visibility and recognition.*

5 *The sizes shown in the Oversized columns in the various sign size tables in this Manual size should be used for those special applications where speed, volume, or other factors result in conditions where increased emphasis, improved recognition, or increased legibility is needed, as determined by engineering judgment or study.*

6 *Increases above the prescribed sizes should be used where greater legibility or emphasis is needed. If signs larger than the prescribed sizes are used, the overall sign dimensions should be increased in 6-inch increments.*

Standard:

7 **Where engineering judgment determines that sizes that are different than the prescribed dimensions are appropriate for use, standard shapes and colors shall be used and standard proportions shall be retained as much as practical.**

Guidance:

8 *When supplemental plaques are installed with larger sized signs, a corresponding increase in the size of the plaque and its legend should also be made. The resulting plaque size should be approximately in the same relative proportion to the larger sized sign as the conventional sized plaque is to the conventional sized sign.*

Section 2A.12 Symbols

Standard:

1 **Symbol designs shall in all cases be unmistakably similar to those shown in this Manual and in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11).**

Support:

2 New symbol designs are adopted by the Federal Highway Administration based on research evaluations to determine road user comprehension, sign conspicuity, and sign legibility.

3 Sometimes a change from word messages to symbols requires significant time for public education and transition. Therefore, this Manual sometimes includes the practice of using educational plaques to accompany new symbol signs.

Guidance:

4 *New warning or regulatory symbol signs not readily recognizable by the public should be accompanied by an educational plaque.*

Option:

5 Educational plaques may be left in place as long as they are in serviceable condition.

6 State and/or local highway agencies may conduct research studies to determine road user comprehension, sign conspicuity, and sign legibility.

Guidance:

7 *Although most standard symbols are oriented facing left, mirror images of these symbols should be used where the reverse orientation might better convey to road users a direction of movement.*

Standard:

8 **A symbol used for a given category of signs (regulatory, warning, or guide) shall not be used for a different category of signs, except as specifically authorized in this Manual.**

9 **Except as provided in Paragraph 11, a recreational and cultural interest area symbol (see Chapter 2M) shall not be used on streets or highways outside of recreational and cultural interest areas.**

10 **A recreational and cultural interest area guide sign symbol (see Chapter 2M) shall not be used on any regulatory or warning sign on any street, road, or highway.**

Option:

11 A recreational and cultural interest area guide sign symbol (see Section 2M.04) may be used on a highway guide sign outside of a recreational and cultural interest area to supplement a comparable word message for which there is no approved symbol for that message in Chapters 2B through 2I or 2N.

Support:

12 Section 2M.07 contains provisions for the use of recreational and cultural interest area symbols to indicate prohibited activities or items in non-road applications.

Section 2A.13 Word Messages

Standard:

1 **Except as provided in Section 2A.06, all word messages shall use standard wording and letters as shown in this Manual and in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11).**

Guidance:

2 *Word messages should be as brief as possible and the lettering should be large enough to provide the necessary legibility distance. A minimum specific ratio of 1 inch of letter height per 30 feet of legibility distance should be used.*

3 *Abbreviations (see Section 1A.15) should be kept to a minimum.*

4 *Word messages should not contain periods, apostrophes, question marks, ampersands, or other punctuation or characters that are not letters, numerals, or hyphens unless necessary to avoid confusion.*

5 *The solidus (slanted line or forward slash) is intended to be used for fractions only and should not be used to separate words on the same line of legend. Instead, a hyphen should be used for this purpose, such as "TRUCKS - BUSES."*

Standard:

6 **Fractions shall be displayed with the numerator and denominator diagonally arranged about the solidus (slanted line or forward slash). The overall height of the fraction is measured from the top of the numerator to the bottom of the denominator, each of which is vertically aligned with the upper and lower ends of the solidus. The overall height of the fraction shall be determined by the height of the numerals within the fraction, and shall be 1.5 times the height of an individual numeral within the fraction.**

Support:

7 The "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11) contains details regarding the layouts of fractions on signs.

Guidance:

8 *When initials are used to represent an abbreviation for separate words (such as "U S" for a United States route), the initials should be separated by a space of between 1/2 and 3/4 of the letter height of the initials.*

9 *When an Interstate route is displayed in text form instead of using the route shield, a hyphen should be used for clarity, such as "I-50."*

Standard:

10 **All sign lettering shall be in upper-case letters as provided in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11), unless otherwise provided in this Manual for a particular sign or type of message.**

11 **The sign lettering for names of places, streets, and highways shall be composed of a combination of lower-case letters with initial upper-case letters.**

Support:

12 Letter height is expressed in terms of the height of an upper-case letter. For mixed-case legends (those composed of an initial upper-case letter followed by lower-case letters), the height of the lower-case letters is derived from the specified height of the initial upper-case letter based on a prescribed ratio. Letter heights for mixed-case legends might be expressed in terms of both the upper- and lower-case letters, or in terms of the initial upper-case letter alone. When the height of a lower-case letter is specified or determined from the prescribed ratio, the reference is to the nominal loop height of the letter. The term loop height refers to the portion of a lower-case letter that excludes any ascending or descending stems or tails of the letter, such as with the letters "d" or "q." The nominal loop height is equal to the actual height of a non-rounded lower-case letter whose form does not include ascending or descending stems or tails, such as the letter "x." The rounded portions of a lower-case letter extend slightly above and below the baselines projected from the top and bottom of such a non-rounded letter so that the appearance of a uniform letter height within a word is achieved. The actual loop height of a rounded lower-case letter is slightly greater than the nominal loop height and this additional height is excluded from the expression of the lower-case letter height.

Standard:

13 **When a mixed-case legend is used, the height of the lower-case letters shall be 3/4 of the height of the initial upper-case letter.**

14 **The unique letter forms for each of the Standard Alphabet series shall not be stretched, compressed, warped, or otherwise manipulated.**

Support:

15 Section 2D.04 contains information regarding the acceptable methods of modifying the length of a word for a given letter height and series.

Section 2A.14 Sign Borders

Standard:

Unless otherwise provided, each sign illustrated in this Manual shall have a border of the same color as the legend, at or just inside the edge.

The corners of all sign borders shall be rounded, except for STOP signs.

Guidance:

A dark border on a light background should be set in from the edge, while a light border on a dark background should extend to the edge of the sign. A border for 30-inch signs with a light background should be from 1/2 to 3/4 inch in width, 1/2 inch from the edge. For similar signs with a light border, a width of 1 inch should be used. For other sizes, the border width should be of similar proportions, but should not exceed the stroke-width of the major lettering of the sign. On signs exceeding 72 x 120 inches in size, the border should be 2 inches wide, or on larger signs, 3 inches wide. Except for STOP signs and as otherwise provided in Section 2E.16, the corners of the sign should be rounded to a radius that is concentric with that of the border.

Section 2A.15 Enhanced Conspicuity for Standard Signs

Option:

Based upon engineering judgment, where the improvement of the conspicuity of a standard regulatory, warning, or guide sign is desired, any of the following methods may be used, as appropriate, to enhance the sign's conspicuity (see Figure 2A-1):

A. Increasing the size of a standard regulatory, warning, or guide sign.
B. Doubling-up of a standard regulatory, warning, or guide sign by adding a second identical sign on the left-hand side of the roadway.
C. Adding a solid yellow or fluorescent yellow rectangular "header panel" above a standard regulatory sign, with the width of the panel corresponding to the width of the standard regulatory sign. A legend of "NOTICE," "STATE LAW," or other appropriate text may be added in black letters within the header panel for a period of time determined by engineering judgment.
D. Adding a NEW plaque (see Section 2C.62) above a new standard regulatory or warning sign, for a period of time determined by engineering judgment, to call attention to the new sign.
E. Adding one or more red or orange flags (cloth or retroreflective sheeting) above a standard regulatory or warning sign, with the flags oriented so as to be at 45 degrees to the vertical.
F. Adding a solid yellow, a solid fluorescent yellow, or a diagonally striped black and yellow (or black and fluorescent yellow) strip of retroreflective sheeting at least 3 inches wide around the perimeter of a standard warning sign. This may be accomplished by affixing the standard warning sign on a background that is 6 inches larger than the size of the standard warning sign.
G. Adding a warning beacon (see Section 4L.03) to a standard regulatory (other than a STOP or a Speed Limit sign), warning, or guide sign.
H. Adding a speed limit sign beacon (see Section 4L.04) to a standard Speed Limit sign.
I. Adding a stop beacon (see Section 4L.05) to a STOP sign.
J. Adding light emitting diode (LED) units within the symbol or legend of a sign or border of a standard regulatory, warning, or guide sign, as provided in Section 2A.07.
K. Adding a strip of retroreflective material to the sign support in compliance with the provisions of Section 2A.21.
L. Using other methods that are specifically allowed for certain signs as described elsewhere in this Manual.

Support:

Sign conspicuity improvements can also be achieved by removing non-essential and illegal signs from the right-of-way (see Section 1A.08), and by relocating signs to provide better spacing.

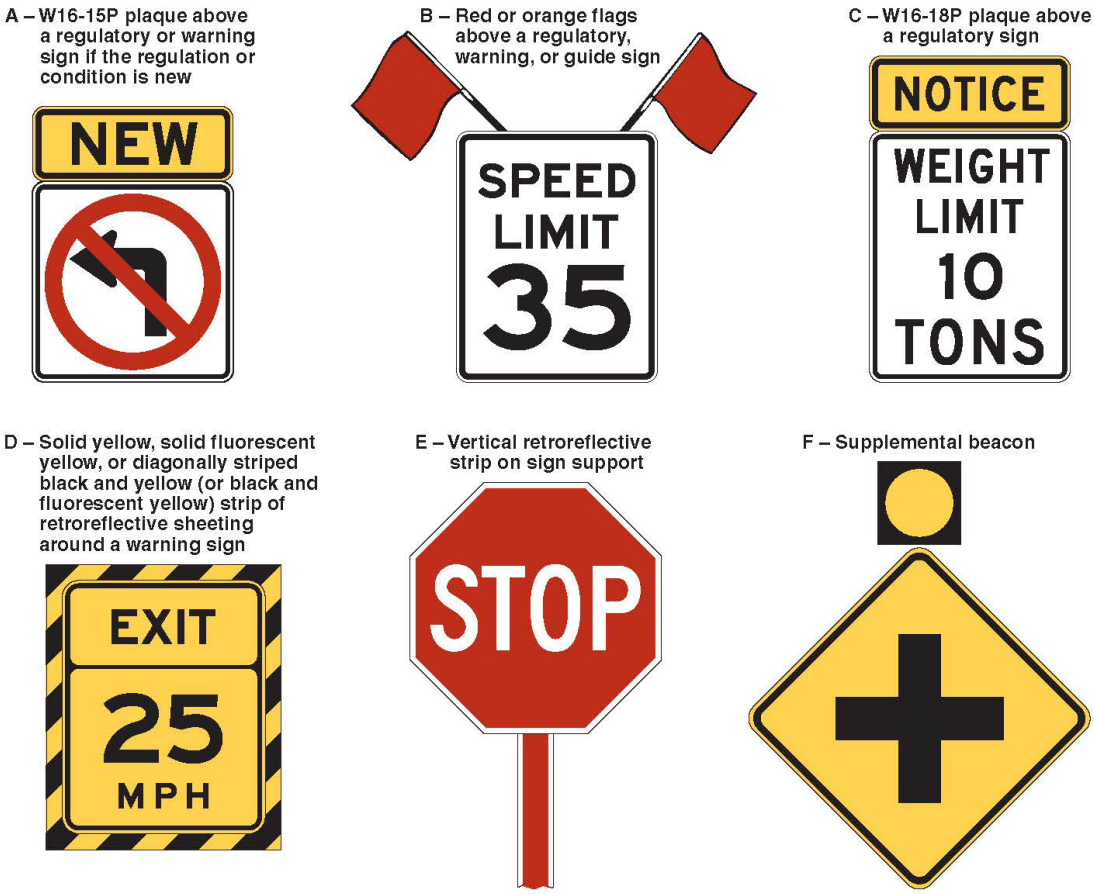
Standard:

The NEW plaque (see Section 2C.62) shall not be used alone.

A separate STATE LAW plaque shall not be used

Strobe lights shall not be used to enhance the conspicuity of highway signs.

Figure 2A-1. Examples of Enhanced Conspicuity for Signs



Section 2A.16 Standardization of Location

Support:

1 Standardization of position cannot always be attained in practice. Examples of heights and lateral locations of signs for typical installations are illustrated in Figure 2A-2, and examples of locations for some typical signs at intersections are illustrated in Figures 2A-3 and 2A-4.

2 Examples of advance signing on an intersection approach are illustrated in Figure 2A-4. Chapters 2B, 2C, and 2D contain provisions regarding the application of regulatory, warning, and guide signs, respectively.

Standard:

3 **Signs requiring separate decisions by the road user shall be spaced sufficiently far apart for the appropriate decisions to be made. One of the factors considered when determining the appropriate spacing shall be the posted or 85th-percentile speed.**

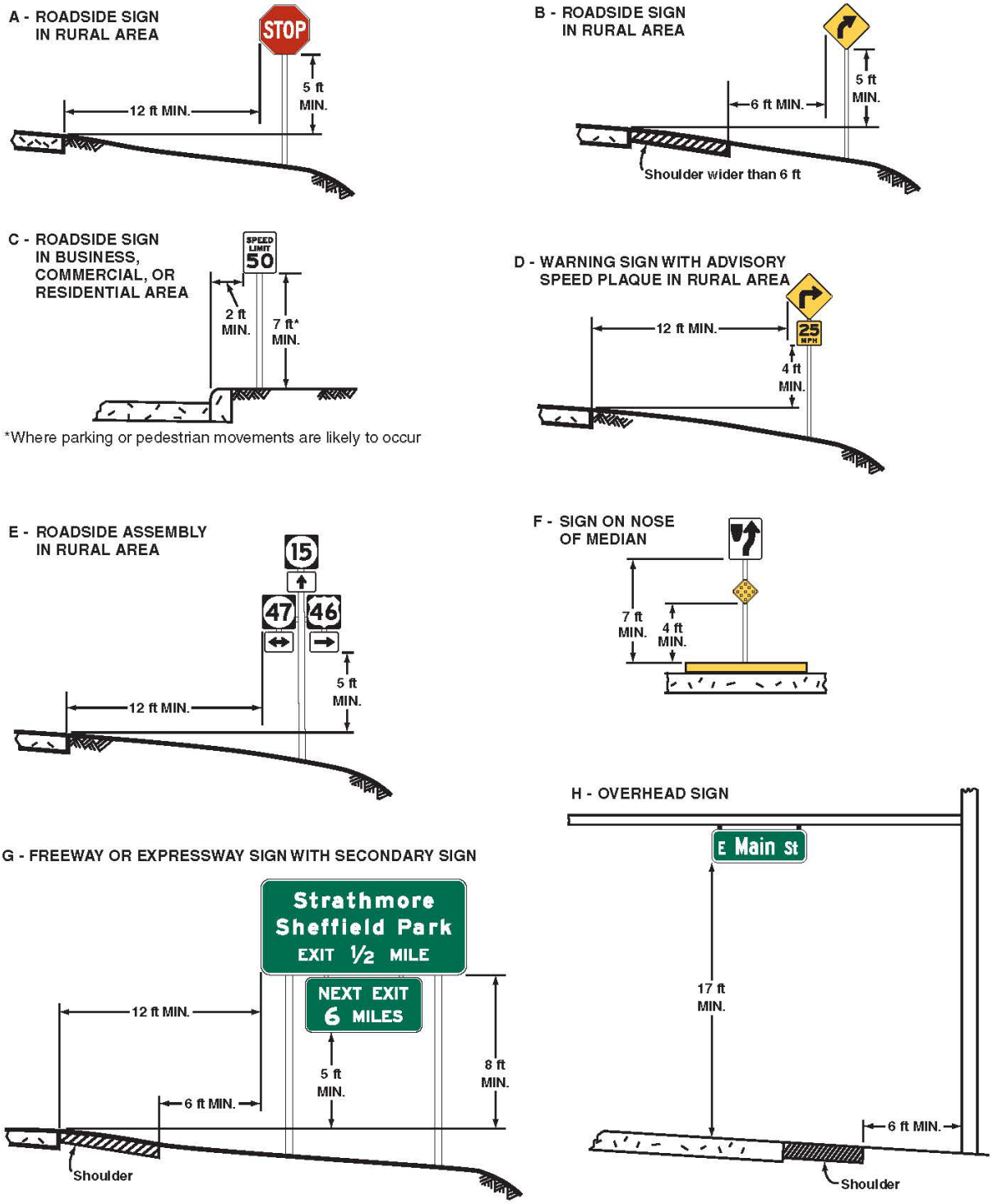
Guidance:

4 *Signs should be located on the right-hand side of the roadway where they are easily recognized and understood by road users. Signs in other locations should be considered only as supplementary to signs in the normal locations, except as otherwise provided in this Manual.*

5 *Figure 2A-2 Warning sign on island (W12-1). A 2' minimum mounting height is an option for this sign in order to avoid blocking signal indications or other signs. Signs should be individually installed on separate posts or mountings except where:*

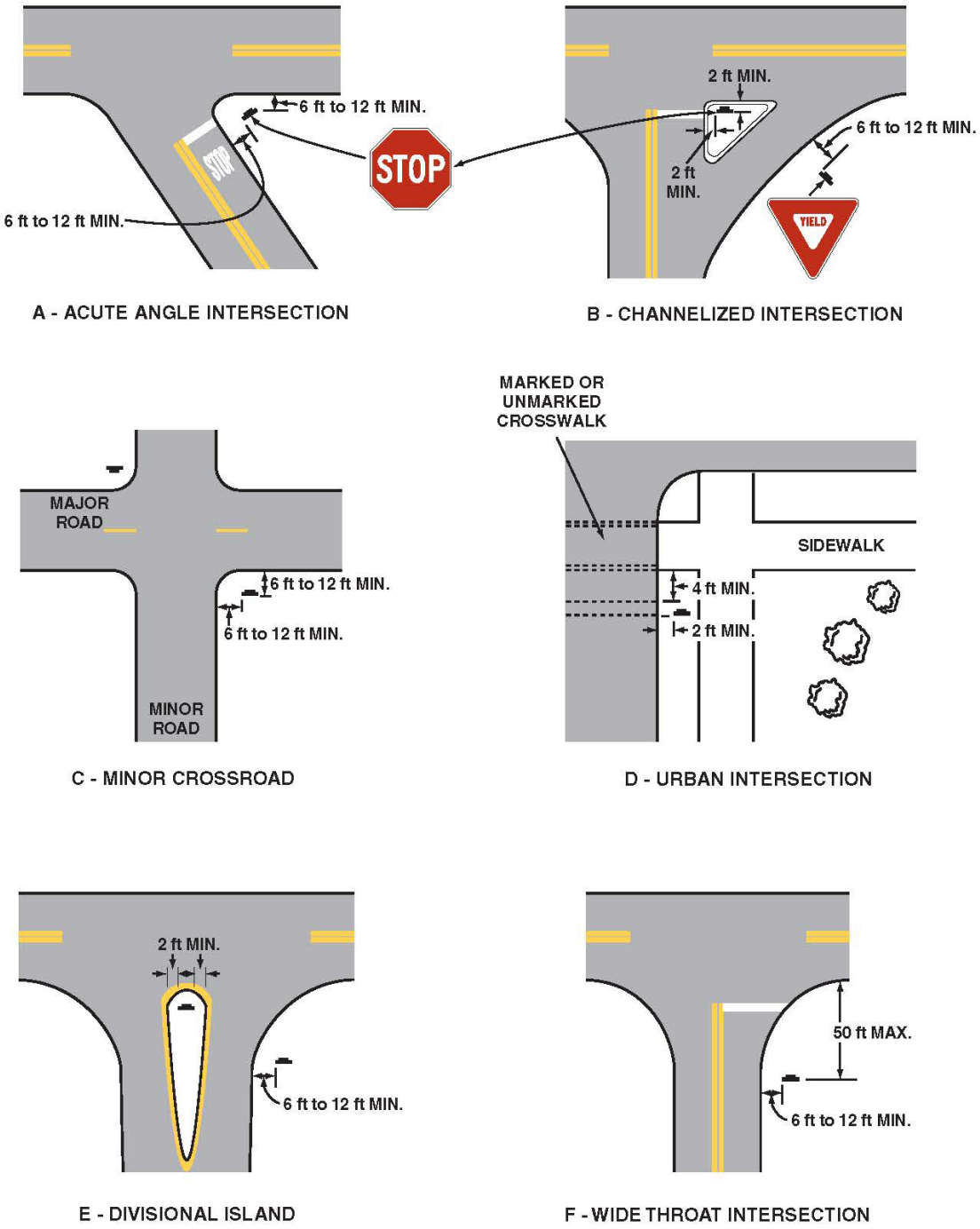
A. One sign supplements another;
B. Route or directional signs are grouped to clarify information to motorists;
C. Regulatory signs that do not conflict with each other are grouped, such as Turn Prohibition signs posted with ONE WAY signs or a parking regulation sign posted with a Speed Limit sign; or
D. Street Name signs are posted with a STOP or YIELD sign.

Figure 2A-2. Examples of Heights and Lateral Locations of Sign Installations



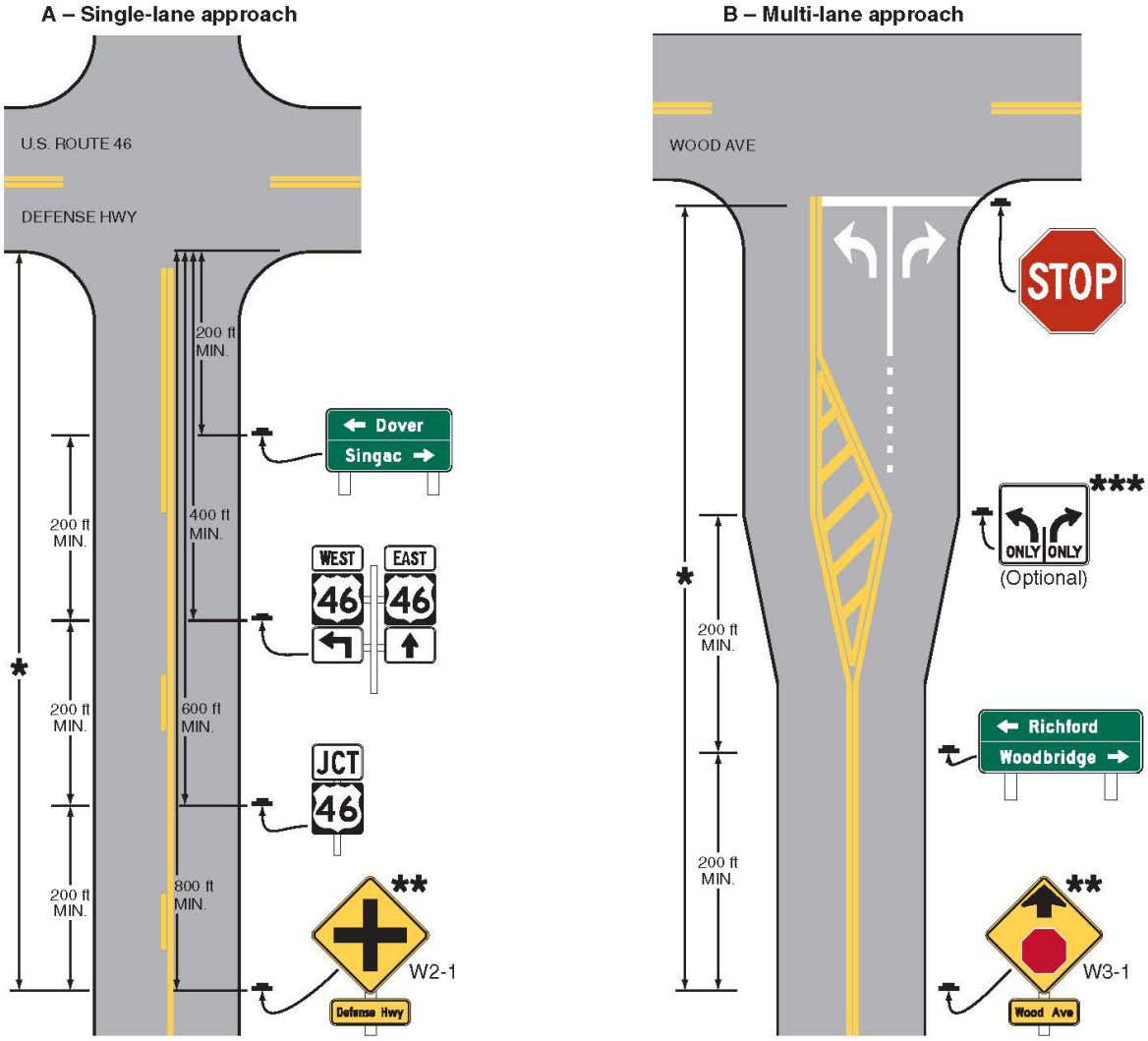
Note:
See Section 2A.19 for reduced lateral offset distances that may be used in areas where lateral offsets are limited, and in business, commercial, or residential areas where sidewalk width is limited or where existing poles are close to the curb.

Figure 2A-3. Examples of Locations for Some Typical Signs at Intersections



Note: Lateral offset is a minimum of 6 feet measured from the edge of the shoulder, or 12 feet measured from the edge of the traveled way. See Section 2A.19 for lower minimums that may be used in urban areas, or where lateral offset space is limited.

Figure 2A-4. Relative Locations of Regulatory, Warning, and Guide Signs on an Intersection Approach



Note: See Chapter 2D for information on guide signs and Part 3 for information on pavement markings

* See Table 2C-4 for the recommended minimum distance
** See Section 2C.46 for the application of the W2-1 sign and Section 2C.36 for the application of the W3-1 sign
*** See Section 2B.22 for the application of Intersection Lane Control signs

6 *Signs should be located so that they:*

A. Are outside the clear zone unless placed on a breakaway or yielding support (see Section 2A.19),
B. Optimize nighttime visibility,
C. Minimize the effects of mud splatter and debris,
D. Do not obscure each other,
E. Do not obscure the sight distance to approaching vehicles on the major street for drivers who are stopped on minor-street approaches, and
F. Are not hidden from view.

Support:

7 The clear zone is the total roadside border area, starting at the edge of the traveled way, available for use by errant vehicles. The width of the clear zone is dependent upon traffic volumes, speeds, and roadside geometry. Additional information can be found in AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11).

Guidance:

8 *With the increase in traffic volumes and the desire to provide road users regulatory, warning, and guidance information, an order of priority for sign installation should be established.*

Support:

9 An order of priority is especially critical where space is limited for sign installation and there is a demand for several different types of signs. Overloading road users with too much information is not desirable.

Guidance:

10 *Because regulatory and warning information is more critical to the road user than guidance information, regulatory and warning signing whose location is critical should be displayed rather than guide signing in cases where conflicts occur. Community wayfinding and acknowledgment guide signs should have a lower priority as to placement than other guide signs. Information of a less critical nature should be moved to less critical locations or omitted.*

Option:

11 Under some circumstances, such as on curves to the right, signs may be placed on median islands or on the left-hand side of the road. A supplementary sign located on the left-hand side of the roadway may be used on a multi-lane road where traffic in a lane to the right might obstruct the view to the right.

Guidance:

12 *In urban areas where crosswalks exist, signs should not be placed within 4 feet in advance of the crosswalk (see Drawing D in Figure 2A-3).*

Section 2A.17 Overhead Sign Installations

Guidance:

1 *Overhead signs should be used on freeways and expressways, at locations where some degree of lane-use control is desirable, and at locations where space is not available at the roadside.*

Support:

2 The operational requirements of the present highway system are such that overhead signs have value at many locations. The factors to be considered for the installation of overhead sign displays are not definable in specific numerical terms.

Option:

3 The following conditions (not in priority order) may be considered in an engineering study to determine if overhead signs would be beneficial:

A. Traffic volume at or near capacity,
B. Complex interchange design,
C. Three or more lanes in each direction,
D. Restricted sight distance,
E. Closely-spaced interchanges,
F. Multi-lane exits,
G. Large percentage of trucks,
H. Street lighting background,
I. High-speed traffic,
J. Consistency of sign message location through a series of interchanges,
K. Insufficient space for post-mounted signs,
L. Junction of two freeways, and
M. Left exit ramps.

4 Over-crossing structures may be used to support overhead signs.

Support:

5 Under some circumstances, the use of over-crossing structures as sign supports might be the only practical solution that will provide adequate viewing distance. The use of such structures as sign supports might eliminate the need for the foundations and sign supports along the roadside.

Section 2A.18 Mounting Height

Standard:

1 **The provisions of this Section shall apply unless specifically stated otherwise for a particular sign or object marker elsewhere in this Manual.**

Support:

2 The mounting height requirements for object markers are provided in Chapter 2C.

3 In addition to the provisions of this Section, information affecting the minimum mounting height of signs as a function of crash performance can be found in AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11).

Standard:

4 **The minimum height, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the pavement, of signs installed at the side of the road in rural areas shall be 5 feet (see Figure 2A-2).**

5 **The minimum height, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the top of the curb, or in the absence of curb, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the traveled way, of signs installed at the side of the road in business, commercial, or residential areas where parking or pedestrian movements are likely to occur, or where the view of the sign might be obstructed, shall be 7 feet (see Figure 2A-2).**

Option:

6 The height to the bottom of a secondary sign mounted below another sign may be 1 foot less than the height specified in Paragraphs 4 and 5.

The following signs may be mounted at 2' minimum vertical clearance:

W12-1 Double Arrows

The following signs may be mounted at 4' minimum mounting height:

W1-8 Chevrons

R6-4b Chevrons panel (roundabouts)

W5-52 Clearance striper (tiger boards)

D10 Reference posts (mile markers)

W5-56 and W5-56A End of Road Markers

W5-54D object markers

The following signs may be mounted at 5' minimum mounting height:

R1-1F portable or part-time (folding) stop signs

Standard:

7 **The minimum height, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the sidewalk, of signs installed above sidewalks shall be 7 feet.**

8 **If the bottom of a secondary sign that is mounted below another sign is mounted lower than 7 feet above a pedestrian sidewalk or pathway (see Section 6D.02), the secondary sign shall not project more than 4 inches into the pedestrian facility.**

Option:

9 Signs that are placed 30 feet or more from the edge of the traveled way may be installed with a minimum height of 5 feet, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the pavement.

Standard:

10 **Directional signs on freeways and expressways shall be installed with a minimum height of 7 feet, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the pavement. All route signs, warning signs, and regulatory signs on freeways and expressways shall be installed with a minimum height of 7 feet, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the pavement. If a secondary sign is mounted below another sign on a freeway or expressway, the major sign shall be installed with a minimum height of 8 feet and the secondary sign shall be installed with a minimum height of 5 feet, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the pavement.**

11 **Where large signs having an area exceeding 50 square feet are installed on multiple breakaway posts, the clearance from the ground to the bottom of the sign shall be at least 7 feet.**

Option:

12 A route sign assembly consisting of a route sign and auxiliary signs (see Section 2D.31) may be treated as a single sign for the purposes of this Section.

13 The mounting height may be adjusted when supports are located near the edge of the right-of-way on a steep backslope in order to avoid the sometimes less desirable alternative of placing the sign closer to the roadway.

Standard:

14 **Overhead signs shall provide a vertical clearance of not less than 17 feet to the sign, light fixture, or sign bridge over the entire width of the pavement and shoulders except where the structure on which the overhead signs are to be mounted or other structures along the roadway near the sign structure have a lesser vertical clearance.**

Option:

15 If the vertical clearance of other structures along the roadway near the sign structure is less than 16 feet, the vertical clearance to an overhead sign structure or support may be as low as 1 foot higher than the vertical clearance of the other structures in order to improve the visibility of the overhead signs.

16 In special cases it may be necessary to reduce the clearance to overhead signs because of substandard dimensions in tunnels and other major structures such as double-deck bridges.

Support:

17 Figure 2A-2 illustrates some examples of the mounting height requirements contained in this Section.

Section 2A.19 Lateral Offset

Standard:

1 **For overhead sign supports, the minimum lateral offset from the edge of the shoulder (or if no shoulder exists, from the edge of the pavement) to the near edge of overhead sign supports (cantilever or sign bridges) shall be 6 feet. Overhead sign supports shall have a barrier or crash cushion to shield them if they are within the clear zone.**

2 **Post-mounted sign and object marker supports shall be crashworthy (breakaway, yielding, or shielded with a longitudinal barrier or crash cushion) if within the clear zone.**

Guidance:

3 *For post-mounted signs, the minimum lateral offset should be 12 feet from the edge of the traveled way. If a shoulder wider than 6 feet exists, the minimum lateral offset for post-mounted signs should be 6 feet from the edge of the shoulder.*

4 *Where a national standard-compliant device exists but does not meet the maintaining authority's needs, given project or regional conditions, the maintaining authority may exercise engineering judgement in identifying the appropriate sign or object marker. A roadside appurtenance that does not meet a national standard may be used in the clear zone, with or without protection, if the maintaining authority has concluded the appurtenance has benefits outweighing any crash risk.*

5 Option:

On freeways and expressways where the shoulder is greater than 6' wide, the lateral offset may be 12' minimum from the freeway or expressway edge of driving lane rather than 6' from the edge of the shoulder, but no less than 2' from the edge of gravel.

Where signs are mounted behind crash worthy protection such as guardrail or barrier wall, the lateral offset may be 4'-6" behind the guardrail, which allows for 3' 3" of guardrail deflection.

Support:

6 The minimum lateral offset requirements for object markers are provided in Chapter 2C.

7 The minimum lateral offset is intended to keep trucks and cars that use the shoulders from striking the signs or supports.

Guidance:

8 *All supports should be located as far as practical from the edge of the shoulder. Advantage should be taken to place signs behind existing roadside barriers, on over-crossing structures, or other locations that minimize the exposure of the traffic to sign supports.*

Option:

9 Where permitted, signs may be placed on existing supports used for other purposes, such as highway traffic signal supports, highway lighting supports, and utility poles.

Paragraph (07) is expanded to clarify "where permitted" to mean the signs are permitted by the authority having jurisdiction for the light poles and utility poles.

Standard:

10 **If signs are placed on existing supports, they shall meet other placement criteria contained in this Manual.**

Option:

11 Lesser lateral offsets may be used on connecting roadways or ramps at interchanges, but not less than 6 feet from the edge of the traveled way.

12 On conventional roads in areas where it is impractical to locate a sign with the lateral offset prescribed by this Section, a lateral offset of at least 2 feet may be used.

13 A lateral offset of at least 1 foot from the face of the curb may be used in business, commercial or residential areas where sidewalk width is limited or where existing poles are close to the curb.

Guidance:

14 *Overhead sign supports and post-mounted sign and object marker supports should not intrude into the usable width of a sidewalk or other pedestrian facility.*

Support:

15 Figures 2A-2 and 2A-3 illustrate some examples of the lateral offset requirements contained in this Section.

Section 2A.20 Orientation

Guidance:

1 *Unless otherwise provided in this Manual, signs should be vertically mounted at right angles to the direction of, and facing, the traffic that they are intended to serve.*

2 *Where mirror reflection from the sign face is encountered to such a degree as to reduce legibility, the sign should be turned slightly away from the road. Signs that are placed 30 feet or more from the pavement edge should be turned toward the road. On curved alignments, the angle of placement should be determined by the direction of approaching traffic rather than by the roadway edge at the point where the sign is located.*

Support:

No significant viewing advantage is obtained by tilting the vertical orientation of signs, and this practice may cause unnecessary construction complication.

Option:

3 On grades, sign faces may be tilted forward or back from the vertical position to improve the viewing angle.

Section 2A.21 Posts and Mountings

Standard:

1 **Sign posts, foundations, and mountings shall be so constructed as to hold signs in a proper and permanent position, and to resist swaying in the wind or displacement by vandalism.**

Support:

2 The latest edition of AASHTO's "Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals" contains additional information regarding posts and mounting (see Page i for AASHTO's address).

Option:

3 Where engineering judgment indicates a need to draw attention to the sign during nighttime conditions, a strip of retroreflective material may be used on regulatory and warning sign supports.

Standard:

4 **If a strip of retroreflective material is used on the sign support, it shall be at least 2 inches in width, it shall be placed for the full length of the support from the sign to within 2 feet above the edge of the roadway, and its color shall match the background color of the sign, except that the color of the strip for the YIELD and DO NOT ENTER signs shall be red.**

Reflective strips shall not be installed on State-owned signposts unless authorized by the WisDOT Region Traffic Section based on an Engineering Study.

Section 2A.22 Maintenance

Guidance:

1 *Maintenance activities should consider proper position, cleanliness, legibility, and daytime and nighttime visibility (see Section 2A.08). Damaged or deteriorated signs, gates, or object markers should be replaced.*

2 *To assure adequate maintenance, a schedule for inspecting (both day and night), cleaning, and replacing signs, gates, and object markers should be established. Employees of highway, law enforcement, and other public agencies whose duties require that they travel on the roadways should be encouraged to report any damaged, deteriorated, or obscured signs, gates, or object markers at the first opportunity.*

3 *Steps should be taken to see that weeds, trees, shrubbery, and construction, maintenance, and utility materials and equipment do not obscure the face of any sign or object marker.*

4 *A regular schedule of replacement of lighting elements for illuminated signs should be maintained.*

Section 2A.23 Median Opening Treatments for Divided Highways with Wide Medians

Guidance:

1 *Where divided highways are separated by median widths at the median opening itself of 30 feet or more, median openings should be signed as two separate intersections.*

PART 6. TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL

CHAPTER 6A. GENERAL

Section 6A.01 General

Support:

1 Whenever the acronym "TTC" is used in Part 6, it refers to "temporary traffic control."

Standard:

2 **The needs and control of all road users (motorists, bicyclists, and pedestrians within the highway, or on private roads open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13), including persons with disabilities in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA), Title II, Paragraph 35.130) through a TTC zone shall be an essential part of highway construction, utility work, maintenance operations, and the management of traffic incidents.**

Support:

3 When the normal function of the roadway, or a private road open to public travel, is suspended, TTC planning provides for continuity of the movement of motor vehicle, bicycle, and pedestrian traffic (including accessible passage); transit operations; and access (and accessibility) to property and utilities.

4 The primary function of TTC is to provide for the reasonably safe and effective movement of road users through or around TTC zones while reasonably protecting road users, workers, responders to traffic incidents, and equipment.

5 Of equal importance to the public traveling through the TTC zone is the safety of workers performing the many varied tasks within the work space. TTC zones present constantly changing conditions that are unexpected by the road user. This creates an even higher degree of vulnerability for the workers and incident management responders on or near the roadway (see Section 6D.03). At the same time, the TTC zone provides for the efficient completion of whatever activity interrupted the normal use of the roadway.

6 Consideration for road user safety, worker and responder safety, and the efficiency of road user flow is an integral element of every TTC zone, from planning through completion. A concurrent objective of the TTC is the efficient construction and maintenance of the highway and the efficient resolution of traffic incidents.

7 No one set of TTC devices can satisfy all conditions for a given project or incident. At the same time, defining details that would be adequate to cover all applications is not practical. Instead, Part 6 displays typical applications that depict common applications of TTC devices. The TTC selected for each situation depends on type of highway, road user conditions, duration of operation, physical constraints, and the nearness of the work space or incident management activity to road users.

8 Improved road user performance might be realized through a well-prepared public relations effort that covers the nature of the work, the time and duration of its execution, the anticipated effects upon road users, and possible alternate routes and modes of travel. Such programs have been found to result in a significant reduction in the number of road users traveling through the TTC zone, which reduces the possible number of conflicts.

9 Operational improvements might be realized by using intelligent transportation systems (ITS) in work zones. The use in work zones of ITS technology, such as portable camera systems, highway advisory radio, variable speed limits, ramp metering, traveler information, merge guidance, and queue detection information, is aimed at increasing safety for both workers and road users and helping to ensure a more efficient traffic flow. The use in work zones of ITS technologies has been found to be effective in providing traffic monitoring and management, data collection, and traveler information.

Standard:

10 **TTC plans and devices shall be the responsibility of the authority of a public body or official having jurisdiction for guiding road users. There shall be adequate statutory authority for the implementation and enforcement of needed road user regulations, parking controls, speed zoning, and the management of traffic incidents. Such statutes shall provide sufficient flexibility in the application of TTC to meet the needs of changing conditions in the TTC zone.**

Support:

11 Temporary facilities, including pedestrian routes around worksites, are also covered by the accessibility requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) (Public Law 101-336, 104 Stat. 327, July 26, 1990. 42 U.S.C. 12101-12213 (as amended)).

Guidance:

12 *The TTC plan should start in the planning phase and continue through the design, construction, and restoration phases. The TTC plans and devices should follow the principles set forth in Part 6. The management of traffic incidents should follow the principles set forth in Chapter 6I.*

Option:

13 TTC plans may deviate from the typical applications described in Chapter 6H to allow for conditions and requirements of a particular site or jurisdiction.

Support:

14 The provisions of Part 6 apply to both rural and urban areas. A rural highway is normally characterized by lower volumes, higher speeds, fewer turning conflicts, and less conflict with pedestrians. An urban street is typically characterized by relatively low speeds, wide ranges of road user volumes, narrower roadway lanes, frequent intersections and driveways, significant pedestrian activity, and more businesses and houses.

15 The determination as to whether a particular facility at a particular time of day can be considered to be a high-volume roadway or can be considered to be a low-volume roadway is made by the public agency or official having jurisdiction.

CHAPTER 6B. FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES

Section 6B.01 Fundamental Principles of Temporary Traffic Control

Support:

1 Construction, maintenance, utility, and incident zones can all benefit from TTC to compensate for the unexpected or unusual situations faced by road users. When planning for TTC in these zones, it can be assumed that it is appropriate for road users to exercise caution. Even though road users are assumed to be using caution, special care is still needed in applying TTC techniques.

2 Special plans preparation and coordination with transit, other highway agencies, law enforcement and other emergency units, utilities, schools, and railroad companies might be needed to reduce unexpected and unusual road user operation situations.

3 During TTC activities, commercial vehicles might need to follow a different route from passenger vehicles because of bridge, weight, clearance, or geometric restrictions. Also, vehicles carrying hazardous materials might need to follow a different route from other vehicles. The Hazardous Materials and National Network signs are included in Sections 2B.62 and 2B.63, respectively.

4 Experience has shown that following the fundamental principles of Part 6 will assist road users and help protect workers in the vicinity of TTC zones.

Guidance:

5 *Road user and worker safety and accessibility in TTC zones should be an integral and high-priority element of every project from planning through design and construction. Similarly, maintenance and utility work should be planned and conducted with the safety and accessibility of all motorists, bicyclists, pedestrians (including those with disabilities), and workers being considered at all times. If the TTC zone includes a grade crossing, early coordination with the railroad company or light rail transit agency should take place.*

Support:

6 Formulating specific plans for TTC at traffic incidents is difficult because of the variety of situations that can arise.

Guidance:

7 *The following are the seven fundamental principles of TTC:*

1. *General plans or guidelines should be developed to provide safety for motorists, bicyclists, pedestrians, workers, enforcement/emergency officials, and equipment, with the following factors being considered:*
   - *A. The basic safety principles governing the design of permanent roadways and roadsides should also govern the design of TTC zones. The goal should be to route road users through such zones using roadway geometrics, roadside features, and TTC devices as nearly as possible comparable to those for normal highway situations.*
   - *B. A TTC plan, in detail appropriate to the complexity of the work project or incident, should be prepared and understood by all responsible parties before the site is occupied. Any changes in the TTC plan should be approved by an official who is knowledgeable (for example, trained and/or certified) in proper TTC practices.*
2. *Road user movement should be inhibited as little as practical, based on the following considerations:*
   - *A. TTC at work and incident sites should be designed on the assumption that drivers will only reduce their speeds if they clearly perceive a need to do so (see Section 6C.01).*
   - *B. Frequent and abrupt changes in geometrics such as lane narrowing, dropped lanes, or main roadway transitions that require rapid maneuvers, should be avoided.*
   - *C. Work should be scheduled in a manner that minimizes the need for lane closures or alternate routes, while still getting the work completed quickly and the lanes or roadway open to traffic as soon as possible.*
   - *D. Attempts should be made to reduce the volume of traffic using the roadway or freeway to match the restricted capacity conditions. Road users should be encouraged to use alternative routes. For high-volume roadways and freeways, the closure of selected entrance ramps or other access points and the use of signed diversion routes should be evaluated.*
   - *E. Bicyclists and pedestrians, including those with disabilities, should be provided with access and reasonably safe passage through the TTC zone.*

F. *If work operations permit, lane closures on high-volume streets and highways should be scheduled during off-peak hours. Night work should be considered if the work can be accomplished with a series of short-term operations.*
G. *Early coordination with officials having jurisdiction over the affected cross streets and providing emergency services should occur if significant impacts to roadway operations are anticipated.*

3. *Motorists, bicyclists, and pedestrians should be guided in a clear and positive manner while approaching and traversing TTC zones and incident sites. The following principles should be applied:*
   A. *Adequate warning, delineation, and channelization should be provided to assist in guiding road users in advance of and through the TTC zone or incident site by using proper pavement marking, signing, or other devices that are effective under varying conditions. Providing information that is in usable formats by pedestrians with visual disabilities should also be considered.*
   B. *TTC devices inconsistent with intended travel paths through TTC zones should be removed or covered. However, in intermediate-term stationary, short-term, and mobile operations, where visible permanent devices are inconsistent with intended travel paths, devices that highlight or emphasize the appropriate path should be used. Providing traffic control devices that are accessible to and usable by pedestrians with disabilities should be considered.*
   C. *Flagging procedures, when used, should provide positive guidance to road users traversing the TTC zone.*
4. *To provide acceptable levels of operations, routine day and night inspections of TTC elements should be performed as follows:*
   A. *Individuals who are knowledgeable (for example, trained and/or certified) in the principles of proper TTC should be assigned responsibility for safety in TTC zones. The most important duty of these individuals should be to check that all TTC devices of the project are consistent with the TTC plan and are effective for motorists, bicyclists, pedestrians, and workers.*
   B. *As the work progresses, temporary traffic controls and/or working conditions should be modified, if appropriate, in order to provide mobility and positive guidance to the road user and to provide worker safety. The individual responsible for TTC should have the authority to halt work until applicable or remedial safety measures are taken.*
   C. *TTC zones should be carefully monitored under varying conditions of road user volumes, light, and weather to check that applicable TTC devices are effective, clearly visible, clean, and in compliance with the TTC plan.*
   D. *When warranted, an engineering study should be made (in cooperation with law enforcement officials) of reported crashes occurring within the TTC zone. Crash records in TTC zones should be monitored to identify the need for changes in the TTC zone.*
5. *Attention should be given to the maintenance of roadside safety during the life of the TTC zone by applying the following principles:*
   A. *To accommodate run-off-the-road incidents, disabled vehicles, or emergency situations, unencumbered roadside recovery areas or clear zones should be provided where practical.*
   B. *Channelization of road users should be accomplished by the use of pavement markings, signing, and crashworthy, detectable channelizing devices.*
   C. *Work equipment, workers' private vehicles, materials, and debris should be stored in such a manner to reduce the probability of being impacted by run-off-the-road vehicles.*
6. *Each person whose actions affect TTC zone safety, from the upper-level management through the field workers, should receive training appropriate to the job decisions each individual is required to make. Only those individuals who are trained in proper TTC practices and have a basic understanding of the principles (established by applicable standards and guidelines, including those of this Manual) should supervise the selection, placement, and maintenance of TTC devices used for TTC zones and for incident management.*
7. *Good public relations should be maintained by applying the following principles:*
   A. *The needs of all road users should be assessed such that appropriate advance notice is given and clearly defined alternative paths are provided.*
   B. *The cooperation of the various news media should be sought in publicizing the existence of and reasons for TTC zones because news releases can assist in keeping the road users well informed.*

C. *The needs of abutting property owners, residents, and businesses should be assessed and appropriate accommodations made.*
D. *The needs of emergency service providers (law enforcement, fire, and medical) should be assessed and appropriate coordination and accommodations made.*
E. *The needs of railroads and transit should be assessed and appropriate coordination and accommodations made.*
F. *The needs of operators of commercial vehicles such as buses and large trucks should be assessed and appropriate accommodations made.*

Standard:

Before any new detour or temporary route is opened to traffic, all necessary signs shall be in place.

All TTC devices shall be removed as soon as practical when they are no longer needed. When work is suspended for short periods of time, TTC devices that are no longer appropriate shall be removed or covered.

CHAPTER 6C. TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL ELEMENTS

Section 6C.01 Temporary Traffic Control Plans

Support:

1 A TTC plan describes TTC measures to be used for facilitating road users through a work zone or an incident area. TTC plans play a vital role in providing continuity of effective road user flow when a work zone, incident, or other event temporarily disrupts normal road user flow. Important auxiliary provisions that cannot conveniently be specified on project plans can easily be incorporated into Special Provisions within the TTC plan.

2 TTC plans range in scope from being very detailed to simply referencing typical drawings contained in this Manual, standard approved highway agency drawings and manuals, or specific drawings contained in the contract documents. The degree of detail in the TTC plan depends entirely on the nature and complexity of the situation.

Guidance:

3 *TTC plans should be prepared by persons knowledgeable (for example, trained and/or certified) about the fundamental principles of TTC and work activities to be performed. The design, selection, and placement of TTC devices for a TTC plan should be based on engineering judgment.*

4 *Coordination should be made between adjacent or overlapping projects to check that duplicate signing is not used and to check compatibility of traffic control between adjacent or overlapping projects.*

5 *Traffic control planning should be completed for all highway construction, utility work, maintenance operations, and incident management including minor maintenance and utility projects prior to occupying the TTC zone. Planning for all road users should be included in the process.*

6 *Provisions for effective continuity of accessible circulation paths for pedestrians should be incorporated into the TTC process. Where existing pedestrian routes are blocked or detoured, information should be provided about alternative routes that are usable by pedestrians with disabilities, particularly those who have visual disabilities. Access to temporary bus stops, travel across intersections with accessible pedestrian signals (see Section 4E.09), and other routing issues should be considered where temporary pedestrian routes are channelized. Barriers and channelizing devices that are detectable by people with visual disabilities should be provided.*

Option:

7 Provisions may be incorporated into the project bid documents that enable contractors to develop an alternate TTC plan.

8 Modifications of TTC plans may be necessary because of changed conditions or a determination of better methods of safely and efficiently handling road users.

Guidance:

9 *This alternate or modified plan should have the approval of the responsible highway agency prior to implementation.*

10 *Provisions for effective continuity of transit service should be incorporated into the TTC planning process because often public transit buses cannot efficiently be detoured in the same manner as other vehicles (particularly for short-term maintenance projects). Where applicable, the TTC plan should provide for features such as accessible temporary bus stops, pull-outs, and satisfactory waiting areas for transit patrons, including persons with disabilities, if applicable (see Section 8A.08 for additional light rail transit issues to consider for TTC).*

11 *Provisions for effective continuity of railroad service and acceptable access to abutting property owners and businesses should also be incorporated into the TTC planning process.*

12 *Reduced speed limits should be used only in the specific portion of the TTC zone where conditions or restrictive features are present. However, frequent changes in the speed limit should be avoided. A TTC plan should be designed so that vehicles can travel through the TTC zone with a speed limit reduction of no more than 10 mph.*

13 *A reduction of more than 10 mph in the speed limit should be used only when required by restrictive features in the TTC zone. Where restrictive features justify a speed reduction of more than 10 mph, additional driver notification should be provided. The speed limit should be stepped down in advance of the location requiring the lowest speed, and additional TTC warning devices should be used.*

14 *Reduced speed zoning (lowering the regulatory speed limit) should be avoided as much as practical because drivers will reduce their speeds only if they clearly perceive a need to do so.*

Support:

15 Research has demonstrated that large reductions in the speed limit, such as a 30 mph reduction, increase speed variance and the potential for crashes. Smaller reductions in the speed limit of up to 10 mph cause smaller changes in speed variance and lessen the potential for increased crashes. A reduction in the regulatory speed limit of only up to 10 mph from the normal speed limit has been shown to be more effective.

Section 6C.02 Temporary Traffic Control Zones

Support:

1 A TTC zone is an area of a highway where road user conditions are changed because of a work zone, an incident zone, or a planned special event through the use of TTC devices, uniformed law enforcement officers, or other authorized personnel.

2 A work zone is an area of a highway with construction, maintenance, or utility work activities. A work zone is typically marked by signs, channelizing devices, barriers, pavement markings, and/or work vehicles. It extends from the first warning sign or high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights on a vehicle to the END ROAD WORK sign or the last TTC device.

3 An incident zone is an area of a highway where temporary traffic controls are imposed by authorized officials in response to a traffic incident (see Section 6I.01). It extends from the first warning device (such as a sign, light, or cone) to the last TTC device or to a point where road users return to the original lane alignment and are clear of the incident.

4 A planned special event often creates the need to establish altered traffic patterns to handle the increased traffic volumes generated by the event. The size of the TTC zone associated with a planned special event can be small, such as closing a street for a festival, or can extend throughout a municipality for larger events. The duration of the TTC zone is determined by the duration of the planned special event.

Section 6C.03 Components of Temporary Traffic Control Zones

Support:

1 Most TTC zones are divided into four areas: the advance warning area, the transition area, the activity area, and the termination area. Figure 6C-1 illustrates these four areas. These four areas are described in Sections 6C.04 through 6C.07.

Figure 6C-1. Component Parts of a Temporary Traffic Control Zone

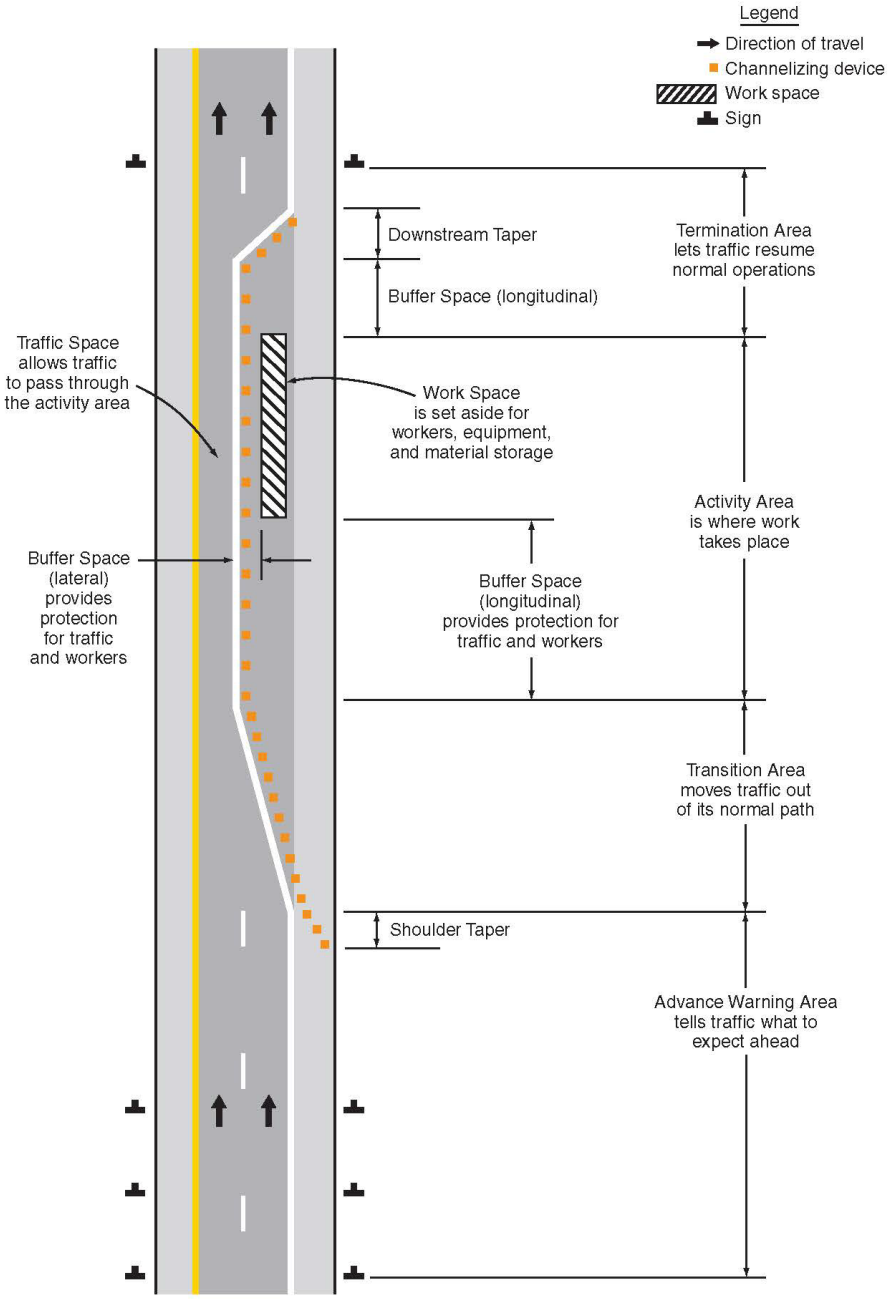


Table 6C-1. Recommended Advance Warning Sign Minimum Spacing

Road Type	Distance Between Signs**		
	A	B	C
Urban (low speed)*	100 feet	100 feet	100 feet
Urban (high speed)*	350 feet	350 feet	350 feet
Rural	500 feet	500 feet	500 feet
Expressway / Freeway	1,000 feet	1,500 feet	2,640 feet

* Speed category to be determined by the highway agency

** The column headings A, B, and C are the dimensions shown in Figures 6H-1 through 6H-46. The A dimension is the distance from the transition or point of restriction to the first sign. The B dimension is the distance between the first and second signs. The C dimension is the distance between the second and third signs. (The “first sign” is the sign in a three-sign series that is closest to the TTC zone. The “third sign” is the sign that is furthest upstream from the TTC zone.)

Section 6C.04 Advance Warning Area

Support:

1 The advance warning area is the section of highway where road users are informed about the upcoming work zone or incident area.

Option:

2 The advance warning area may vary from a single sign or high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights on a vehicle to a series of signs in advance of the TTC zone activity area.

Guidance:

3 *Typical distances for placement of advance warning signs on freeways and expressways should be longer because drivers are conditioned to uninterrupted flow. Therefore, the advance warning sign placement should extend on these facilities as far as 1/2 mile or more.*

4 *On urban streets, the effective placement of the first warning sign in feet should range from 4 to 8 times the speed limit in mph, with the high end of the range being used when speeds are relatively high. When a single advance warning sign is used (in cases such as low-speed residential streets), the advance warning area can be as short as 100 feet. When two or more advance warning signs are used on higher-speed streets, such as major arterials, the advance warning area should extend a greater distance (see Table 6C-1).*

5 *Since rural highways are normally characterized by higher speeds, the effective placement of the first warning sign in feet should be substantially longer—from 8 to 12 times the speed limit in mph. Since two or more advance warning signs are normally used for these conditions, the advance warning area should extend 1,500 feet or more for open highway conditions (see Table 6C-1).*

6 *The distances contained in Table 6C-1 are approximate, are intended for guidance purposes only, and should be applied with engineering judgment. These distances should be adjusted for field conditions, if necessary, by increasing or decreasing the recommended distances.*

Support:

7 The need to provide additional reaction time for a condition is one example of justification for increasing the sign spacing. Conversely, decreasing the sign spacing might be justified in order to place a sign immediately downstream of an intersection or major driveway such that traffic turning onto the roadway in the direction of the TTC zone will be warned of the upcoming condition.

Option:

8 Advance warning may be eliminated when the activity area is sufficiently removed from the road users' path so that it does not interfere with the normal flow.

Guidance:

For Table 6C-1, the following should be used to differentiate Urban (low speed) roads from Urban (high speed) roads:

Urban (low speed): Speed limits of 25-30 mph.
Urban (high speed): Speed limits of 35-40 mph.

For urban low speed roads, the minimum advance warning area and distance between signs (A, B, and C) in Table 6C-1 should be approximately 200 feet.

Option:

For urban low speed roads, where field conditions such as location of intersections, trees, existing signs or other obstructions dictate, the minimum advance warning area and distance between signs (A, B, and C) in Table 6C-1 may be as short as 100 feet.

Section 6C.05 Transition Area

Support:

1 The transition area is that section of highway where road users are redirected out of their normal path. Transition areas usually involve strategic use of tapers, which because of their importance are discussed separately in detail.

Standard:

2 **When redirection of the road users' normal path is required, they shall be directed from the normal path to a new path.**

Option:

3 Because it is impractical in mobile operations to redirect the road user's normal path with stationary channelization, more dominant vehicle-mounted traffic control devices, such as arrow boards, portable changeable message signs, and high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights, may be used instead of channelizing devices to establish a transition area.

Section 6C.06 Activity Area

Support:

1 The activity area is the section of the highway where the work activity takes place. It is comprised of the work space, the traffic space, and the buffer space.

2 The work space is that portion of the highway closed to road users and set aside for workers, equipment, and material, and a shadow vehicle if one is used upstream. Work spaces are usually delineated for road users by channelizing devices or, to exclude vehicles and pedestrians, by temporary barriers.

Option:

3 The work space may be stationary or may move as work progresses.

Guidance:

4 *Since there might be several work spaces (some even separated by several miles) within the project limits, each work space should be adequately signed to inform road users and reduce confusion.*

Support:

5 The traffic space is the portion of the highway in which road users are routed through the activity area.

6 The buffer space is a lateral and/or longitudinal area that separates road user flow from the work space or an unsafe area, and might provide some recovery space for an errant vehicle.

Guidance:

7 *Neither work activity nor storage of equipment, vehicles, or material should occur within a buffer space.*

Option:

8 Buffer spaces may be positioned either longitudinally or laterally with respect to the direction of road user flow. The activity area may contain one or more lateral or longitudinal buffer spaces.

9 A longitudinal buffer space may be placed in advance of a work space.

10 The longitudinal buffer space may also be used to separate opposing road user flows that use portions of the same traffic lane, as shown in Figure 6C-2.

11 If a longitudinal buffer space is used, the values shown in Table 6C-2 may be used to determine the length of the longitudinal buffer space.

Table 6C-2. Stopping Sight Distance as a Function of Speed

Speed*	Distance
20 mph	115 feet
25 mph	155 feet
30 mph	200 feet
35 mph	250 feet
40 mph	305 feet
45 mph	360 feet
50 mph	425 feet
55 mph	495 feet
60 mph	570 feet
65 mph	645 feet
70 mph	730 feet
75 mph	820 feet

* Posted speed, off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to work starting, or the anticipated operating speed

Support:

12 Typically, the buffer space is formed as a traffic island and defined by channelizing devices.

13 When a shadow vehicle, arrow board, or changeable message sign is placed in a closed lane in advance of a work space, only the area upstream of the vehicle, arrow board, or changeable message sign constitutes the buffer space.

Option:

14 The lateral buffer space may be used to separate the traffic space from the work space, as shown in Figures 6C-1 and 6C-2, or such areas as excavations or pavement-edge drop-offs. A lateral buffer space also may be used between two travel lanes, especially those carrying opposing flows.

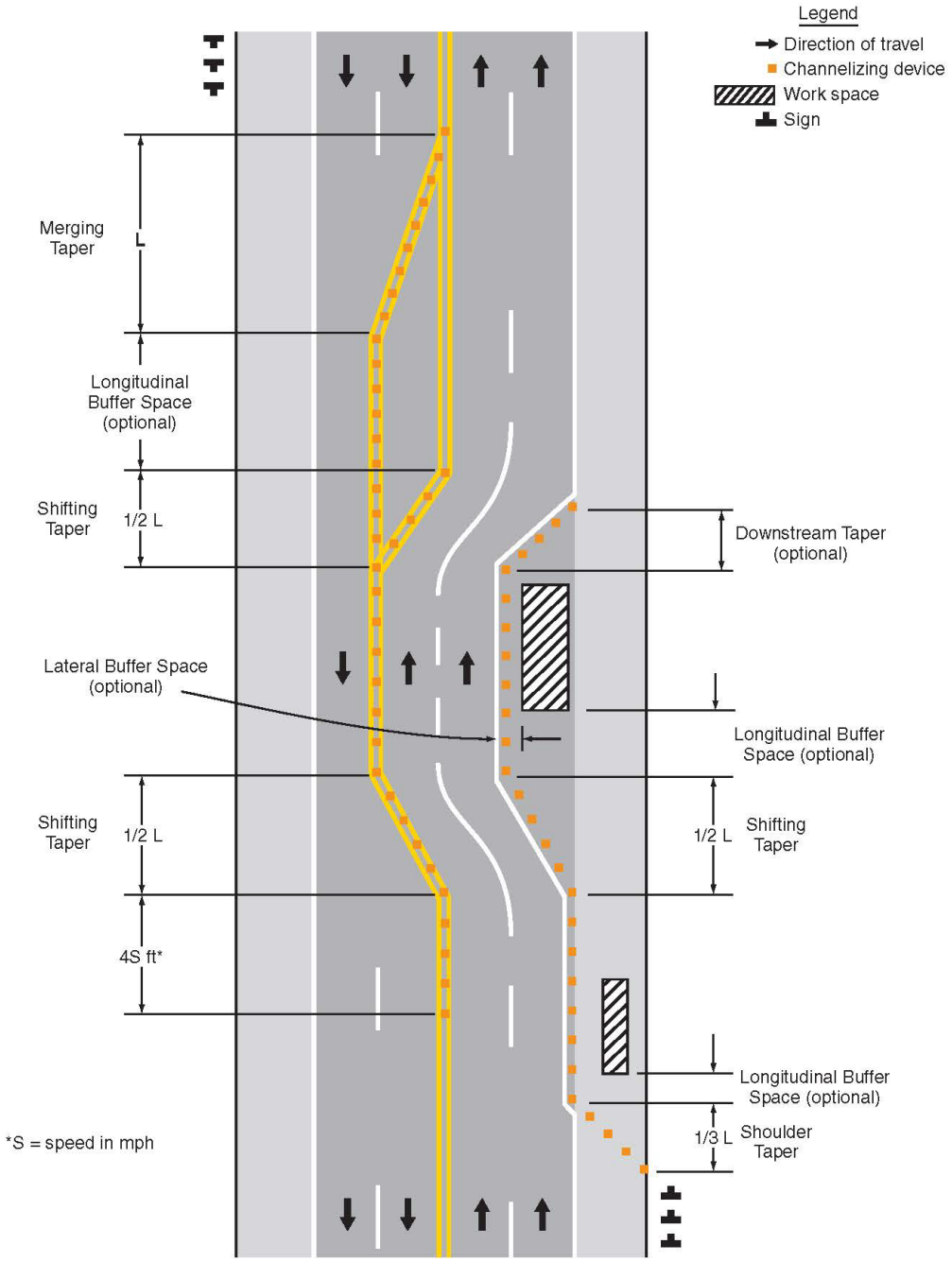
Guidance:

15 *The width of a lateral buffer space should be determined by engineering judgment.*

Option:

16 When work occurs on a high-volume, highly congested facility, a vehicle storage or staging space may be provided for incident response and emergency vehicles (for example, tow trucks and fire apparatus) so that these vehicles can respond quickly to road user incidents.

Figure 6C-2. Types of Tapers and Buffer Spaces



Section 6C.07 Termination Area

Support:

1 The termination area is the section of the highway where road users are returned to their normal driving path. The termination area extends from the downstream end of the work area to the last TTC device such as END ROAD WORK signs, if posted.

Option:

2 An END ROAD WORK sign, a Speed Limit sign, or other signs may be used to inform road users that they can resume normal operations.

3 A longitudinal buffer space may be used between the work space and the beginning of the downstream taper.

Section 6C.08 Tapers

Option:

1 Tapers may be used in both the transition and termination areas. Whenever tapers are to be used in close proximity to an interchange ramp, crossroads, curves, or other influencing factors, the length of the tapers may be adjusted.

Support:

2 Tapers are created by using a series of channelizing devices and/or pavement markings to move traffic out of or into the normal path. Types of tapers are shown in Figure 6C-2.

3 Longer tapers are not necessarily better than shorter tapers (particularly in urban areas with characteristics such as short block lengths or driveways) because extended tapers tend to encourage sluggish operation and to encourage drivers to delay lane changes unnecessarily. The test concerning adequate lengths of tapers involves observation of driver performance after TTC plans are put into effect.

Guidance:

4 *The appropriate taper length (L) should be determined using the criteria shown in Tables 6C-3 and 6C-4.*

5 *The maximum distance in feet between devices in a taper should not exceed 1.0 times the speed limit in mph.*

Option:

MUTCD guidance on device spacing says the maximum distance in feet between devices in a taper should not exceed 1.0 times the speed limit in mph. This distance in feet may be modified to a maximum of 1.25 times the speed limit in mph to correspond with the pavement marking cycle length (length of one broken line segment plus one gap).

Devices in a downstream taper or a one-lane, two-way taper may be placed at a spacing of approximately 25 feet.

Table 6C-3. Taper Length Criteria for Temporary Traffic Control Zones

Type of Taper	Taper Length
Merging Taper	at least L
Shifting Taper	at least 0.5 L
Shoulder Taper	at least 0.33 L
One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Taper	50 feet minimum, 100 feet maximum
Downstream Taper	50 feet minimum, 100 feet maximum

Note: Use Table 6C-4 to calculate L

Table 6C-4. Formulas for Determining Taper Length

Speed (S)	Taper Length (L) in feet
40 mph or less	$L = \frac{WS^2}{60}$
45 mph or more	$L = WS$

Where: L = taper length in feet
W = width of offset in feet
S = posted speed limit, or off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to work starting, or the anticipated operating speed in mph

Support:

6 A merging taper requires the longest distance because drivers are required to merge into common road space.

Guidance:

7 *A merging taper should be long enough to enable merging drivers to have adequate advance warning and sufficient length to adjust their speeds and merge into an adjacent lane before the downstream end of the transition.*

Support:

8 A shifting taper is used when a lateral shift is needed. When more space is available, a longer than minimum taper distance can be beneficial. Changes in alignment can also be accomplished by using horizontal curves designed for normal highway speeds.

Guidance:

9 *A shifting taper should have a length of approximately 1/2 L (see Tables 6C-3 and 6C-4).*

Support:

10 A shoulder taper might be beneficial on a high-speed roadway where shoulders are part of the activity area and are closed, or when improved shoulders might be mistaken as a driving lane. In these instances, the same type, but abbreviated, closure procedures used on a normal portion of the roadway can be used.

Guidance:

11 *If used, shoulder tapers should have a length of approximately 1/3 L (see Tables 6C-3 and 6C-4). If a shoulder is used as a travel lane, either through practice or during a TTC activity, a normal merging or shifting taper should be used.*

Support:

12 A downstream taper might be useful in termination areas to provide a visual cue to the driver that access is available back into the original lane or path that was closed.

Guidance:

13 *If used, a downstream taper should have a minimum length of 50 feet and a maximum length of 100 feet with devices placed at a spacing of approximately 20 feet.*

Support:

14 The one-lane, two-way taper is used in advance of an activity area that occupies part of a two-way roadway in such a way that a portion of the road is used alternately by traffic in each direction.

Guidance:

No fewer than five devices should be used for a one-lane, two-way taper.

15 *Traffic should be controlled by a flagger or temporary traffic control signal (if sight distance is limited), or a STOP or YIELD sign. A short taper having a minimum length of 50 feet and a maximum length of 100 feet with channelizing devices at approximately 20-foot spacing should be used to guide traffic into the one-lane section, and a downstream taper should be used to guide traffic back into their original lane.*

Support:

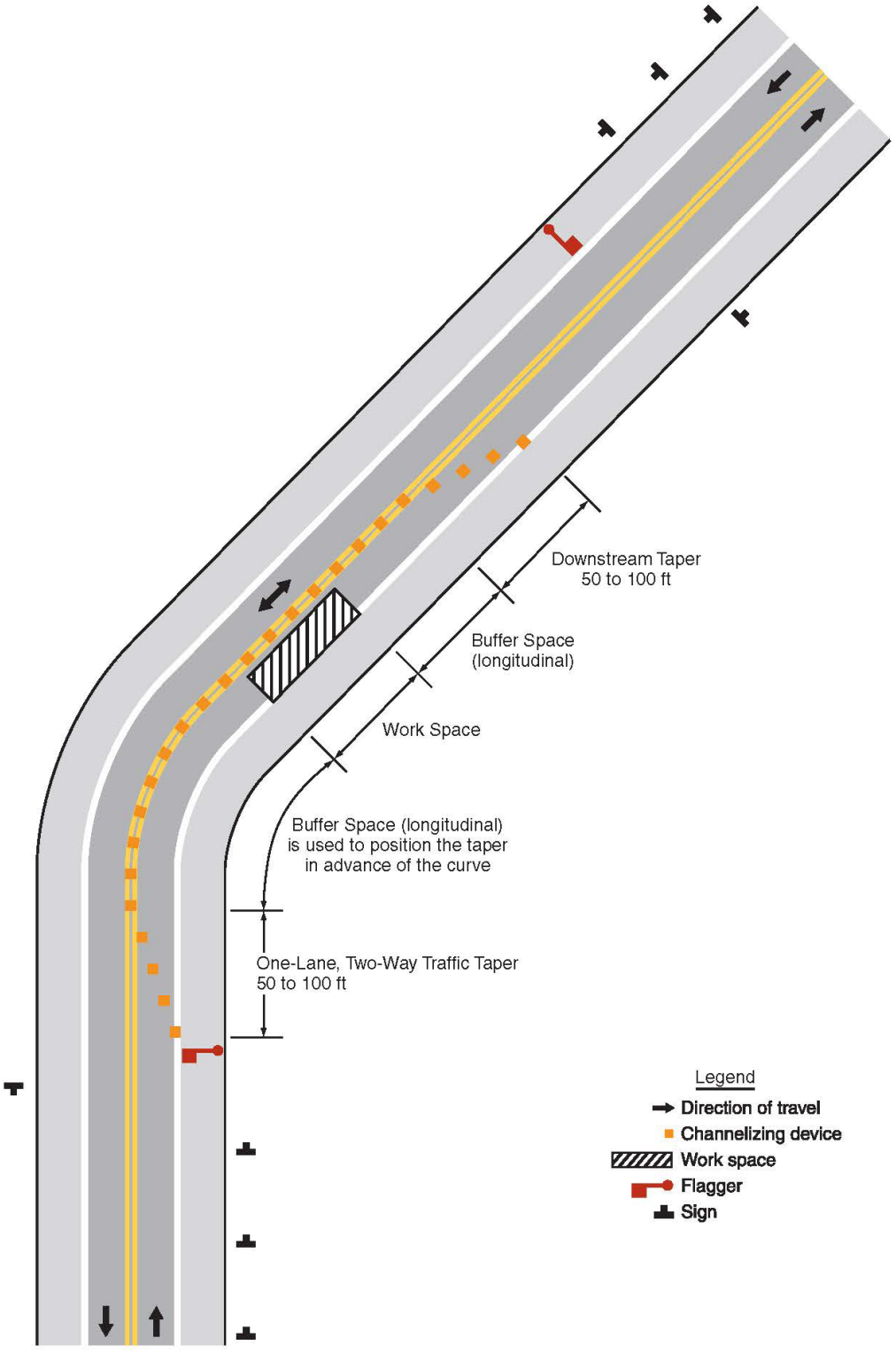
16 An example of a one-lane, two-way traffic taper is shown in Figure 6C-3.

Standard:

At one-lane, two-way sites, the MUTCD allows yield-sign control. Yield-sign control shall not be used at one-lane, two-way sites on State Trunk Highways, Connecting Highways, or any other roadways declared as through highways.

If STOP signs are used at one-lane, two-way sites, both directions shall be stopped.

Figure 6C-3. Example of a One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Taper



Section 6C.09 Detours and Diversions

Support:

1 A detour is a temporary rerouting of road users onto an existing highway in order to avoid a TTC zone.

Guidance:

2 *Detours should be clearly signed over their entire length so that road users can easily use existing highways to return to the original highway.*

Support:

3 A diversion is a temporary rerouting of road users onto a temporary highway or alignment placed around the work area.

Section 6C.10 One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control

Standard:

1 **Except as provided in Paragraph 5, when traffic in both directions must use a single lane for a limited distance, movements from each end shall be coordinated.**

Guidance:

2 *Provisions should be made for alternate one-way movement through the constricted section via methods such as flagger control, a flag transfer, a pilot car, traffic control signals, or stop or yield control.*

3 *Control points at each end should be chosen to permit easy passing of opposing lanes of vehicles.*

4 *If traffic on the affected one-lane roadway is not visible from one end to the other, then flagging procedures, a pilot car with a flagger used as described in Section 6C.13, or a traffic control signal should be used to control opposing traffic flows.*

Option:

5 If the work space on a low-volume street or road is short and road users from both directions are able to see the traffic approaching from the opposite direction through and beyond the worksite, the movement of traffic through a one-lane, two-way constriction may be self-regulating.

Standard:

At one-lane, two-way sites, the MUTCD allows yield-sign control. Yield-sign control shall not be used at one-lane, two-way sites on State Trunk Highways, Connecting Highways, or any other roadways declared as through highways.

If STOP signs are used at one-lane, two-way sites, both directions shall be stopped.

Section 6C.11 Flagger Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control

Guidance:

1 *Except as provided in Paragraph 2, traffic should be controlled by a flagger at each end of a constricted section of roadway. One of the flaggers should be designated as the coordinator. To provide coordination of the control of the traffic, the flaggers should be able to communicate with each other orally, electronically, or with manual signals. These manual signals should not be mistaken for flagging signals.*

Option:

2 When a one-lane, two-way TTC zone is short enough to allow a flagger to see from one end of the zone to the other, traffic may be controlled by either a single flagger or by a flagger at each end of the section.

Guidance:

3 *When a single flagger is used, the flagger should be stationed on the shoulder opposite the constriction or work space, or in a position where good visibility and traffic control can be maintained at all times. When good visibility and traffic control cannot be maintained by one flagger station, traffic should be controlled by a flagger at each end of the section.*

Section 6C.12 Flag Transfer Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control

Support:

1 The driver of the last vehicle proceeding into the one-lane section is given a red flag (or other token) and instructed to deliver it to the flagger at the other end. The opposite flagger, upon receipt of the flag, then knows that traffic can be permitted to move in the other direction. A variation of this method is to replace the use of a flag with an official pilot car that follows the last road user vehicle proceeding through the section.

Guidance:

2 *The flag transfer method should be employed only where the one-way traffic is confined to a relatively short length of a road, usually no more than 1 mile in length.*

Section 6C.13 Pilot Car Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control

Option:

1 A pilot car may be used to guide a queue of vehicles through the TTC zone or detour.

Guidance:

2 *The pilot car should have the name of the contractor or contracting authority prominently displayed.*

Standard:

3 **The PILOT CAR FOLLOW ME (G20-4) sign (see Section 6F.58) shall be mounted on the rear of the pilot vehicle.**

4 **A flagger shall be stationed on the approach to the activity area to control vehicular traffic until the pilot vehicle is available.**

Section 6C.14 Temporary Traffic Control Signal Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control

Option:

1 Traffic control signals may be used to control vehicular traffic movements in one-lane, two-way TTC zones (see Figure 6H-12 and Chapter 4H).

Section 6C.15 Stop or Yield Control Method of One-Lane, Two-Way Traffic Control

Option:

1 STOP or YIELD signs may be used to control traffic on low-volume roads at a one-lane, two-way TTC zone when drivers are able to see the other end of the one-lane, two-way operation and have sufficient visibility of approaching vehicles.

Guidance:

2 *If the STOP or YIELD sign is installed for only one direction, then the STOP or YIELD sign should face road users who are driving on the side of the roadway that is closed for the work activity area.*

Standard:

At one-lane, two-way sites, the MUTCD allows yield-sign control. Yield-sign control shall not be used at one-lane, two-way sites on State Trunk Highways, Connecting Highways, or any other roadways declared as through highways.

If STOP signs are used at one-lane, two-way sites, both directions shall be stopped.

CHAPTER 6D. PEDESTRIAN AND WORKER SAFETY

Section 6D.01 Pedestrian Considerations

Support:

1 A wide range of pedestrians might be affected by TTC zones, including the young, elderly, and people with disabilities such as hearing, visual, or mobility. These pedestrians need a clearly delineated and usable travel path. Considerations for pedestrians with disabilities are addressed in Section 6D.02.

Standard:

2 **The various TTC provisions for pedestrian and worker safety set forth in Part 6 shall be applied by knowledgeable (for example, trained and/or certified) persons after appropriate evaluation and engineering judgment.**

3 **Advance notification of sidewalk closures shall be provided by the maintaining agency.**

4 **If the TTC zone affects the movement of pedestrians, adequate pedestrian access and walkways shall be provided. If the TTC zone affects an accessible and detectable pedestrian facility, the accessibility and detectability shall be maintained along the alternate pedestrian route.**

Option:

5 If establishing or maintaining an alternate pedestrian route is not feasible during the project, an alternate means of providing for pedestrians may be used, such as adding free bus service around the project or assigning someone the responsibility to assist pedestrians with disabilities through the project limits.

Support:

6 It must be recognized that pedestrians are reluctant to retrace their steps to a prior intersection for a crossing or to add distance or out-of-the-way travel to a destination.

Guidance:

7 *The following three items should be considered when planning for pedestrians in TTC zones:*

A. *Pedestrians should not be led into conflicts with vehicles, equipment, and operations.*
B. *Pedestrians should not be led into conflicts with vehicles moving through or around the worksite.*
C. *Pedestrians should be provided with a convenient and accessible path that replicates as nearly as practical the most desirable characteristics of the existing sidewalk(s) or footpath(s).*

8 *A pedestrian route should not be severed and/or moved for non-construction activities such as parking for vehicles and equipment.*

9 *Consideration should be made to separate pedestrian movements from both worksite activity and vehicular traffic. Unless an acceptable route that does not involve crossing the roadway can be provided, pedestrians should be appropriately directed with advance signing that encourages them to cross to the opposite side of the roadway. In urban and suburban areas with high vehicular traffic volumes, these signs should be placed at intersections (rather than midblock locations) so that pedestrians are not confronted with midblock worksites that will induce them to attempt skirting the worksite or making a midblock crossing.*

Support:

10 Figures 6H-28 and 6H-29 show typical TTC device usage and techniques for pedestrian movement through work zones.

Guidance:

11 *To accommodate the needs of pedestrians, including those with disabilities, the following considerations should be addressed when temporary pedestrian pathways in TTC zones are designed or modified:*

A. *Provisions for continuity of accessible paths for pedestrians should be incorporated into the TTC plan.*
B. *Access to transit stops should be maintained.*
C. *A smooth, continuous hard surface should be provided throughout the entire length of the temporary pedestrian facility. There should be no curbs or abrupt changes in grade or terrain that could cause tripping or be a barrier to wheelchair use. The geometry and alignment of the facility should meet the applicable requirements of the "Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)" (see Section 1A.11).*
D. *The width of the existing pedestrian facility should be provided for the temporary facility if practical. Traffic control devices and other construction materials and features should not intrude into the usable*

width of the sidewalk, temporary pathway, or other pedestrian facility. When it is not possible to maintain a minimum width of 60 inches throughout the entire length of the pedestrian pathway, a 60 x 60-inch passing space should be provided at least every 200 feet to allow individuals in wheelchairs to pass.

E. *Blocked routes, alternate crossings, and sign and signal information should be communicated to pedestrians with visual disabilities by providing devices such as audible information devices, accessible pedestrian signals, or barriers and channelizing devices that are detectable to the pedestrians traveling with the aid of a long cane or who have low vision. Where pedestrian traffic is detoured to a TTC signal, engineering judgment should be used to determine if pedestrian signals or accessible pedestrian signals should be considered for crossings along an alternate route.*

F. *When channelization is used to delineate a pedestrian pathway, a continuous detectable edging should be provided throughout the length of the facility such that pedestrians using a long cane can follow it. These detectable edgings should comply with the provisions of Section 6F.74.*

G. *Signs and other devices mounted lower than 7 feet above the temporary pedestrian pathway should not project more than 4 inches into accessible pedestrian facilities.*

Option:

12 Whenever it is feasible, closing off the worksite from pedestrian intrusion may be preferable to channelizing pedestrian traffic along the site with TTC devices.

Guidance:

13 *Fencing should not create sight distance restrictions for road users. Fences should not be constructed of materials that would be hazardous if impacted by vehicles. Wooden railing, fencing, and similar systems placed immediately adjacent to motor vehicle traffic should not be used as substitutes for crashworthy temporary traffic barriers.*

14 *Ballast for TTC devices should be kept to the minimum amount needed and should be mounted low to prevent penetration of the vehicle windshield.*

15 *Movement by work vehicles and equipment across designated pedestrian paths should be minimized and, when necessary, should be controlled by flaggers or TTC. Staging or stopping of work vehicles or equipment along the side of pedestrian paths should be avoided, since it encourages movement of workers, equipment, and materials across the pedestrian path.*

16 *Access to the work space by workers and equipment across pedestrian walkways should be minimized because the access often creates unacceptable changes in grade, and rough or muddy terrain, and pedestrians will tend to avoid these areas by attempting non-intersection crossings where no curb ramps are available.*

Option:

17 A canopied walkway may be used to protect pedestrians from falling debris, and to provide a covered passage for pedestrians.

Guidance:

18 *Covered walkways should be sturdily constructed and adequately lighted for nighttime use.*

19 *When pedestrian and vehicle paths are rerouted to a closer proximity to each other, consideration should be given to separating them by a temporary traffic barrier.*

20 *If a temporary traffic barrier is used to shield pedestrians, it should be designed to accommodate site conditions.*

Support:

21 Depending on the possible vehicular speed and angle of impact, temporary traffic barriers might deflect upon impact by an errant vehicle. Guidance for locating and designing temporary traffic barriers can be found in Chapter 9 of AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11).

Standard:

22 **Short intermittent segments of temporary traffic barrier shall not be used because they nullify the containment and redirective capabilities of the temporary traffic barrier, increase the potential for serious injury both to vehicle occupants and pedestrians, and encourage the presence of blunt, leading ends. All upstream leading ends that are present shall be appropriately flared or protected with properly installed and maintained crashworthy cushions. Adjacent temporary traffic barrier segments shall be properly connected in order to provide the overall strength required for the temporary traffic barrier to perform properly.**

23 **Normal vertical curbing shall not be used as a substitute for temporary traffic barriers when temporary traffic barriers are needed.**

Option:

24 Temporary traffic barriers or longitudinal channelizing devices may be used to discourage pedestrians from unauthorized movements into the work space. They may also be used to inhibit conflicts with vehicular traffic by minimizing the possibility of midblock crossings.

Support:

25 A major concern for pedestrians is urban and suburban building construction encroaching onto the contiguous sidewalks, which forces pedestrians off the curb into direct conflict with moving vehicles.

Guidance:

26 *If a significant potential exists for vehicle incursions into the pedestrian path, pedestrians should be rerouted or temporary traffic barriers should be installed.*

Support:

27 TTC devices, jersey barriers, and wood or chain link fencing with a continuous detectable edging can satisfactorily delineate a pedestrian path.

Guidance:

28 *Tape, rope, or plastic chain strung between devices are not detectable, do not comply with the design standards in the "Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)" (see Section 1A.11), and should not be used as a control for pedestrian movements.*

29 *In general, pedestrian routes should be preserved in urban and commercial suburban areas. Alternative routing should be discouraged.*

30 *The highway agency in charge of the TTC zone should regularly inspect the activity area so that effective pedestrian TTC is maintained.*

Section 6D.02 Accessibility Considerations

Support:

1 Additional information on the design and construction of accessible temporary facilities is found in publications listed in Section 1A.11 (see Publications 12, 38, 39, and 42).

Guidance:

2 *The extent of pedestrian needs should be determined through engineering judgment or by the individual responsible for each TTC zone situation. Adequate provisions should be made for pedestrians with disabilities.*

Standard:

3 **When existing pedestrian facilities are disrupted, closed, or relocated in a TTC zone, the temporary facilities shall be detectable and include accessibility features consistent with the features present in the existing pedestrian facility. Where pedestrians with visual disabilities normally use the closed sidewalk, a barrier that is detectable by a person with a visual disability traveling with the aid of a long cane shall be placed across the full width of the closed sidewalk.**

Support:

4 Maintaining a detectable, channelized pedestrian route is much more useful to pedestrians who have visual disabilities than closing a walkway and providing audible directions to an alternate route involving additional crossings and a return to the original route. Braille is not useful in conveying such information because it is difficult to find. Audible instructions might be provided, but the extra distance and additional street crossings might add complexity to a trip.

Guidance:

5 *Because printed signs and surface delineation are not usable by pedestrians with visual disabilities, blocked routes, alternate crossings, and sign and signal information should be communicated to pedestrians with visual disabilities by providing audible information devices, accessible pedestrian signals, and barriers and channelizing devices that are detectable to pedestrians traveling with the aid of a long cane or who have low vision.*

Support:

6 The most desirable way to provide information to pedestrians with visual disabilities that is equivalent to visual signing for notification of sidewalk closures is a speech message provided by an audible information device. Devices that provide speech messages in response to passive pedestrian actuation are the most desirable. Other devices that continuously emit a message, or that emit a message in response to use of a pushbutton, are also

acceptable. Signing information can also be transmitted to personal receivers, but currently such receivers are not likely to be carried or used by pedestrians with visual disabilities in TTC zones. Audible information devices might not be needed if detectable channelizing devices make an alternate route of travel evident to pedestrians with visual disabilities.

Guidance:

7 *If a pushbutton is used to provide equivalent TTC information to pedestrians with visual disabilities, the pushbutton should be equipped with a locator tone to notify pedestrians with visual disabilities that a special accommodation is available, and to help them locate the pushbutton.*

Section 6D.03 Worker Safety Considerations

Support:

1 Equally as important as the safety of road users traveling through the TTC zone is the safety of workers. TTC zones present temporary and constantly changing conditions that are unexpected by the road user. This creates an even higher degree of vulnerability for workers on or near the roadway.

2 Maintaining TTC zones with road user flow inhibited as little as possible, and using TTC devices that get the road user's attention and provide positive direction are of particular importance. Likewise, equipment and vehicles moving within the activity area create a risk to workers on foot. When possible, the separation of moving equipment and construction vehicles from workers on foot provides the operator of these vehicles with a greater separation clearance and improved sight lines to minimize exposure to the hazards of moving vehicles and equipment.

Guidance:

3 *The following are the key elements of worker safety and TTC management that should be considered to improve worker safety:*

A. *Training—all workers should be trained on how to work next to motor vehicle traffic in a way that minimizes their vulnerability. Workers having specific TTC responsibilities should be trained in TTC techniques, device usage, and placement.*
B. *Temporary Traffic Barriers—temporary traffic barriers should be placed along the work space depending on factors such as lateral clearance of workers from adjacent traffic, speed of traffic, duration and type of operations, time of day, and volume of traffic.*
C. *Speed Reduction—reducing the speed of vehicular traffic, mainly through regulatory speed zoning, funneling, lane reduction, or the use of uniformed law enforcement officers or flaggers, should be considered.*
D. *Activity Area—planning the internal work activity area to minimize backing-up maneuvers of construction vehicles should be considered to minimize the exposure to risk.*
E. *Worker Safety Planning—a trained person designated by the employer should conduct a basic hazard assessment for the worksite and job classifications required in the activity area. This safety professional should determine whether engineering, administrative, or personal protection measures should be implemented. This plan should be in accordance with the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, as amended, "General Duty Clause" Section 5(a)(1) - Public Law 91-596, 84 Stat. 1590, December 29, 1970, as amended, and with the requirement to assess worker risk exposures for each job site and job classification, as per 29 CFR 1926.20 (b)(2) of "Occupational Safety and Health Administration Regulations, General Safety and Health Provisions" (see Section 1A.11).*

Standard:

4 **All workers, including emergency responders, within the right-of-way who are exposed either to traffic (vehicles using the highway for purposes of travel) or to work vehicles and construction equipment within the TTC zone shall wear high-visibility safety apparel that meets the Performance Class 2 or 3 requirements of the ANSI/ISEA 107–2004 publication entitled "American National Standard for High-Visibility Safety Apparel and Headwear" (see Section 1A.11), or equivalent revisions, and labeled as meeting the ANSI 107-2004 standard performance for Class 2 or 3 risk exposure, except as provided in Paragraph 5. A person designated by the employer to be responsible for worker safety shall make the selection of the appropriate class of garment.**

Option:

5 Emergency and incident responders and law enforcement personnel within the TTC zone may wear high-visibility safety apparel that meets the performance requirements of the ANSI/ISEA 207-2006 publication entitled "American

National Standard for High-Visibility Public Safety Vests" (see Section 1A.11), or equivalent revisions, and labeled as ANSI 207-2006, in lieu of ANSI/ISEA 107-2004 apparel.

Standard:

6 **When uniformed law enforcement personnel are used to direct traffic, to investigate crashes, or to handle lane closures, obstructed roadways, and disasters, high-visibility safety apparel as described in this Section shall be worn by the law enforcement personnel.**

7 **Except as provided in Paragraph 8, firefighters or other emergency responders working within the right-of-way shall wear high-visibility safety apparel as described in this Section.**

Option:

8 Firefighters or other emergency responders working within the right-of-way and engaged in emergency operations that directly expose them to flame, fire, heat, and/or hazardous materials may wear retroreflective turn-out gear that is specified and regulated by other organizations, such as the National Fire Protection Association.

9 The following are additional elements of TTC management that may be considered to improve worker safety:

A. Shadow Vehicle—in the case of mobile and constantly moving operations, such as pothole patching and striping operations, a shadow vehicle, equipped with appropriate lights and warning signs, may be used to protect the workers from impacts by errant vehicles. The shadow vehicle may be equipped with a rear-mounted impact attenuator.
B. Road Closure—if alternate routes are available to handle road users, the road may be closed temporarily. This may also facilitate project completion and thus further reduce worker vulnerability.
C. Law Enforcement Use—in highly vulnerable work situations, particularly those of relatively short duration, law enforcement units may be stationed to heighten the awareness of passing vehicular traffic and to improve safety through the TTC zone.
D. Lighting—for nighttime work, the TTC zone and approaches may be lighted.
E. Special Devices—these include rumble strips, changeable message signs, hazard identification beacons, flags, and warning lights. Intrusion warning devices may be used to alert workers to the approach of errant vehicles.

Support:

10 Judicious use of the special devices described in Item E in Paragraph 9 might be helpful for certain difficult TTC situations, but misuse or overuse of special devices or techniques might lessen their effectiveness.

CHAPTER 6E. FLAGGER CONTROL

Section 6E.01 Qualifications for Flaggers

Guidance:

1 *Because flaggers are responsible for public safety and make the greatest number of contacts with the public of all highway workers, they should be trained in safe traffic control practices and public contact techniques. Flaggers should be able to satisfactorily demonstrate the following abilities:*

A. Ability to receive and communicate specific instructions clearly, firmly, and courteously;
B. Ability to move and maneuver quickly in order to avoid danger from errant vehicles;
C. Ability to control signaling devices (such as paddles and flags) in order to provide clear and positive guidance to drivers approaching a TTC zone in frequently changing situations;
D. Ability to understand and apply safe traffic control practices, sometimes in stressful or emergency situations; and
E. Ability to recognize dangerous traffic situations and warn workers in sufficient time to avoid injury.

Section 6E.02 High-Visibility Safety Apparel

Standard:

1 **For daytime and nighttime activity, flaggers shall wear high-visibility safety apparel that meets the Performance Class 2 or 3 requirements of the ANSI/ISEA 107–2004 publication entitled "American National Standard for High-Visibility Apparel and Headwear" (see Section 1A.11) and labeled as meeting the ANSI 107-2004 standard performance for Class 2 or 3 risk exposure. The apparel background (outer) material color shall be fluorescent orange-red, fluorescent yellow-green, or a combination of the two as defined in the ANSI standard. The retroreflective material shall be orange, yellow, white, silver, yellow-green, or a fluorescent version of these colors, and shall be visible at a minimum distance of 1,000 feet. The retroreflective safety apparel shall be designed to clearly identify the wearer as a person.**

Guidance:

2 *For nighttime activity, high-visibility safety apparel that meets the Performance Class 3 requirements of the ANSI/ISEA 107–2004 publication entitled "American National Standard for High-Visibility Apparel and Headwear" (see Section 1A.11) and labeled as meeting the ANSI 107-2004 standard performance for Class 3 risk exposure should be considered for flagger wear.*

Standard:

3 **When uniformed law enforcement officers are used to direct traffic within a TTC zone, they shall wear high-visibility safety apparel as described in this Section.**

Option:

4 In lieu of ANSI/ISEA 107-2004 apparel, law enforcement personnel within the TTC zone may wear high-visibility safety apparel that meets the performance requirements of the ANSI/ISEA 207-2006 publication entitled "American National Standard for High-Visibility Public Safety Vests" (see Section 1A.11) and labeled as ANSI 207-2006.

Section 6E.03 Hand-Signaling Devices

Guidance:

1 *The STOP/SLOW paddle should be the primary and preferred hand-signaling device because the STOP/SLOW paddle gives road users more positive guidance than red flags. Use of flags should be limited to emergency situations.*

Standard:

2 **The STOP/SLOW paddle shall have an octagonal shape on a rigid handle. STOP/SLOW paddles shall be at least 18 inches wide with letters at least 6 inches high. The STOP (R1-1) face shall have white letters and a white border on a red background. The SLOW (W20-8) face shall have black letters and a black border on an orange background. When used at night, the STOP/SLOW paddle shall be retroreflectorized.**

Guidance:

3 *The STOP/SLOW paddle should be fabricated from light semi-rigid material.*

Support:

4 The optimum method of displaying a STOP or SLOW message is to place the STOP/SLOW paddle on a rigid staff that is tall enough that when the end of the staff is resting on the ground, the message is high enough to be seen by approaching or stopped traffic.

Option:

5 The STOP/SLOW paddle may be modified to improve conspicuity by incorporating either white or red flashing lights on the STOP face, and either white or yellow flashing lights on the SLOW face. The flashing lights may be arranged in any of the following patterns:

A. Two white or red lights, one centered vertically above and one centered vertically below the STOP legend; and/or two white or yellow lights, one centered vertically above and one centered vertically below the SLOW legend;
B. Two white or red lights, one centered horizontally on each side of the STOP legend; and/or two white or yellow lights, one centered horizontally on each side of the SLOW legend;
C. One white or red light centered below the STOP legend; and/or one white or yellow light centered below the SLOW legend;
D. A series of eight or more small white or red lights no larger than 1/4 inch in diameter along the outer edge of the paddle, arranged in an octagonal pattern at the eight corners of the border of the STOP face; and/or a series of eight or more small white or yellow lights no larger than 1/4 inch in diameter along the outer edge of the paddle, arranged in a diamond pattern along the border of the SLOW face; or
E. A series of white lights forming the shapes of the letters in the legend.

Standard:

6 **If flashing lights are used on the STOP face of the paddle, their colors shall be all white or all red. If flashing lights are used on the SLOW face of the paddle, their colors shall be all white or all yellow.**

7 **If more than eight flashing lights are used, the lights shall be arranged such that they clearly convey the octagonal shape of the STOP face of the paddle and/or the diamond shape of the SLOW face of the paddle.**

8 **If flashing lights are used on the STOP/SLOW paddle, the flash rate shall be at least 50, but not more than 60, flashes per minute.**

9 **Flags, when used, shall be red or fluorescent orange/red in color, shall be a minimum of 24 inches square, and shall be securely fastened to a staff that is approximately 36 inches in length.**

Guidance:

10 *The free edge of a flag should be weighted so the flag will hang vertically, even in heavy winds.*

Standard:

11 **When used at nighttime, flags shall be retroreflectorized red.**

Option:

12 When flagging in an emergency situation at night in a non-illuminated flagger station, a flagger may use a flashlight with a red glow cone to supplement the STOP/SLOW paddle or flag.

Standard:

13 **When a flashlight is used for flagging in an emergency situation at night in a non-illuminated flagger station, the flagger shall hold the flashlight in the left hand, shall hold the paddle or flag in the right hand as shown in Figure 6E-3, and shall use the flashlight in the following manner to control approaching road users:**

A. To inform road users to stop, the flagger shall hold the flashlight with the left arm extended and pointed down toward the ground, and then shall slowly wave the flashlight in front of the body in a slow arc from left to right such that the arc reaches no farther than 45 degrees from vertical.
B. To inform road users to proceed, the flagger shall point the flashlight at the vehicle's bumper, slowly aim the flashlight toward the open lane, then hold the flashlight in that position. The flagger shall not wave the flashlight.
C. To alert or slow traffic, the flagger shall point the flashlight toward oncoming traffic and quickly wave the flashlight in a figure eight motion.

Section 6E.04 Automated Flagger Assistance Devices

Support:

1 Automated Flagger Assistance Devices (AFADs) enable a flagger(s) to be positioned out of the lane of traffic and are used to control road users through temporary traffic control zones. These devices are designed to be remotely

operated either by a single flagger at one end of the TTC zone or at a central location, or by separate flaggers near each device's location.

2 There are two types of AFADs:

A. An AFAD (see Section 6E.05) that uses a remotely controlled STOP/SLOW sign on either a trailer or a movable cart system to alternately control right-of-way.
B. An AFAD (see Section 6E.06) that uses remotely controlled red and yellow lenses and a gate arm to alternately control right-of-way.

3 AFADs might be appropriate for short-term and intermediate-term activities (see Section 6G.02). Typical applications include TTC activities such as, but not limited to:

A. Bridge maintenance;
B. Haul road crossings; and
C. Pavement patching.

Standard:

4 **AFADs shall only be used in situations where there is only one lane of approaching traffic in the direction to be controlled.**

5 **When used at night, the AFAD location shall be illuminated in accordance with Section 6E.08.**

Guidance:

6 *AFADs should not be used for long-term stationary work (see Section 6G.02).*

Standard:

7 **Because AFADs are not traffic control signals, they shall not be used as a substitute for or a replacement for a continuously operating temporary traffic control signal as described in Section 6F.84.**

8 **AFADs shall meet the crashworthy performance criteria contained in Section 6F.01.**

Guidance:

9 *If used, AFADs should be located in advance of one-lane, two-way tapers and downstream from the point where approaching traffic is to stop in response to the device.*

Standard:

10 **If used, AFADs shall be placed so that all of the signs and other items controlling traffic movement are readily visible to the driver of the initial approaching vehicle with advance warning signs alerting other approaching traffic to be prepared to stop.**

11 **If used, an AFAD shall be operated only by a flagger (see Section 6E.01) who has been trained on the operation of the AFAD. The flagger(s) operating the AFAD(s) shall not leave the AFAD(s) unattended at any time while the AFAD(s) is being used.**

12 **The use of AFADs shall conform to one of the following methods:**

A. An AFAD at each end of the TTC zone (Method 1), or
B. An AFAD at one end of the TTC zone and a flagger at the opposite end (Method 2).

Except as provided in Paragraph 14, two flaggers shall be used when using either Method 1 or Method 2.

Option:

13 A single flagger may simultaneously operate two AFADs (Method 1) or may operate a single AFAD on one end of the TTC zone while being the flagger at the opposite end of the TTC zone (Method 2) if both of the following conditions are present:

A. The flagger has an unobstructed view of the AFAD(s), and
B. The flagger has an unobstructed view of approaching traffic in both directions.

Guidance:

14 *When an AFAD is used, the advance warning signing should include a ROAD WORK AHEAD (W20-1) sign, a ONE LANE ROAD (W20-4) sign, and a BE PREPARED TO STOP (W3-4) sign.*

Standard:

15 **When the AFAD is not in use, the signs associated with the AFAD, both at the AFAD location and in advance, shall be removed or covered.**

Guidance:

16 *A State or local agency that elects to use AFADs should adopt a policy, based on engineering judgment, governing AFAD applications. The policy should also consider more detailed and/or more restrictive requirements for AFAD use, such as the following:*

A. Conditions applicable for the use of Method 1 and Method 2 AFAD operation,
B. Volume criteria,
C. Maximum distance between AFADs,
D. Conflicting lenses/indications monitoring requirements,
E. Fail safe procedures,
F. Additional signing and pavement markings,
G. Application consistency,
H. Larger signs or lenses to increase visibility, and
I. Use of backplates.

Section 6E.05 STOP/SLOW Automated Flagger Assistance Devices

Standard:

1 **A STOP/SLOW Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD) (see Section 6E.04) shall include a STOP/SLOW sign that alternately displays the STOP (R1-1) face and the SLOW (W20-8) face of a STOP/SLOW paddle (see Figure 6E-1).**

2 **The AFAD's STOP/SLOW sign shall have an octagonal shape, shall be fabricated of rigid material, and shall be mounted with the bottom of the sign a minimum of 6 feet above the pavement on an appropriate support. The size of the STOP/SLOW sign shall be at least 24 x 24 inches with letters at least 8 inches high. The background of the STOP face shall be red with white letters and border. The background of the SLOW face shall be diamond shaped and orange with black letters and border. Both faces of the STOP/SLOW sign shall be retroreflectorized.**

3 **The AFAD's STOP/SLOW sign shall have a means to positively lock, engage, or otherwise maintain the sign assembly in a stable condition when set in the STOP or SLOW position.**

4 **The AFAD's STOP/SLOW sign shall be supplemented with active conspicuity devices by incorporating either:**

A. White or red flashing lights within the STOP face and white or yellow flashing lights within the SLOW face meeting the provisions contained in Section 6E.03; or
B. A Stop Beacon (see Section 4L.05) mounted a maximum of 24 inches above the STOP face and a Warning Beacon (see Section 4L.03) mounted a maximum of 24 inches above, below, or to the side of the SLOW face. The Stop Beacon shall not be flashed or illuminated when the SLOW face is displayed, and the Warning Beacon shall not be flashed or illuminated when the STOP face is displayed. Except for the mounting locations, the beacons shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 4L.

Option:

5 Type B warning light(s) (see Section 6F.83) may be used in lieu of the Warning Beacon during the display of the SLOW face of the AFAD's STOP/SLOW sign.

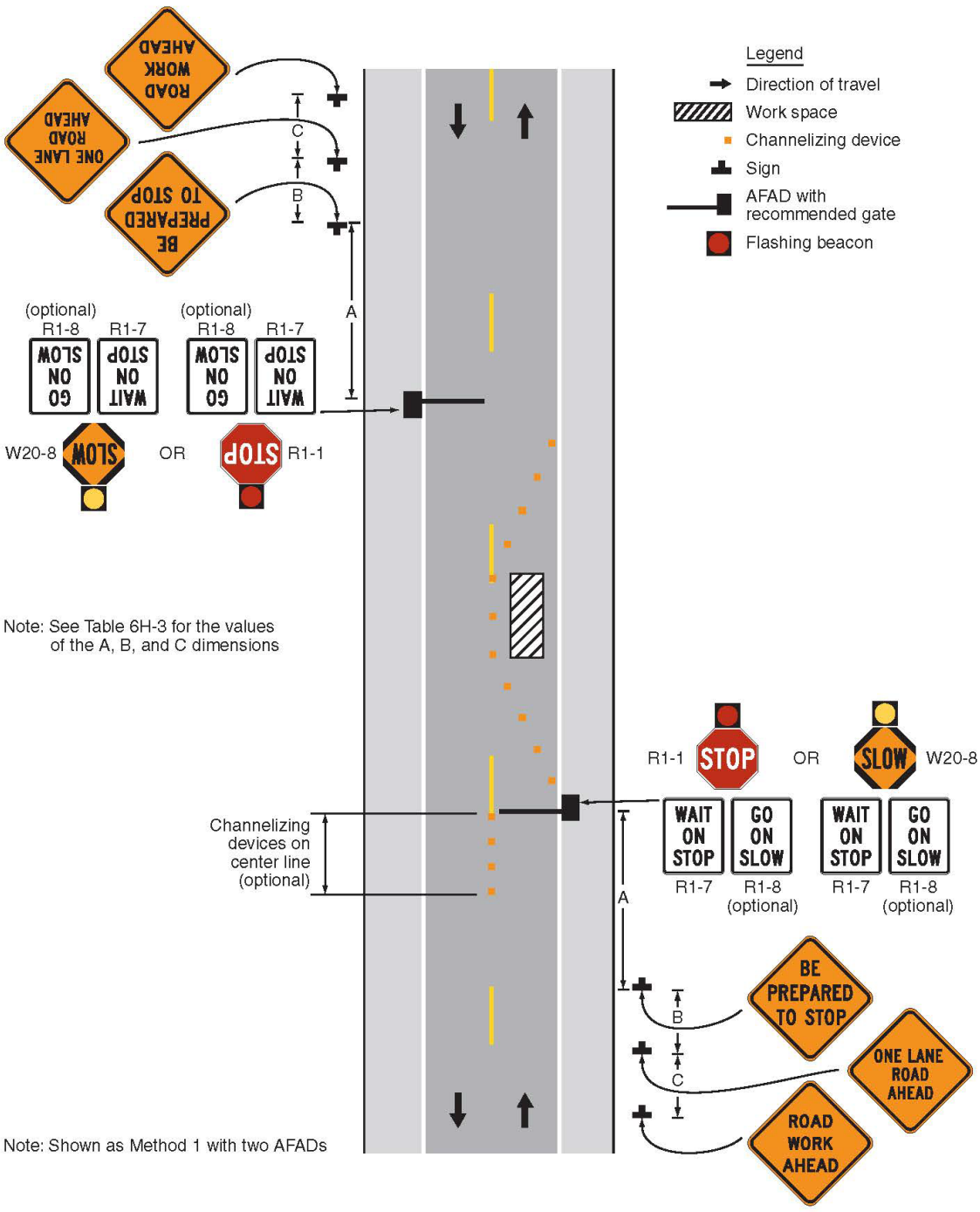
Standard:

6 **If Type B warning lights are used in lieu of a Warning Beacon, they shall flash continuously when the SLOW face is displayed and shall not be flashed or illuminated when the STOP face is displayed.**

Option:

7 The faces of the AFAD's STOP/SLOW sign may include louvers to improve the stability of the device in windy or other adverse environmental conditions.

Figure 6E-1. Example of the Use of a STOP/SLOW Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD)



Standard:

8 **If louvers are used, the louvers shall be designed such that the full sign face is visible to approaching traffic at a distance of 50 feet or greater.**

Guidance:

9 *The STOP/SLOW AFAD should include a gate arm that descends to a down position across the approach lane of traffic when the STOP face is displayed and then ascends to an upright position when the SLOW face is displayed.*

Option:

10 In lieu of a stationary STOP/SLOW sign with a separate gate arm, the STOP/SLOW sign may be attached to a mast arm that physically blocks the approach lane of traffic when the STOP face is displayed and then moves to a position that does not block the approach lane when the SLOW face is displayed.

Standard:

11 **Gate arms, if used, shall be fully retroreflectorized on both sides, and shall have vertical alternating red and white stripes at 16-inch intervals measured horizontally as shown in Figure 8C-1. When the arm is in the down position blocking the approach lane:**

A. The minimum vertical aspect of the arm and sheeting shall be 2 inches; and

B. The end of the arm shall reach at least to the center of the lane being controlled.

A WAIT ON STOP (R1-7) sign (see Figure 6E-1) shall be displayed to road users approaching the AFAD.

Option:

12 A GO ON SLOW (R1-8) sign (see Figure 6E-1) may also be displayed to road users approaching the AFAD.

Standard:

13 **The GO ON SLOW sign, if used, and the WAIT ON STOP sign shall be positioned on the same support structure as the AFAD or immediately adjacent to the AFAD such that they are in the same direct line of view of approaching traffic as the sign faces of the AFAD. Both signs shall have black legends and borders on white backgrounds. Each of these signs shall be rectangular in shape and each shall be at least 24 x 30 inches in size with letters at least 6 inches high.**

14 **To inform road users to stop, the AFAD shall display the STOP face and the red or white lights, if used, within the STOP face shall flash or the Stop Beacon shall flash. To inform road users to proceed, the AFAD shall display the SLOW face and the yellow or white lights, if used, within the SLOW face shall flash or the Warning Beacon or the Type B warning lights shall flash.**

15 **If STOP/SLOW AFADs are used to control traffic in a one-lane, two-way TTC zone, safeguards shall be incorporated to prevent the flagger(s) from simultaneously displaying the SLOW face at each end of the TTC zone. Additionally, the flagger(s) shall not display the AFAD's SLOW face until all oncoming vehicles have cleared the one-lane portion of the TTC zone.**

Section 6E.06 Red/Yellow Lens Automated Flagger Assistance Devices

Standard:

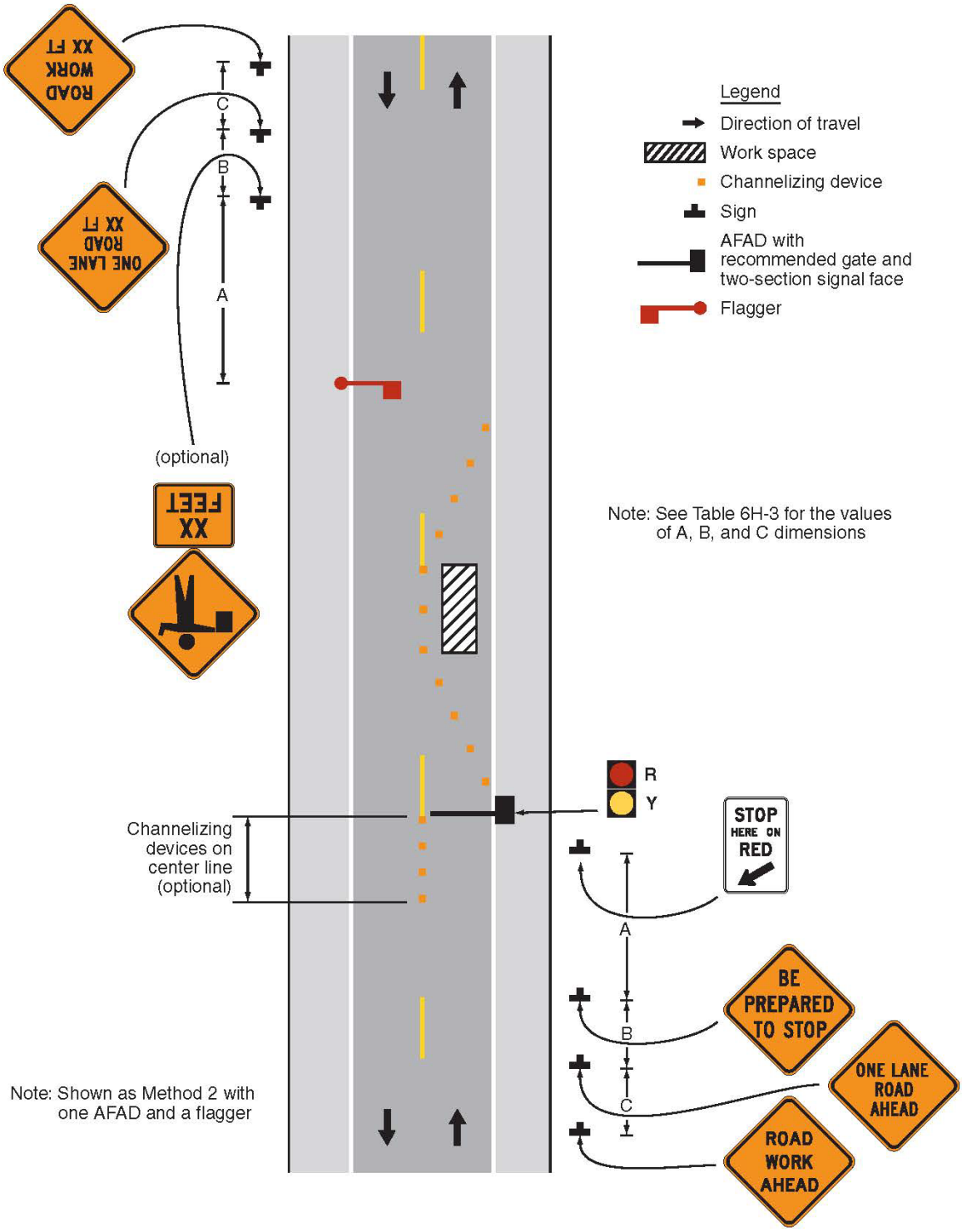
1 **A Red/Yellow Lens Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD) (see Section 6E.04) shall alternately display a steadily illuminated CIRCULAR RED lens and a flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW lens to control traffic without the need for a flagger in the immediate vicinity of the AFAD or on the roadway (see Figure 6E-2).**

2 **Red/Yellow Lens AFADs shall have at least one set of CIRCULAR RED and CIRCULAR YELLOW lenses that are 12 inches in diameter. Unless otherwise provided in this Section, the lenses and their arrangement, CIRCULAR RED on top and CIRCULAR YELLOW below, shall comply with the applicable provisions for traffic signal indications in Part 4. If the set of lenses is post-mounted, the bottom of the housing (including brackets) shall be at least 7 feet above the pavement. If the set of lenses is located over any portion of the highway that can be used by motor vehicles, the bottom of the housing (including brackets) shall be at least 15 feet above the pavement.**

Option:

3 Additional sets of CIRCULAR RED and CIRCULAR YELLOW lenses, located over the roadway or on the left-hand side of the approach and operated in unison with the primary set, may be used to improve visibility and/or conspicuity of the AFAD.

Figure 6E-2. Example of the Use of a Red/Yellow Lens Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD)



Standard:

4 **A Red/Yellow Lens AFAD shall include a gate arm that descends to a down position across the approach lane of traffic when the steady CIRCULAR RED lens is illuminated and then ascends to an upright position when the flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW lens is illuminated. The gate arm shall be fully retroreflectorized on both sides, and shall have vertical alternating red and white stripes at 16-inch intervals measured horizontally as shown in Figure 8C-1. When the arm is in the down position blocking the approach lane:**

A. The minimum vertical aspect of the arm and sheeting shall be 2 inches; and

B. The end of the arm shall reach at least to the center of the lane being controlled.

A Stop Here On Red (R10-6 or R10-6a) sign (see Section 2B.53) shall be installed on the right-hand side of the approach at the point at which drivers are expected to stop when the steady CIRCULAR RED lens is illuminated (see Figure 6E-2).

To inform road users to stop, the AFAD shall display a steadily illuminated CIRCULAR RED lens and the gate arm shall be in the down position. To inform road users to proceed, the AFAD shall display a flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW lens and the gate arm shall be in the upright position.

If Red/Yellow Lens AFADs are used to control traffic in a one-lane, two-way TTC zone, safeguards shall be incorporated to prevent the flagger(s) from actuating a simultaneous display of a flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW lens at each end of the TTC zone. Additionally, the flagger shall not actuate the AFAD's display of the flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW lens until all oncoming vehicles have cleared the one-lane portion of the TTC zone.

A change interval shall be provided as the transition between the display of the flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW indication and the display of the steady CIRCULAR RED indication. During the change interval, the CIRCULAR YELLOW lens shall be steadily illuminated. The gate arm shall remain in the upright position during the display of the steadily illuminated CIRCULAR YELLOW change interval.

A change interval shall not be provided between the display of the steady CIRCULAR RED indication and the display of the flashing CIRCULAR YELLOW indication.

Guidance:

The steadily illuminated CIRCULAR YELLOW change interval should have a duration of at least 5 seconds, unless a different duration, within the range of durations recommended by Section 4D.26, is justified by engineering judgment.

Section 6E.07 Flagger Procedures

Support:

The use of paddles and flags by flaggers is illustrated in Figure 6E-3.

Standard:

Flaggers shall use a STOP/SLOW paddle, a flag, or an Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD) to control road users approaching a TTC zone. The use of hand movements alone without a paddle, flag, or AFAD to control road users shall be prohibited except for law enforcement personnel or emergency responders at incident scenes as described in Section 6I.01.

The following methods of signaling with paddles shall be used:

A. To stop road users, the flagger shall face road users and aim the STOP paddle face toward road users in a stationary position with the arm extended horizontally away from the body. The free arm shall be held with the palm of the hand above shoulder level toward approaching traffic.

B. To direct stopped road users to proceed, the flagger shall face road users with the SLOW paddle face aimed toward road users in a stationary position with the arm extended horizontally away from the body. The flagger shall motion with the free hand for road users to proceed.

C. To alert or slow traffic, the flagger shall face road users with the SLOW paddle face aimed toward road users in a stationary position with the arm extended horizontally away from the body.

Option:

To further alert or slow traffic, the flagger holding the SLOW paddle face toward road users may motion up and down with the free hand, palm down.

Standard:

The following methods of signaling with a flag shall be used:

A. To stop road users, the flagger shall face road users and extend the flag staff horizontally across the road users' lane in a stationary position so that the full area of the flag is visibly hanging below the staff. The free arm shall be held with the palm of the hand above shoulder level toward approaching traffic.

B. To direct stopped road users to proceed, the flagger shall face road users with the flag and arm lowered from the view of the road users, and shall motion with the free hand for road users to proceed. Flags shall not be used to signal road users to proceed.

C. To alert or slow traffic, the flagger shall face road users and slowly wave the flag in a sweeping motion of the extended arm from shoulder level to straight down without raising the arm above a horizontal position. The flagger shall keep the free hand down.

Guidance:

6 *The flagger should stand either on the shoulder adjacent to the road user being controlled or in the closed lane prior to stopping road users. A flagger should only stand in the lane being used by moving road users after road users have stopped. The flagger should be clearly visible to the first approaching road user at all times. The flagger also should be visible to other road users. The flagger should be stationed sufficiently in advance of the workers to warn them (for example, with audible warning devices such as horns or whistles) of approaching danger by out-of-control vehicles. The flagger should stand alone, away from other workers, work vehicles, or equipment.*

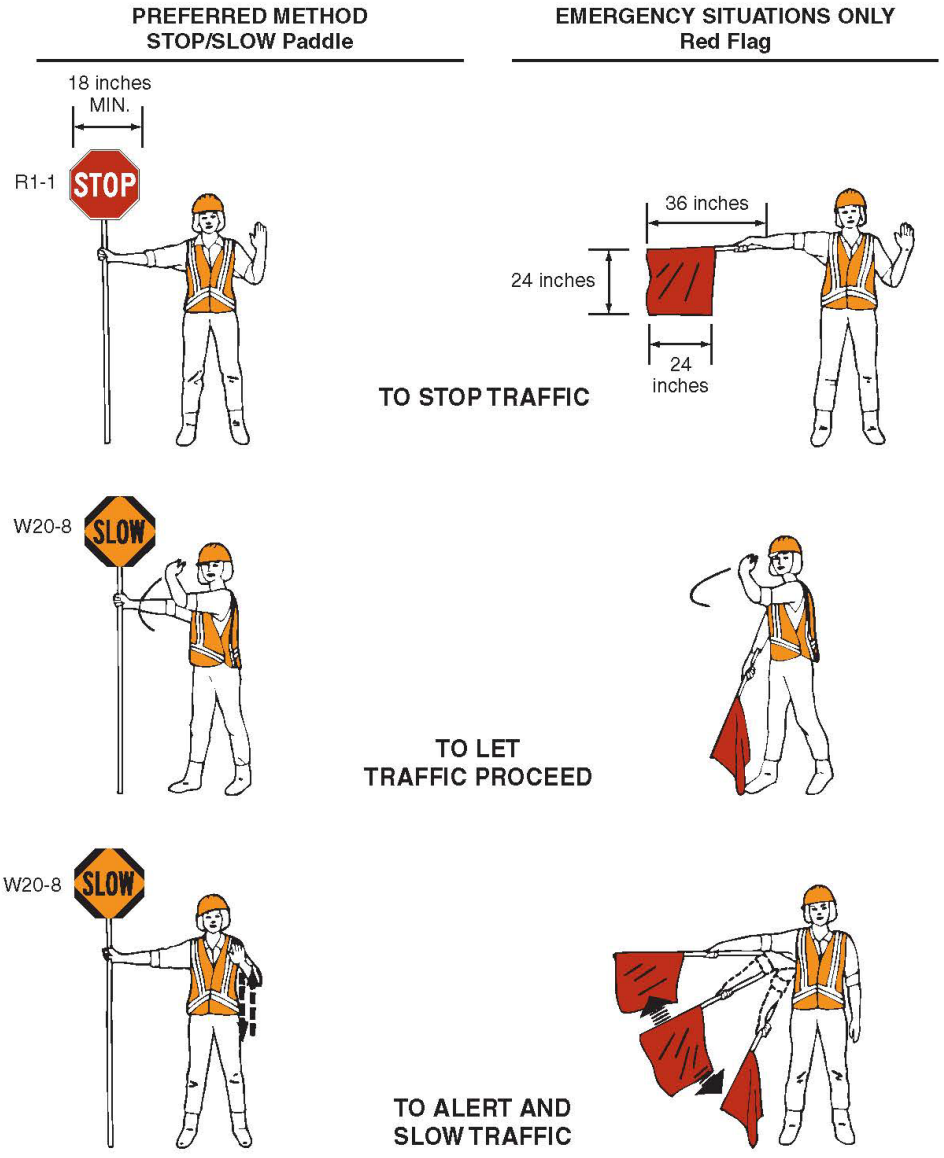
Option:

7 At spot lane closures where adequate sight distance is available for the reasonably safe handling of traffic, the use of one flagger may be sufficient.

Guidance:

8 *When a single flagger is used, the flagger should be stationed on the shoulder opposite the spot lane closure or work space, or in a position where good visibility and traffic control can be maintained at all times.*

Figure 6E-3. Use of Hand-Signaling Devices by Flaggers



Section 6E.08 Flagger Stations

Standard:

1 **Flagger stations shall be located such that approaching road users will have sufficient distance to stop at an intended stopping point.**

Option:

2 The distances shown in Table 6E-1, which provides information regarding the stopping sight distance as a function of speed, may be used for the location of a flagger station. These distances may be increased for downgrades and other conditions that affect stopping distance.

Guidance:

3 *Flagger stations should be located such that an errant vehicle has additional space to stop without entering the work space. The flagger should identify an escape route that can be used to avoid being struck by an errant vehicle.*

Standard:

4 **Except in emergency situations, flagger stations shall be preceded by an advance warning sign or signs. Except in emergency situations, flagger stations shall be illuminated at night.**

Table 6E-1. Stopping Sight Distance as a Function of Speed

Speed*	Distance
20 mph	115 feet
25 mph	155 feet
30 mph	200 feet
35 mph	250 feet
40 mph	305 feet
45 mph	360 feet
50 mph	425 feet
55 mph	495 feet
60 mph	570 feet
65 mph	645 feet
70 mph	730 feet
75 mph	820 feet

* Posted speed, off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to work starting, or the anticipated operating speed

CHAPTER 6F. TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL ZONE DEVICES

Section 6F.01 Types of Devices

Guidance:

1 *The design and application of TTC devices used in TTC zones should consider the needs of all road users (motorists, bicyclists, and pedestrians), including those with disabilities.*

Support:

2 FHWA policy requires that all roadside appurtenances such as traffic barriers, barrier terminals and crash cushions, bridge railings, sign and light pole supports, and work zone hardware used on the National Highway System meet the crashworthy performance criteria contained in the National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP) Report 350, "Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Features," or the AASHTO Manual on Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH 2016). The FHWA website at "https://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/roadway_dept/countermeasures/reduce_crash_severity/listing.cfm?code=cushions" identifies all such hardware and includes copies of FHWA acceptance letters for each of them. In the case of proprietary items, links are provided to manufacturers' websites as a source of detailed information on specific devices. The website also contains an "Ask the Experts" section where questions on roadside design issues can be addressed.

3 Various Sections of the MUTCD require certain traffic control devices, their supports, and/or related appurtenances to be crashworthy. Such MUTCD crashworthiness provisions apply to all streets, highways, and private roads open to public travel. Also, State Departments of Transportation and local agencies might have expanded the NCHRP Report 350 or MASH 2016 crashworthy criteria to apply to certain other roadside appurtenances.

4 Crashworthiness and crash testing information on devices described in Part 6 are found in AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11).

5 For the definition of "crashworthy," see 1A.13.43.

Standard:

6 **Traffic control devices shall be defined as all signs, signals, markings, and other devices used to regulate, warn, or guide road users, placed on, over, or adjacent to a street, highway, private roads open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13), pedestrian facility, or bikeway by authority of a public body or official having jurisdiction.**

7 **All traffic control devices used for construction, maintenance, utility, or incident management operations on a street, highway, or private road open to public travel (see definition in Section 1A.13) shall comply with the applicable provisions of this Manual, except that crashworthy standards shall apply only to those temporary devices discussed in this chapter that are specifically required to meet the crashworthy standard.**

Section 6F.02 General Characteristics of Signs

Support:

1 TTC zone signs convey both general and specific messages by means of words, symbols, and/or arrows and have the same three categories as all road user signs: regulatory, warning, and guide.

Standard:

2 **The colors for regulatory signs shall follow the Standards for regulatory signs in Table 2A-5 and Chapter 2B. Warning signs in TTC zones shall have a black legend and border on an orange background, except for the Grade Crossing Advance Warning (W10-1) sign which shall have a black legend and border on a yellow background, and except for signs that are required or recommended in Parts 2 or 7 to have fluorescent yellow-green backgrounds. Colors for guide signs shall follow the Standards in Table 2A-5 and Chapter 2D, except for guide signs as otherwise provided in Section 6F.55.**

Option:

3 Where the color orange is required, the fluorescent orange color may also be used.

Support:

4 The fluorescent version of orange provides higher conspicuity than standard orange, especially during twilight.

Option:

5 Existing warning signs that are still applicable may remain in place.

6 In order to maintain the systematic use of yellow or fluorescent yellow-green backgrounds for pedestrian, bicycle, and school warning signs in a jurisdiction, the yellow or fluorescent yellow-green background for pedestrian, bicycle, and school warning signs may be used in TTC zones.

7 Standard orange flags or flashing warning lights may be used in conjunction with signs.

Standard:

8 **When standard orange flags or flashing warning lights are used in conjunction with signs, they shall not block the sign face.**

9 **Except as provided in Section 2A.11, the sizes for TTC signs and plaques shall be as shown in Table 6F-1. The sizes in the minimum column shall only be used on local streets or roadways where the 85th-percentile speed or posted speed limit is less than 35 mph.**

Option:

10 The dimensions of signs and plaques shown in Table 6F-1 may be increased wherever necessary for greater legibility or emphasis.

Standard:

11 **Deviations from standard sizes as prescribed in this Manual shall be in 6-inch increments.**

Support:

12 Sign design details are contained in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11).

13 Section 2A.06 contains additional information regarding the design of signs, including an Option allowing the development of special word message signs if a standard word message or symbol sign is not available to convey the necessary regulatory, warning, or guidance information.

Standard:

14 **All signs used at night shall be either retroreflective with a material that has a smooth, sealed outer surface or illuminated to show the same shape and similar color both day and night.**

15 **The requirement for sign illumination shall not be considered to be satisfied by street, highway, or strobe lighting.**

Option:

16 Sign illumination may be either internal or external.

17 Signs may be made of rigid or flexible material.

Table 6F-1. Temporary Traffic Control Zone Sign and Plaque Sizes

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road	Freeway or Expressway	Minimum
Stop	R1-1	6F.06	30 x 30*	—	—
Stop (on Stop/Slow Paddle)	R1-1	6E.03	18 x 18	—	—
Yield	R1-2	6F.06	36 x 36 x 36*	—	30 x 30 x 30
To Oncoming Traffic (plaque)	R1-2aP	6F.06	36 x 30	48 x 36	24 x 18
Wait on Stop	R1-7	6E.05	24 x 30	24 x 30	—
Go on Slow	R1-8	6E.05	24 x 30	24 x 30	—
Speed Limit	R2-1	6F.12	24 x 30*	36 x 48	—
Fines Higher (plaque)	R2-6P	6F.12	24 x 18	36 x 24	—
Fines Double (plaque)	R2-6aP	6F.12	24 x 18	36 x 24	—
$XX Fine (plaque)	R2-6bP	6F.12	24 x 18	36 x 24	—
Begin Higher Fines Zone	R2-10	6F.12	24 x 30	36 x 48	—
End Higher Fines Zone	R2-11	6F.12	24 x 30	36 x 48	—
End Work Zone Speed Limit	R2-12	6F.12	24 x 36	36 x 54	—
Movement Prohibition	R3-1,2,3,4,18,27	6F.06	24 x 24*	36 x 36	—
Mandatory Movement (1 lane)	R3-5	6F.06	30 x 36	—	—
Optional Movement (1 lane)	R3-6	6F.06	30 x 36	—	—
Right (Left) Lane Must Turn Right (Left)	R3-7	6F.06	30 x 30*	—	—
Advance Intersection Lane Control	R3-8	6F.06	Varies x 30	—	—
Do Not Pass	R4-1	6F.06	24 x 30	36 x 48	—
Pass With Care	R4-2	6F.06	24 x 30	36 x 48	—
Keep Right	R4-7	6F.06	24 x 30	36 x 48	—
Narrow Keep Right	R4-7c	6F.06	18 x 30	—	—
Stay in Lane	R4-9	6F.11	24 x 30	36 x 48	—
Do Not Enter	R5-1	6F.06	30 x 30*	36 x 36	—
Wrong Way	R5-1a	6F.06	36 x 24*	42 x 30	—
One Way	R6-1	6F.06	36 x 12*	54 x 18	—
One Way	R6-2	6F.06	24 x 30*	36 x 48	—
No Parking (symbol)	R8-3	6F.06	24 x 24	36 x 36	—
Pedestrian Crosswalk	R9-8	6F.13	36 x 18	—	—
Sidewalk Closed	R9-9	6F.14	24 x 12	—	—
Sidewalk Closed, Use Other Side	R9-10	6F.14	24 x 12	—	—
Sidewalk Closed Ahead, Cross Here	R9-11	6F.14	24 x 18	—	—
Sidewalk Closed, Cross Here	R9-11a	6F.14	24 x 12	—	—
Road Closed	R11-2	6F.08	48 x 30	—	—
Road Closed - Local Traffic Only	R11-3a,3b,4	6F.09	60 x 30	—	—
Weight Limit	R12-1,2	6F.10	24 x 30	36 x 48	—
Weight Limit (with symbols)	R12-5	6F.10	24 x 36	36 x 48	—
Turn and Curve Signs	W1-1,2,3,4	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Reverse Curve (2 or more lanes)	W1-4b,4c	6F.48	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
One-Direction Large Arrow	W1-6	6F.16	48 x 24	60 x 30	—
Chevron Alignment	W1-8	6F.16	18 x 24	30 x 36	—
Stop Ahead	W3-1	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Yield Ahead	W3-2	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Signal Ahead	W3-3	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Be Prepared to Stop	W3-4	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Reduced Speed Limit Ahead	W3-5	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
XX MPH Speed Zone Ahead	W3-5a	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Merging Traffic	W4-1,5	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	36 x 36
Lane Ends	W4-2	6F.24	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Added Lane	W4-3,6	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
No Merge Area (plaque)	W4-5P	6F.16	18 x 24	24 x 30	—
Road Narrows	W5-1	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Narrow Bridge	W5-2	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
One Lane Bridge	W5-3	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Ramp Narrows	W5-4	6F.26	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Divided Highway	W6-1	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Divided Highway Ends	W6-2	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Two-Way Traffic	W6-3	6F.32	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road	Freeway or Expressway	Minimum
Two-Way Traffic	W6-4	6F.76	12 x 18	12 x 18	—
Hill	W7-1	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Next XX Miles (plaque)	W7-3aP	6F.53	24 x 18	36 x 30	—
Bump	W8-1	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Dip	W8-2	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Pavement Ends	W8-3	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Soft Shoulder	W8-4	6F.44	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Slippery When Wet	W8-5	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Truck Crossing	W8-6	6F.36	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Loose Gravel	W8-7	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Rough Road	W8-8	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Low Shoulder	W8-9	6F.44	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Uneven Lanes	W8-11	6F.45	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
No Center Line	W8-12	6F.47	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Fallen Rocks	W8-14	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Grooved Pavement	W8-15	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Motorcycle (plaque)	W8-15P	6F.54	24 x 18	30 x 24	—
Shoulder Drop Off (symbol)	W8-17	6F.44	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Shoulder Drop-Off (plaque)	W8-17P	6F.44	24 x 18	30 x 24	—
Road May Flood	W8-18	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	24 x 24
No Shoulder	W8-23	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Steel Plate Ahead	W8-24	6F.46	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Shoulder Ends	W8-25	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Lane Ends	W9-1,2	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Center Lane Closed Ahead	W9-3	6F.23	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Grade Crossing Advance Warning	W10-1	6F.16	36 dia.	—	—
Truck	W11-10	6F.36	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Double Arrow	W12-1	6F.16	30 x 30	—	—
Low Clearance	W12-2	6F.16	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Advisory Speed (plaque)	W13-1P	6F.52	24 x 24	30 x 30	18 x 18
On Ramp (plaque)	W13-4P	6F.25	36 x 36	36 x 36	—
No Passing Zone (pennant)	W14-3	6F.16	48 x 48 x 36	64 x 64 x 48	40 x 40 x 30
XX Feet (plaque)	W16-2P	6F.16	24 x 18	30 x 24	—
Road Work (with distance)	W20-1	6F.18	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Detour (with distance)	W20-2	6F.19	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Road (Street) Closed (with distance)	W20-3	6F.20	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
One Lane Road (with distance)	W20-4	6F.21	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Lane(s) Closed (with distance)	W20-5,5a	6F.22	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Flagger (symbol)	W20-7	6F.31	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Flagger	W20-7a	6F.31	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Slow (on Stop/Slow Paddle)	W20-8	6E.03	18 x 18	—	—
Workers	W21-1,1a	6F.33	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Fresh Oil (Tar)	W21-2	6F.34	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Road Machinery Ahead	W21-3	6F.35	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Slow Moving Vehicle	W21-4	6G.06	36 x 18	—	—
Shoulder Work	W21-5	6F.37	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Shoulder Closed	W21-5a	6F.37	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Shoulder Closed (with distance)	W21-5b	6F.37	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Survey Crew	W21-6	6F.38	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Utility Work Ahead	W21-7	6F.39	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Mowing Ahead	W21-8	6G.06	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Blasting Zone Ahead	W22-1	6F.41	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Turn Off 2-Way Radio and Cell Phone	W22-2	6F.42	42 x 36	42 x 36	—
End Blasting Zone	W22-3	6F.43	42 x 36	42 x 36	36 x 30
Slow Traffic Ahead	W23-1	6F.27	48 x 24	48 x 24	—
New Traffic Pattern Ahead	W23-2	6F.30	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Double Reverse Curve (1 lane)	W24-1	6F.49	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Double Reverse Curve (2 lanes)	W24-1a	6F.49	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
Double Reverse Curve (3 lanes)	W24-1b	6F.49	36 x 36	48 x 48	30 x 30
All Lanes (plaque)	W24-1cP	6F.49	24 x 18	30 x 24	—
Road Work Next XX Miles	G20-1	6F.56	36 x 18	48 x 24	—
End Road Work	G20-2	6F.57	36 x 18	48 x 24	—

Sign or Plaque	Sign Designation	Section	Conventional Road	Freeway or Expressway	Minimum
Pilot Car Follow Me	G20-4	6F.58	36 x 18	—	—
Work Zone (plaque)	G20-5aP	6F.12	24 x 18	36 x 24	—
Exit Open	E5-2	6F.28	48 x 36	48 x 36	—
Exit Closed	E5-2a	6F.28	48 x 36	48 x 36	—
Exit Only	E5-3	6F.29	48 x 36	48 x 36	—
Detour	M4-8	6F.59	24 x 12	30 x 15	—
End Detour	M4-8a	6F.59	24 x 18	24 x 18	—
End	M4-8b	6F.59	24 x 12	24 x 12	—
Detour	M4-9	6F.59	30 x 24	48 x 36	—
Bike/Pedestrian Detour	M4-9a	6F.59	30 x 24	—	—
Pedestrian Detour	M4-9b	6F.59	30 x 24	—	—
Bike Detour	M4-9c	6F.59	30 x 24	—	—
Detour	M4-10	6F.59	48 x 18	—	—

* See Table 2B-2 for minimum size required for signs facing traffic on multi-lane conventional roads

Notes: 1. Larger signs may be used wherever necessary for greater legibility or emphasis
2. Dimensions are shown in inches and are shown as width x height
3. For conventional highways with speed limits of 45 mph or greater, the size of diamond shaped temporary traffic control warning signs should be a minimum of 48 x 48 inches.

Section 6F.03 Sign Placement

Guidance:

1 *Signs should be located on the right-hand side of the roadway unless otherwise provided in this Manual.*

Option:

2 Where special emphasis is needed, signs may be placed on both the left-hand and right-hand sides of the roadway. Signs mounted on portable supports may be placed within the roadway itself. Signs may also be mounted on or above barricades.

Support:

3 The provisions of this Section regarding mounting height apply unless otherwise provided for a particular sign elsewhere in this Manual.

Standard:

4 **The minimum height, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the pavement, of signs installed at the side of the road in rural areas shall be 5 feet (see Figure 6F-1).**

5 **The minimum height, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the top of the curb, or in the absence of curb, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the elevation of the near edge of the traveled way, of signs installed at the side of the road in business, commercial, or residential areas where parking or pedestrian movements are likely to occur, or where the view of the sign might be obstructed, shall be 7 feet (see Figure 6F-1).**

6 **The minimum height, measured vertically from the bottom of the sign to the sidewalk, of signs installed above sidewalks shall be 7 feet.**

Option:

7 The height to the bottom of a secondary sign mounted below another sign may be 1 foot less than the height provided in Paragraphs 4 through 6.

Guidance:

8 *Neither portable nor permanent sign supports should be located on sidewalks, bicycle facilities, or areas designated for pedestrian or bicycle traffic. If the bottom of a secondary sign that is mounted below another sign is mounted lower than 7 feet above a pedestrian sidewalk or pathway (see Section 6D.02), the secondary sign should not project more than 4 inches into the pedestrian facility.*

Standard:

9 **Where it has been determined that the accommodation of pedestrians with disabilities is necessary, signs shall be mounted and placed in accordance with Section 4.4 of the "Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)" (see Section 1A.11).**

10 **Signs mounted on barricades and barricade/sign combinations shall be crashworthy.**

Guidance:

11 *Except as provided in Paragraph 12, signs mounted on portable sign supports that do not meet the minimum mounting heights provided in Paragraphs 4 through 6 should not be used for a duration of more than 3 days.*

Option:

12 The R9-8 through R9-11a series, R11 series, W1-6 through W1-8 series, M4-10, E5-1, or other similar type signs (see Figures 6F-3, 6F-4, and 6F-5) may be used on portable sign supports that do not meet the minimum mounting heights provided in Paragraphs 4 through 6 for longer than 3 days.

MUTCD guidance says signs mounted on portable supports should not be used for a duration of more than 3 days. This maximum time duration may be revised to 7 continuous days and nights.

Support:

13 Methods of mounting signs other than on posts are illustrated in Figure 6F-2.

Guidance:

14 *Signs mounted on Type 3 Barricades should not cover more than 50 percent of the top two rails or 33 percent of the total area of the three rails.*

Standard:

15 **Sign supports shall be crashworthy. Where large signs having an area exceeding 50 square feet are installed on multiple breakaway posts, the clearance from the ground to the bottom of the sign shall be at least 7 feet.**

16 **The bottom of a sign mounted on a barricade, or other portable support, shall be at least 1 foot above the traveled way.**

Option:

17 For mobile operations, a sign may be mounted on a work vehicle, a shadow vehicle, or a trailer stationed in advance of the TTC zone or moving along with it.

Support:

18 If alterations are made to specific traffic control device supports that have been successfully crash tested in accordance with NCHRP Report 350, the altered supports might not be considered to be crashworthy.

Figure 6F-1. Height and Lateral Location of Signs—Typical Installations

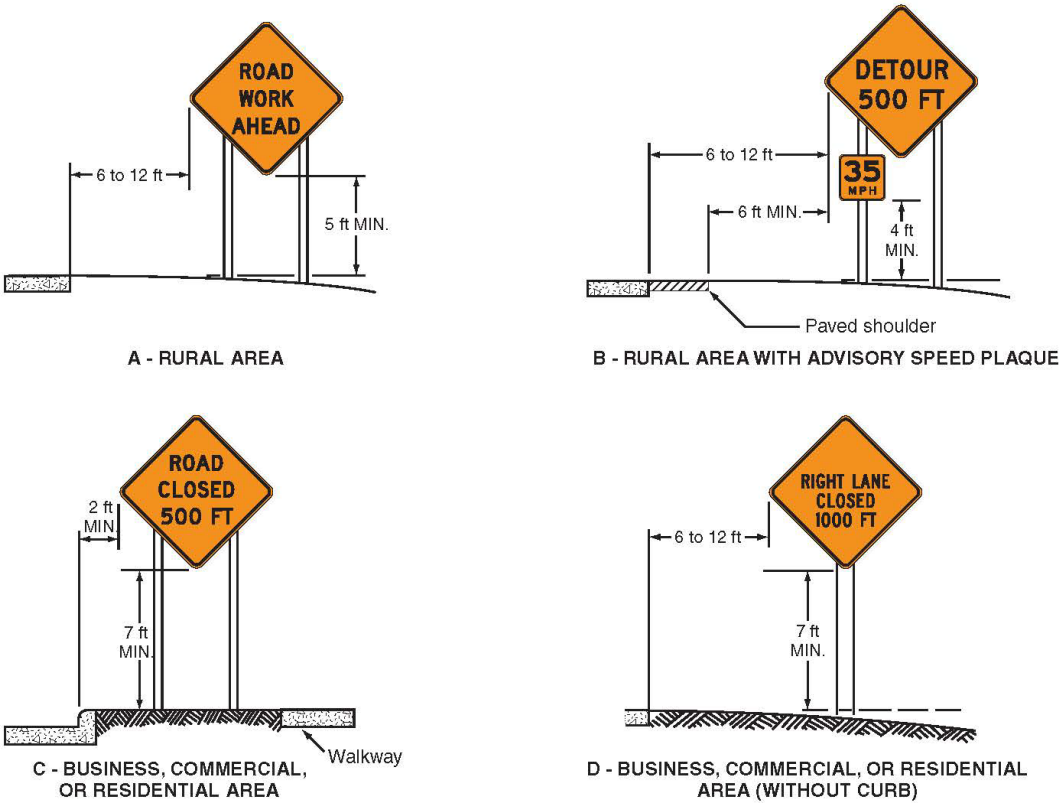
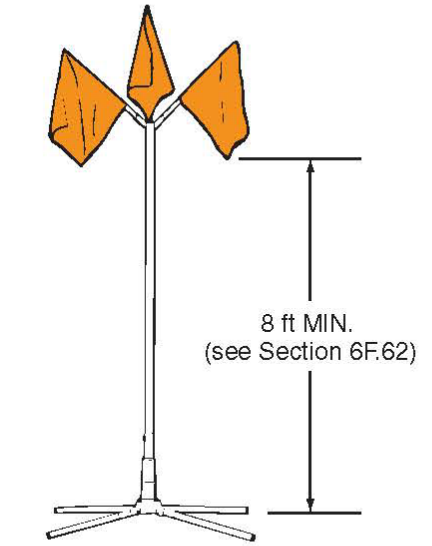
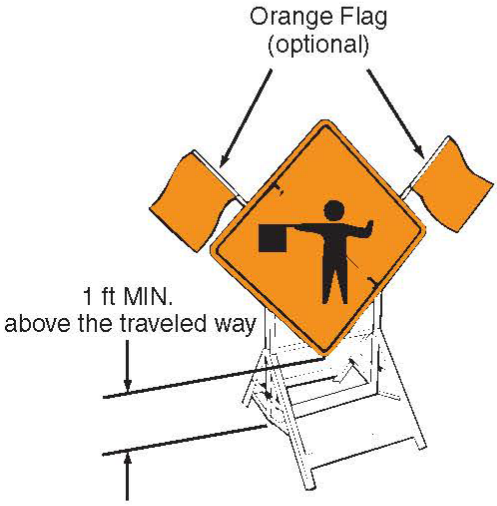
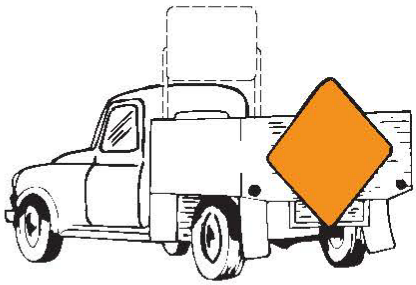


Figure 6F-2. Methods of Mounting Signs Other Than on Posts

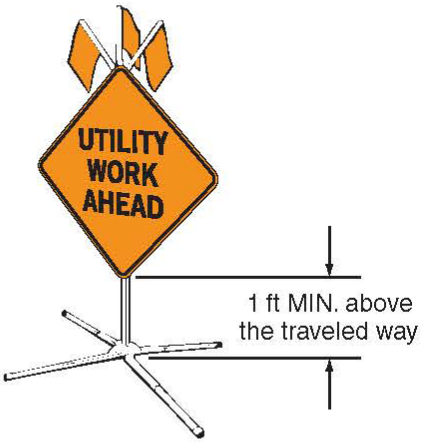


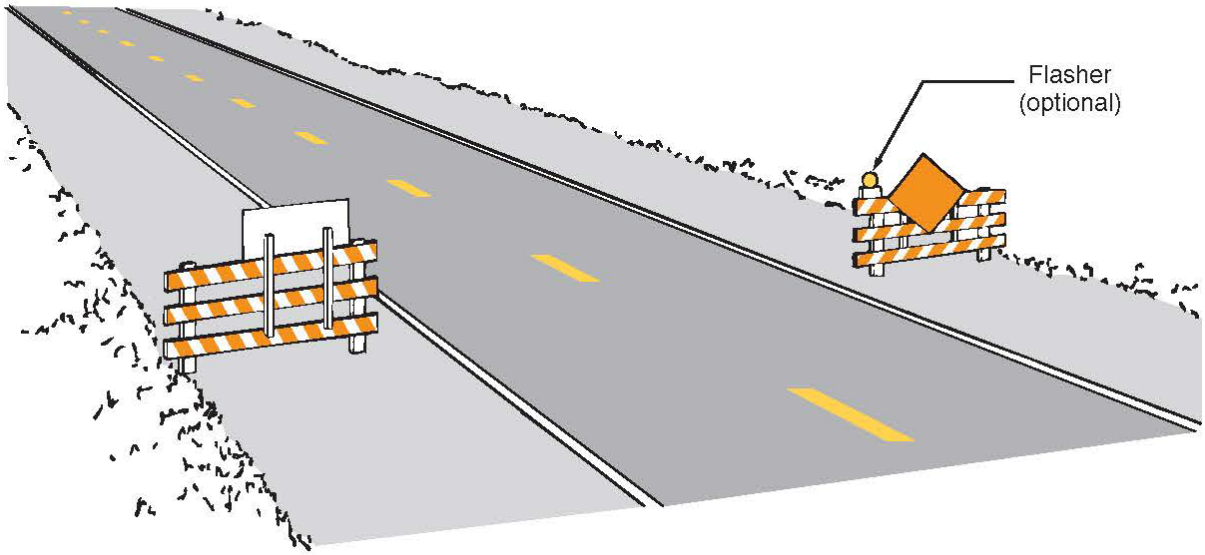
High-Level Warning Device
(Flag Tree)





PORTABLE AND TEMPORARY MOUNTINGS





BARRICADES

Section 6F.04 Sign Maintenance

Guidance:

1 *Signs should be properly maintained for cleanliness, visibility, and correct positioning.*

2 *Signs that have lost significant legibility should be promptly replaced.*

Support:

3 Section 2A.08 contains information regarding the retroreflectivity of signs, including the signs that are used in TTC zones.

Section 6F.05 Regulatory Sign Authority

Support:

1 Regulatory signs such as those shown in Figure 6F-3 inform road users of traffic laws or regulations and indicate the applicability of legal requirements that would not otherwise be apparent.

Standard:

2 **Regulatory signs shall be authorized by the public agency or official having jurisdiction and shall conform with Chapter 2B.**

Section 6F.06 Regulatory Sign Design

Standard:

1 **TTC regulatory signs shall comply with the Standards for regulatory signs presented in Part 2 and in the FHWA's "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11).**

Guidance:

Temporary traffic control signs not included in the FHWA's "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book should conform to the Department's "Sign Plate" book.

Support:

2 Regulatory signs are generally rectangular with a black legend and border on a white background. Exceptions include the STOP, YIELD, DO NOT ENTER, WRONG WAY, and ONE WAY signs.

Option:

3 The ONE WAY sign may be either a horizontal or vertical rectangular sign.

Section 6F.07 Regulatory Sign Applications

Standard:

1 **If a TTC zone requires regulatory measures different from those existing, the existing permanent regulatory devices shall be removed or covered and superseded by the appropriate temporary regulatory signs. This change shall be made in compliance with applicable ordinances or statutes of the jurisdiction.**

Section 6F.08 ROAD (STREET) CLOSED Sign (R11-2)

Guidance:

1 *The ROAD (STREET) CLOSED (R11-2) sign (see Figure 6F-3) should be used when the roadway is closed to all road users except contractors' equipment or officially authorized vehicles. The R11-2 sign should be accompanied by appropriate warning and detour signing.*

Option:

2 The words BRIDGE OUT (or BRIDGE CLOSED) may be substituted for ROAD (STREET) CLOSED where applicable.

The words LANE CLOSED or RAMP CLOSED may be substituted for ROAD (STREET) CLOSED where applicable.

Guidance:

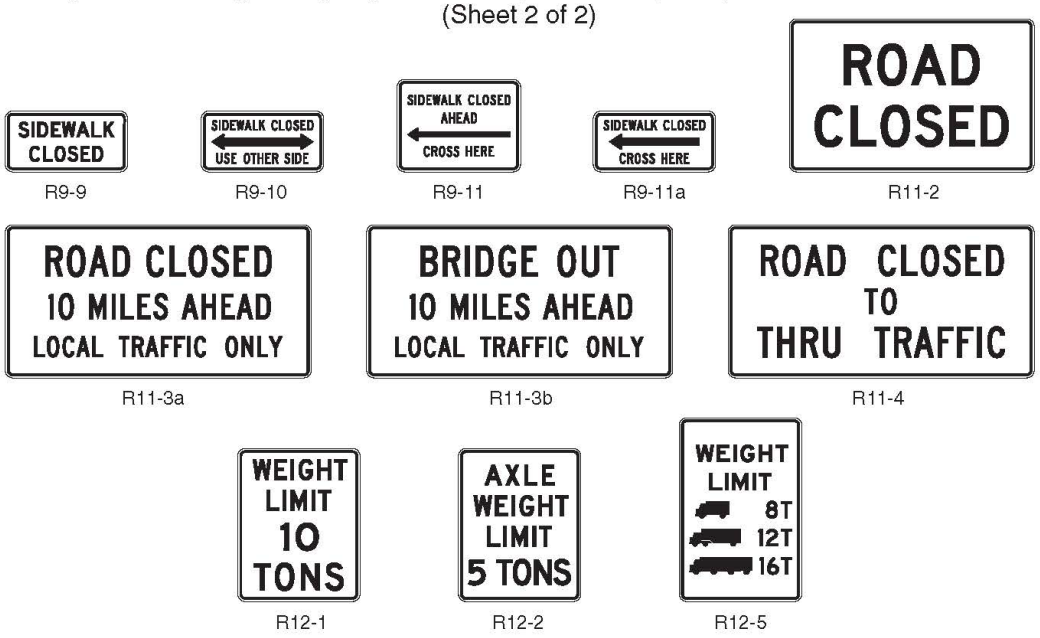
3 *The ROAD (STREET) CLOSED sign should be installed at or near the center of the roadway on or above a Type 3 Barricade that closes the roadway (see Section 6F.68).*

Standard:

4 **The ROAD (STREET) CLOSED sign shall not be used where road user flow is maintained through the TTC zone with a reduced number of lanes on the existing roadway or where the actual closure is some distance beyond the sign.**

Figure 6F-3. Regulatory Signs and Plaques in Temporary Traffic Control Zones
(Sheet 1 of 2)

Figure 6F-3. Regulatory Signs and Plaques in Temporary Traffic Control Zones
(Sheet 2 of 2)



Section 6F.09 Local Traffic Only Signs (R11-3a, R11-4)

Option:

The Local Traffic Only signs may also be used at the point of closure if access beyond the closure is allowed for traffic originating within, or having a destination on, the portion of the roadway closed to through traffic.

The ROAD (STREET) CLOSED TO THRU TRAFFIC (R11-4) sign may be used in rural or urban areas.

Guidance:

Where the point of closure is more than ½ mile beyond the sign (1000 feet if urban), the ROAD CLOSED XX MILES AHEAD, LOCAL TRAFFIC ONLY (R11-3) sign should be used.

Where the point of closure is less than ½ mile beyond the sign (1000 feet if urban), the ROAD (STREET) CLOSED TO THRU TRAFFIC sign should be used.

At the point of closure where access is allowed beyond the closure for traffic originating within, or having a destination on, the portion of the roadway closed to through traffic, the ROAD (STREET) CLOSED TO THRU TRAFFIC sign should be used.

Guidance:

1 *The Local Traffic Only signs (see Figure 6F-3) should be used where road user flow detours to avoid a closure some distance beyond the sign, but where local road users can use the roadway to the point of closure. These signs should be accompanied by appropriate warning and detour signing.*

2 *In rural applications, the Local Traffic Only sign should have the legend ROAD CLOSED XX MILES AHEAD, LOCAL TRAFFIC ONLY (R11-3a).*

Option:

3 In urban areas, the legend ROAD (STREET) CLOSED TO THRU TRAFFIC (R11-4) or ROAD CLOSED, LOCAL TRAFFIC ONLY may be used.

4 In urban areas, a word message that includes the name of an intersecting street name or well-known destination may be substituted for the words XX MILES AHEAD on the R11-3a sign where applicable.

5 The words BRIDGE OUT (or BRIDGE CLOSED) may be substituted for the words ROAD (STREET) CLOSED on the R11-3a or R11-4 sign where applicable.

Section 6F.10 Weight Limit Signs (R12-1, R12-2, R12-5)

Standard:

1 **A Weight Limit sign (see Figure 6F-3), which shows the gross weight or axle weight that is permitted on the roadway or bridge, shall be consistent with State or local regulations and shall not be installed without the approval of the authority having jurisdiction over the highway.**

2 **When weight restrictions are imposed because of the activity in a TTC zone, a marked detour shall be provided for vehicles weighing more than the posted limit.**

Option:

A marked detour for vehicles weighing more than the weight limit may not always be necessary or practical. Consider the volume of traffic, classification of roadway, and suitability of designating a single detour route for all vehicles weighing more than the limit.

Standard:

The R12-5 symbol sign for combination truck weights shall not be used.

See Section 2B.59 for more standards on weight limit signs.

Section 6F.11 STAY IN LANE Sign (R4-9)

Option:

1 A STAY IN LANE (R4-9) sign (see Figure 6F-3) may be used where a multi-lane shift has been incorporated as part of the TTC on a highway to direct road users around road work that occupies part of the roadway on a multi-lane highway.

Section 6F.12 Work Zone and Higher Fines Signs and Plaques

Option:

1 A WORK ZONE (G20-5aP) plaque (see Figure 6F-3) may be mounted above a Speed Limit sign to emphasize that a reduced speed limit is in effect within a TTC zone. An END WORK ZONE SPEED LIMIT (R2-12) sign (see Figure 6F-3) may be installed at the downstream end of the reduced speed limit zone.

Guidance:

2 *A BEGIN HIGHER FINES ZONE (R2-10) sign (see Figure 6F-3) should be installed at the upstream end of a work zone where increased fines are imposed for traffic violations, and an END HIGHER FINES ZONE (R2-11) sign (see Figure 6F-3) should be installed at the downstream end of the work zone.*

Option:

3 Alternate legends such as BEGIN (or END) DOUBLE FINES ZONE may also be used for the R2-10 and R2-11 signs.

4 A FINES HIGHER, FINES DOUBLE, or $XX FINE plaque (see Section 2B.17 and Figure 6F-3) may be mounted below the Speed Limit sign if increased fines are imposed for traffic violations within the TTC zone.

5 Individual signs and plaques for work zone speed limits and higher fines may be combined into a single sign or may be displayed as an assembly of signs and plaques.

Section 6F.13 PEDESTRIAN CROSSWALK Sign (R9-8)

Option:

1 The PEDESTRIAN CROSSWALK (R9-8) sign (see Figure 6F-3) may be used to indicate where a temporary crosswalk has been established.

Standard:

2 **If a temporary crosswalk is established, it shall be accessible to pedestrians with disabilities in accordance with Section 6D.02.**

Section 6F.14 SIDEWALK CLOSED Signs (R9-9, R9-10, R9-11, R9-11a)

Guidance:

1 *SIDEWALK CLOSED signs (see Figure 6F-3) should be used where pedestrian flow is restricted. Bicycle/Pedestrian Detour (M4-9a) signs or Pedestrian Detour (M4-9b) signs should be used where pedestrian flow is rerouted (see Section 6F.59).*

2 *The SIDEWALK CLOSED (R9-9) sign should be installed at the beginning of the closed sidewalk, at the intersections preceding the closed sidewalk, and elsewhere along the closed sidewalk as needed.*

3 *The SIDEWALK CLOSED, (ARROW) USE OTHER SIDE (R9-10) sign should be installed at the beginning of the restricted sidewalk when a parallel sidewalk exists on the other side of the roadway.*

4 *The SIDEWALK CLOSED AHEAD, (ARROW) CROSS HERE (R9-11) sign should be used to indicate to pedestrians that sidewalks beyond the sign are closed and to direct them to open crosswalks, sidewalks, or other travel paths.*

5 *The SIDEWALK CLOSED, (ARROW) CROSS HERE (R9-11a) sign should be installed just beyond the point to which pedestrians are being redirected.*

Support:

6 These signs are typically mounted on a detectable barricade to encourage compliance and to communicate with pedestrians that the sidewalk is closed. Printed signs are not useful to many pedestrians with visual disabilities. A barrier or barricade detectable by a person with a visual disability is sufficient to indicate that a sidewalk is closed. If the barrier is continuous with detectable channelizing devices for an alternate route, accessible signing might not be necessary. An audible information device is needed when the detectable barricade or barrier for an alternate channelized route is not continuous.

Section 6F.15 Special Regulatory Signs

Option:

1 Special regulatory signs may be used based on engineering judgment consistent with regulatory requirements.

Guidance:

2 *Special regulatory signs should comply with the general requirements of color, shape, and alphabet size and series. The sign message should be brief, legible, and clear.*

Section 6F.16 Warning Sign Function, Design, and Application

Support:

1 TTC zone warning signs (see Figure 6F-4) notify road users of specific situations or conditions on or adjacent to a roadway that might not otherwise be apparent.

Standard:

2 **TTC warning signs shall comply with the Standards for warning signs presented in Part 2 and in FHWA's "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book (see Section 1A.11). Except as provided in Paragraph 3, TTC warning signs shall be diamond-shaped with a black legend and border on an orange background, except for the W10-1 sign which shall have a black legend and border on a yellow background, and except for signs that are required or recommended in Parts 2 or 7 to have fluorescent yellow-green backgrounds.**

Guidance:

Temporary traffic control signs not included in the FHWA's "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book should conform to the Department's "Sign Plate" book.

See Section 2C.38 for Guidance for Speed Reduction Signs (W3-5 Series).

Option:

3 Warning signs used for TTC incident management situations may have a black legend and border on a fluorescent pink background.

4 Mounting or space considerations may justify a change from the standard diamond shape.

5 In emergencies, available warning signs having yellow backgrounds may be used if signs with orange or fluorescent pink backgrounds are not at hand.

Guidance:

6 *Where roadway or road user conditions require greater emphasis, larger than standard size warning signs should be used, with the symbol or legend enlarged approximately in proportion to the outside dimensions.*

7 *Where any part of the roadway is obstructed or closed by work activities or incidents, advance warning signs should be installed to alert road users well in advance of these obstructions or restrictions.*

8 *Where road users include pedestrians, the provision of supplemental audible information or detectable barriers or barricades should be considered for people with visual disabilities.*

Support:

9 Detectable barriers or barricades communicate very clearly to pedestrians who have visual disabilities that they can no longer proceed in the direction that they are traveling.

Option:

10 Advance warning signs may be used singly or in combination.

11 Where distances are not displayed on warning signs as part of the message, a supplemental plaque with the distance legend may be mounted immediately below the sign on the same support.

Figure 6F-4. Warning Signs and Plaques in Temporary Traffic Control Zones
(Sheet 1 of 3)

Figure 6F-4. Warning Signs and Plaques in Temporary Traffic Control Zones
(Sheet 2 of 3)

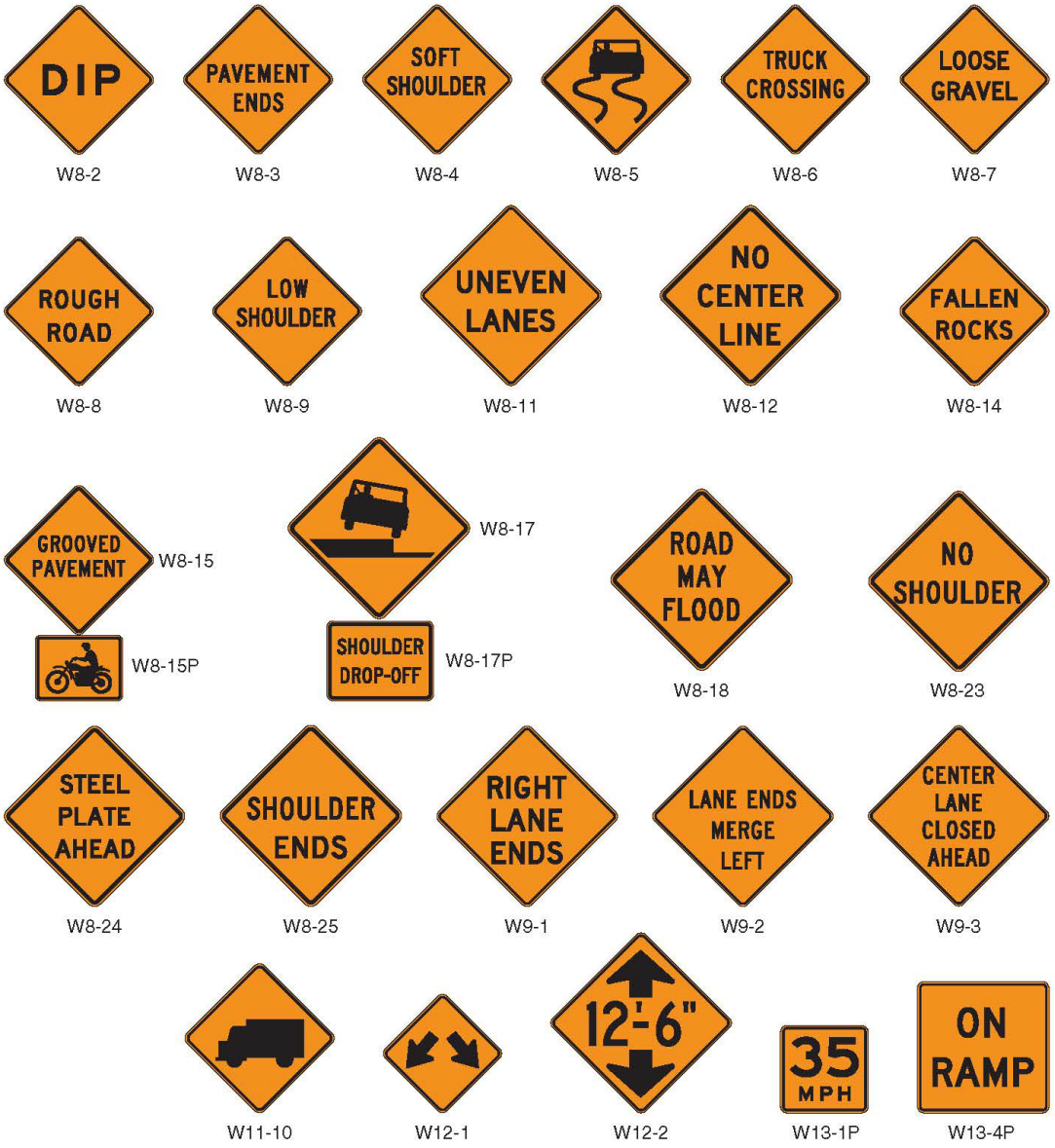


Figure 6F-4. Warning Signs and Plaques in Temporary Traffic Control Zones (Sheet 3 of 3)

* An optional STREET WORK word message sign is shown in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book.
** An optional STREET CLOSED word message sign is shown in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book.
*** An optional FLAGGER (W20-7a) word message sign is shown in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book.
**** An optional FRESH TAR word message sign is show in the "Standard Highway Signs and Markings" book.

Section 6F.17 Position of Advance Warning Signs

Guidance:

1 *Where highway conditions permit, warning signs should be placed in advance of the TTC zone at varying distances depending on roadway type, condition, and posted speed. Table 6C-1 contains information regarding the spacing of advance warning signs. Where a series of two or more advance warning signs is used, the closest sign to the TTC zone should be placed approximately 100 feet for low-speed urban streets to 1,000 feet or more for freeways and expressways.*

2 *Where multiple advance warning signs are needed on the approach to a TTC zone, the ROAD WORK AHEAD (W20-1) sign should be the first advance warning sign encountered by road users.*

For low-speed urban streets, the distance from the closest sign to the temporary traffic control zone and the distance between signs in Table 6C-1 should be approximately 200 feet.

Support:

3 Various conditions, such as limited sight distance or obstructions that might require a driver to reduce speed or stop, might require additional advance warning signs.

Option:

4 As an alternative to a specific distance on advance warning signs, the word AHEAD may be used.

For low-speed urban streets, where field conditions such as location of intersections, trees, existing signs or other obstructions dictate, the distance from the closest sign to the temporary traffic control zone and the distance between signs in Table 6C-1 may be as short as 100 feet.

Support:

5 At TTC zones on lightly-traveled roads, all of the advance warning signs prescribed for major construction might not be needed.

Option:

6 Utility work, maintenance, or minor construction can occur within the TTC zone limits of a major construction project, and additional warning signs may be needed.

Guidance:

7 *Utility, maintenance, and minor construction signing and TTC should be coordinated with appropriate authorities so that road users are not confused or misled by the additional TTC devices.*

Section 6F.18 ROAD (STREET) WORK Sign (W20-1)

Guidance:

1 *The ROAD (STREET) WORK (W20-1) sign (see Figure 6F-4), which serves as a general warning of obstructions or restrictions, should be located in advance of the work space or any detour, on the road where the work is taking place.*

2 *Where traffic can enter a TTC zone from a crossroad or a major (high-volume) driveway, an advance warning sign should be used on the crossroad or major driveway.*

Standard:

3 **The ROAD (STREET) WORK (W20-1) sign shall have the legend ROAD (STREET) WORK, XX FEET, XX MILES, or AHEAD.**

Section 6F.19 DETOUR Sign (W20-2)

Guidance:

1 *The DETOUR (W20-2) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used in advance of a road user detour over a different roadway or route.*

Standard:

2 **The DETOUR sign shall have the legend DETOUR, XX FEET, XX MILES, or AHEAD.**

Section 6F.20 ROAD (STREET) CLOSED Sign (W20-3)

Guidance:

1 *The ROAD (STREET) CLOSED (W20-3) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used in advance of the point where a highway is closed to all road users, or to all but local road users.*

Standard:

2 **The ROAD (STREET) CLOSED sign shall have the legend ROAD (STREET) CLOSED, XX FEET, XX MILES, or AHEAD.**

Section 6F.21 ONE LANE ROAD Sign (W20-4)

Standard:

1 **The ONE LANE ROAD (W20-4) sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall be used only in advance of that point where motor vehicle traffic in both directions must use a common single lane (see Section 6C.10). It shall have the legend ONE LANE ROAD, XX FEET, XX MILES, or AHEAD.**

Section 6F.22 Lane(s) Closed Signs (W20-5, W20-5a)

Standard:

1 **The Lane(s) Closed sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall be used in advance of that point where one or more through lanes of a multi-lane roadway are closed.**

2 **For a single lane closure, the Lane Closed (W20-5) sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall have the legend RIGHT (LEFT) LANE CLOSED, XX FEET, XX MILES, or AHEAD. Where two adjacent lanes are closed, the W20-5a sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall have the legend XX RIGHT (LEFT) LANES CLOSED, XX FEET, XX MILES, or AHEAD.**

Section 6F.23 CENTER LANE CLOSED AHEAD Sign (W9-3)

Guidance:

1 *The CENTER LANE CLOSED AHEAD (W9-3) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used in advance of that point where work occupies the center lane(s) and approaching motor vehicle traffic is directed to the right or left of the work zone in the center lane.*

Section 6F.24 Lane Ends Sign (W4-2)

Option:

1 The Lane Ends (W4-2) symbol sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used to warn drivers of the reduction in the number of lanes for moving motor vehicle traffic in the direction of travel on a multi-lane roadway.

Section 6F.25 ON RAMP Plaque (W13-4P)

Guidance:

1 *When work is being done on a ramp, but the ramp remains open, the ON RAMP (W13-4P) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) should be used to supplement the advance ROAD WORK sign.*

Section 6F.26 RAMP NARROWS Sign (W5-4)

Guidance:

1 *The RAMP NARROWS (W5-4) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used in advance of the point where work on a ramp reduces the normal width of the ramp along a part or all of the ramp.*

Section 6F.27 SLOW TRAFFIC AHEAD Sign (W23-1)

Option:

1 The SLOW TRAFFIC AHEAD (W23-1) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used on a shadow vehicle, usually mounted on the rear of the most upstream shadow vehicle, along with other appropriate signs for mobile operations to warn of slow moving work vehicles. A ROAD WORK (W20-1) sign may also be used with the SLOW TRAFFIC AHEAD sign.

Section 6F.28 EXIT OPEN and EXIT CLOSED Signs (E5-2, E5-2a)

Option:

1 An EXIT OPEN (E5-2) or EXIT CLOSED (E5-2a) sign (see Figure 6F-5) may be used to supplement other warning signs where work is being conducted in the vicinity of an exit ramp and where the exit maneuver for vehicular traffic using the ramp is different from the normal condition.

Guidance:

2 *When an exit ramp is closed, an EXIT CLOSED sign panel with a black legend and border on an orange background should be placed diagonally across the interchange/intersection guide signs.*

Option:

The EXIT CLOSED panel may be placed horizontally across or below the interchange/intersection guide signs.

Section 6F.29 EXIT ONLY Sign (E5-3)

Guidance:

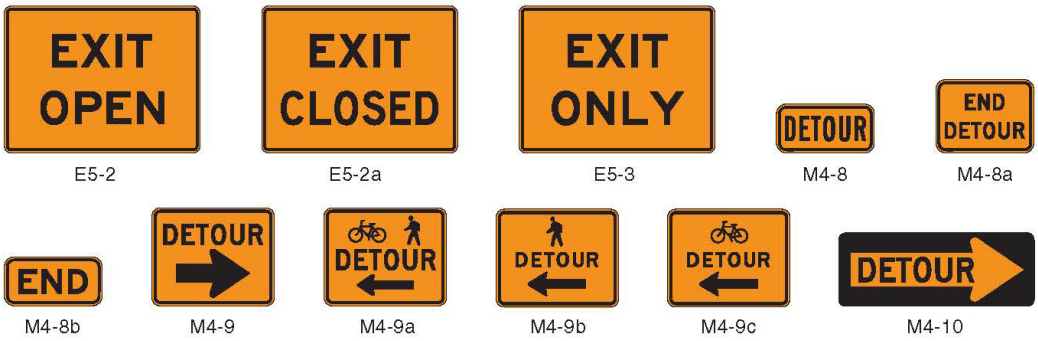
When EXIT ONLY signs are used, the following signs should also be used as needed to provide appropriate guidance for through and exiting traffic:

A. Route signs (M1-1, M1-4, M1-5A, M1-6) with directional arrow or USE RIGHT/LEFT LANE plaques;

B. Signs indicating to motor vehicle traffic a required maneuver from a specific lane such as RIGHT LANE FOR EXIT ONLY (R3-75); and/or

C. Advance Guide, Exit Direction, and Exit Gore signs.

Figure 6F-5. Exit Open and Closed and Detour Signs



Section 6F.29 EXIT ONLY Sign (E5-3)

Option:

1 An EXIT ONLY (E5-3) sign (see Figure 6F-5) may be used to supplement other warning signs where work is being conducted in the vicinity of an exit ramp and where the exit maneuver for vehicular traffic using the ramp is different from the normal condition.

Section 6F.30 NEW TRAFFIC PATTERN AHEAD Sign (W23-2)

Option:

1 A NEW TRAFFIC PATTERN AHEAD (W23-2) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used on the approach to an intersection or along a section of roadway to provide advance warning of a change in traffic patterns, such as revised lane usage, roadway geometry, or signal phasing.

Guidance:

2 *To retain its effectiveness, the W23-2 sign should be displayed for up to 2 weeks, and then it should be covered or removed until it is needed again.*

Section 6F.31 Flagger Signs (W20-7, W20-7a)

Guidance:

1 *The Flagger (W20-7) symbol sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used in advance of any point where a flagger is stationed to control road users.*

Option:

2 A distance legend may be displayed on a supplemental plaque below the Flagger sign. The sign may be used with appropriate legends or in conjunction with other warning signs, such as the BE PREPARED TO STOP (W3-4) sign (see Figure 6F-4).

3 The FLAGGER (W20-7a) word message sign with distance legends may be substituted for the Flagger (W20-7) symbol sign.

Section 6F.32 Two-Way Traffic Sign (W6-3)

Guidance:

1 *When one roadway of a normally divided highway is closed, with two-way vehicular traffic maintained on the other roadway, the Two-Way Traffic (W6-3) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used at the beginning of the two-way vehicular traffic section and at intervals to remind road users of opposing vehicular traffic.*

Section 6F.33 Workers Signs (W21-1, W21-1a)

Option:

1 A Workers (W21-1) symbol sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used to alert road users of workers in or near the roadway.

Guidance:

2 *In the absence of other warning devices, a Workers symbol sign should be used when workers are in the roadway.*

Option:

3 The WORKERS (W21-1a) word message sign may be used as an alternate to the Workers (W21-1) symbol sign.

Section 6F.34 FRESH OIL (TAR) Sign (W21-2)

Guidance:

1 *The FRESH OIL (TAR) (W21-2) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used to warn road users of the surface treatment.*

Section 6F.35 ROAD MACHINERY AHEAD Sign (W21-3)

Option:

1 The ROAD MACHINERY AHEAD (W21-3) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used to warn of machinery operating in or adjacent to the roadway.

Section 6F.36 Motorized Traffic Signs (W8-6, W11-10)

Option:

1 Motorized Traffic (W8-6, W11-10) signs may be used to alert road users to locations where unexpected travel on the roadway or entries into or departures from the roadway by construction vehicles might occur. The TRUCK CROSSING (W8-6) word message sign may be used as an alternate to the Truck Crossing (W11-10) symbol sign (see Figure 6F-4) where there is an established construction vehicle crossing of the roadway.

Support:

2 These locations might be relatively confined or might occur randomly over a segment of roadway.

Section 6F.37 Shoulder Work Signs (W21-5, W21-5a, W21-5b)

Support:

1 Shoulder Work signs (see Figure 6F-4) warn of maintenance, reconstruction, or utility operations on the highway shoulder where the roadway is unobstructed.

Standard:

2 **The Shoulder Work sign shall have the legend SHOULDER WORK (W21-5), RIGHT (LEFT) SHOULDER CLOSED (W21-5a), or RIGHT (LEFT) SHOULDER CLOSED XX FT or AHEAD (W21-5b).**

Option:

3 The Shoulder Work sign may be used in advance of the point on a non-limited access highway where there is shoulder work. It may be used singly or in combination with a ROAD WORK NEXT XX MILES or ROAD WORK AHEAD sign.

Guidance:

4 *On freeways and expressways, the RIGHT (LEFT) SHOULDER CLOSED XX FT or AHEAD (W21-5b) sign followed by RIGHT (LEFT) SHOULDER CLOSED (W21-5a) sign should be used in advance of the point where the shoulder work occurs and should be preceded by a ROAD WORK AHEAD sign.*

Section 6F.38 SURVEY CREW Sign (W21-6)

Guidance:

1 *The SURVEY CREW (W21-6) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used to warn of surveying crews working in or adjacent to the roadway.*

Section 6F.39 UTILITY WORK Sign (W21-7)

Option:

1 The UTILITY WORK (W21-7) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used as an alternate to the ROAD (STREET) WORK (W20-1) sign for utility operations on or adjacent to a highway.

Support:

2 Typical examples of where the UTILITY WORK sign is used appear in Figures 6H-4, 6H-6, 6H-10, 6H-15, 6H-18, 6H-21, 6H-22, 6H-26, and 6H-33.

Standard:

3 **The UTILITY WORK sign shall carry the legend UTILITY WORK, XX FEET, XX MILES, or AHEAD.**

4 Section 6F.40 Signs for Blasting Areas

Support:

5 Radio-Frequency (RF) energy can cause the premature firing of electric detonators (blasting caps) used in TTC zones.

Standard:

6 **Road users shall be warned to turn off mobile radio transmitters and cellular telephones where blasting operations occur. A sequence of signs shall be prominently displayed to direct operators of mobile radio equipment, including cellular telephones, to turn off transmitters in a blasting area. These signs shall be covered or removed when there are no explosives in the area or the area is otherwise secured.**

Section 6F.41 BLASTING ZONE AHEAD Sign (W22-1)

Standard:

1 **The BLASTING ZONE AHEAD (W22-1) sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall be used in advance of any TTC zone where explosives are being used. The TURN OFF 2-WAY RADIO AND CELL PHONE and END BLASTING ZONE signs shall be used in sequence with this sign.**

Section 6F.42 TURN OFF 2-WAY RADIO AND CELL PHONE Sign (W22-2)

Standard:

1 **The TURN OFF 2-WAY RADIO AND CELL PHONE (W22-2) sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall follow the BLASTING ZONE AHEAD sign and shall be placed at least 1,000 feet before the beginning of the blasting zone.**

Section 6F.43 END BLASTING ZONE Sign (W22-3)

Standard:

1 **The END BLASTING ZONE (W22-3) sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall be placed a minimum of 1,000 feet past the blasting zone.**

Option:

2 The END BLASTING ZONE sign may be placed either with or preceding the END ROAD WORK sign.

Section 6F.44 Shoulder Signs and Plaque (W8-4, W8-9, W8-17, and W8-17P)

Option:

1 The SOFT SHOULDER (W8-4) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used to warn of a soft shoulder condition.

2 The LOW SHOULDER (W8-9) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used to warn of a shoulder condition where there is an elevation difference of 3 inches or less between the shoulder and the travel lane.

Guidance:

3 *The Shoulder Drop Off (W8-17) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used when an unprotected shoulder drop-off, adjacent to the travel lane, exceeds 3 inches in depth for a continuous length along the roadway, based on engineering judgment.*

Option:

4 A SHOULDER DROP-OFF (W8-17P) supplemental plaque (see Figure 6F-4) may be mounted below the W8-17 sign.

Section 6F.45 UNEVEN LANES Sign (W8-11)

Guidance:

1 *The UNEVEN LANES (W8-11) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used during operations that create a difference in elevation between adjacent lanes that are open to travel.*

Section 6F.46 STEEL PLATE AHEAD Sign (W8-24)

Option:

1 A STEEL PLATE AHEAD (W8-24) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used to warn road users that the presence of a temporary steel plate(s) might make the road surface uneven and might create slippery conditions during wet weather.

Section 6F.47 NO CENTER LINE Sign (W8-12)

Guidance:

1 *The NO CENTER LINE (W8-12) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used when the work obliterates the center line pavement markings. This sign should be placed at the beginning of the TTC zone and repeated at 2-mile intervals in long TTC zones.*

Support:

2 Section 6F.78 contains information regarding temporary markings.

Section 6F.48 Reverse Curve Signs (W1-4 Series)

Guidance:

1 *In order to give road users advance notice of a lane shift, a Reverse Curve (W1-4, W1-4b, or W1-4c) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be used when a lane (or lanes) is being shifted to the left or right. If the design speed of the curves is 30 mph or less, a Reverse Turn (W1-3) sign should be used.*

Standard:

2 **If a Reverse Curve (or Turn) sign is used, the direction of the reverse curve (or turn) shall be appropriately illustrated. Except as provided in Paragraph 3, the number of lanes illustrated on the sign shall be the same as the number of through lanes available to road users.**

Option:

3 Where two or more lanes are being shifted, a W1-4 (or W1-3) sign with an ALL LANES (W24-1cP) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) may be used instead of a sign that illustrates the number of lanes.

4 Where more than three lanes are being shifted, the Reverse Curve (or Turn) sign may be rectangular.

Section 6F.49 Double Reverse Curve Signs (W24-1 Series)

Option:

1 The Double Reverse Curve (W24-1, W24-1a, or W24-1b) sign (see Figure 6F-4) may be used where the tangent distance between two reverse curves is less than 600 feet, thus making it difficult for a second Reverse Curve (W1-4 series) sign to be placed between the curves. If the design speed of the curves is 30 mph or less, Double Reverse Turn signs should be used.

Standard:

2 **If a Double Reverse Curve (or Turn) sign is used, the direction of the double reverse curve (or turn) shall be appropriately illustrated. Except as provided in Paragraph 3, the number of lanes illustrated on the sign shall be the same as the number of through lanes available to road users.**

Option:

3 Where two or more lanes are being shifted, a W24-1 (or Double Reverse Turn sign showing one lane) sign with an ALL LANES (W24-1cP) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) may be used instead of a sign that illustrates the number of lanes.

4 Where more than three lanes are being shifted, the Double Reverse Curve (or Turn) sign may be rectangular.

Section 6F.50 Other Warning Signs

Option:

1 Advance warning signs may be used by themselves or with other advance warning signs.

2 Besides the warning signs specifically related to TTC zones, several other warning signs in Part 2 may apply in TTC zones.

The Department's W12-1L and W12-1R signs, with black legend on an orange background, may be used to advise road users that traffic is permitted to pass only to the right or left of a roadway feature or obstruction.

Standard:

3 **Except as provided in Section 6F.02, other warning signs that are used in TTC zones shall have black legends and borders on an orange background.**

Section 6F.51 Special Warning Signs

Option:

1 Special warning signs may be used based on engineering judgment.

Guidance:

2 *Special warning signs should comply with the general requirements of color, shape, and alphabet size and series. The sign message should be brief, legible, and clear.*

Section 6F.52 Advisory Speed Plaque (W13-1P)

Option:

1 In combination with a warning sign, an Advisory Speed (W13-1P) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) may be used to indicate a recommended speed through the TTC zone.

Standard:

2 **The Advisory Speed plaque shall not be used in conjunction with any sign other than a warning sign, nor shall it be used alone. When used with orange TTC zone signs, this plaque shall have a black legend and border on an orange background. The sign shall be at least 24 x 24 inches in size when used with a sign that is 36 x 36 inches or larger. Except in emergencies, an Advisory Speed plaque shall not be mounted until the recommended speed is determined by the highway agency.**

Section 6F.53 Supplementary Distance Plaque (W7-3aP)

Option:

1 In combination with a warning sign, a Supplementary Distance (W7-3aP) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) with the legend NEXT XX MILES may be used to indicate the length of highway over which a work activity is being conducted, or over which a condition exists in the TTC zone.

2 In long TTC zones, Supplementary Distance plaques with the legend NEXT XX MILES may be placed in combination with warning signs at regular intervals within the zone to indicate the remaining length of highway over which the TTC work activity or condition exists.

Standard:

3 **The Supplementary Distance plaque with the legend NEXT XX MILES shall not be used in conjunction with any sign other than a warning sign, nor shall it be used alone. When used with orange TTC zone signs, this plaque shall have a black legend and border on an orange background. The sign shall be at least 30 x 24 inches in size when used with a sign that is 36 x 36 inches or larger.**

Guidance:

4 *When used in TTC zones, the Supplementary Distance plaque with the legend NEXT XX MILES should be placed below the initial warning sign designating that, within the approaching zone, a temporary work activity or condition exists.*

Section 6F.54 Motorcycle Plaque (W8-15P)

Option:

1 A Motorcycle (W8-15P) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) may be mounted below a LOOSE GRAVEL (W8-7) sign, a GROOVED PAVEMENT (W8-15) sign, a METAL BRIDGE DECK (W8-16) sign, or a STEEL PLATE AHEAD (W8-24) sign if the warning is intended to be directed primarily to motorcyclists.

Section 6F.55 Guide Signs

Support:

1 Guide signs along highways provide road users with information to help them along their way through the TTC zone. The design of guide signs is presented in Part 2.

Guidance:

2 *The following guide signs should be used in TTC zones as needed:*

- *A. Standard route markings, where temporary route changes are necessary,*
- *B. Directional signs and street name signs, and*
- *C. Special guide signs relating to the condition or work being done.*

Standard:

3 **If additional temporary guide signs are used in TTC zones, they shall have a black legend and border on an orange background.**

Option:

4 Guide signs used in TTC incident management situations may have a black legend and border on a fluorescent pink background.

Guide signs in temporary traffic control zones may be in their normal colors.

5 When directional signs and street name signs are used in conjunction with detour routing, these signs may have a black legend and border on an orange background.

6 When permanent directional signs or permanent street name signs are used in conjunction with detour signing, they may have a white legend on a green background.

Section 6F.56 ROAD WORK NEXT XX MILES Sign (G20-1)

Guidance:

1 *The ROAD WORK NEXT XX MILES (G20-1) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be installed in advance of TTC zones that are more than 2 miles in length.*

Option:

2 The ROAD WORK NEXT XX MILES sign may be mounted on a Type 3 Barricade. The sign may also be used for TTC zones of shorter length.

Standard:

3 **The distance displayed on the ROAD WORK NEXT XX MILES sign shall be stated to the nearest whole mile.**

Section 6F.57 END ROAD WORK Sign (G20-2)

Guidance:

1 *When used, the END ROAD WORK (G20-2) sign (see Figure 6F-4) should be placed near the downstream end of the termination area, as determined by engineering judgment.*

Option:

2 The END ROAD WORK sign may be installed on the back of a warning sign facing the opposite direction of road users or on the back of a Type 3 Barricade.

Section 6F.58 PILOT CAR FOLLOW ME Sign (G20-4)

Standard:

1 **The PILOT CAR FOLLOW ME (G20-4) sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall be mounted in a conspicuous position on the rear of a vehicle used for guiding one-way vehicular traffic through or around a TTC zone (see Section 6C.13).**

Section 6F.59 Detour Signs (M4-8, M4-8a, M4-8b, M4-9, M4-9a, M4-9b, M4-9c, and M4-10)

Standard:

1 **Each detour shall be adequately marked with standard temporary route signs and destination signs.**

Option:

2 Detour signs in TTC incident management situations may have a black legend and border on a fluorescent pink background.

3 The Detour Arrow (M4-10) sign (see Figure 6F-5) may be used where a detour route has been established.

4 The DETOUR (M4-8) sign (see Figure 6F-5) may be mounted at the top of a route sign assembly to mark a temporary route that detours from a highway, bypasses a section closed by a TTC zone, and rejoins the highway beyond the TTC zone.

The M4-9 sign may be used for the Detour Arrow sign in lieu of the M4-10 sign.

Guidance:

5 *The Detour Arrow (M4-10) sign should normally be mounted just below the ROAD CLOSED (R11-2, R11-3a, or R11-4) sign. The Detour Arrow sign should include a horizontal arrow pointed to the right or left as required.*

6 *The DETOUR (M4-9) sign (see Figure 6F-5) should be used for unnumbered highways, for emergency situations, for periods of short durations, or where, over relatively short distances, road users are guided along the detour and back to the desired highway without route signs.*

7 *A Street Name sign should be placed above, or the street name should be incorporated into, a DETOUR (M4-9) sign to indicate the name of the street being detoured.*

Option:

8 The END DETOUR (M4-8a) or END (M4-8b) sign (see Figure 6F-5) may be used to indicate that the detour has ended.

Guidance:

9 *When the END DETOUR sign is used on a numbered highway, the sign should be mounted above a route sign after the downstream end of the detour.*

10 *The Pedestrian/Bicycle Detour (M4-9a) sign (see Figure 6F-5) should be used where a pedestrian/bicycle detour route has been established because of the closing of a pedestrian/bicycle facility to through traffic.*

Standard:

11 **If used, the Pedestrian/Bicycle Detour sign shall have an arrow pointing in the appropriate direction.**

Option:

12 The arrow on a Pedestrian/Bicycle Detour sign may be on the sign face or on a supplemental plaque.

13 The Pedestrian Detour (M4-9b) sign or Bicycle Detour (M4-9c) sign (see Figure 6F-5) may be used where a pedestrian or bicycle detour route (not both) has been established because of the closing of the pedestrian or bicycle facility to through traffic.

Standard:

Fluorescent pink Detour signs shall not be used.

Section 6F.60 Portable Changeable Message Signs

Support:

1 Portable changeable message signs (PCMS) are TTC devices installed for temporary use with the flexibility to display a variety of messages. In most cases, portable changeable message signs follow the same provisions for design and application as those given for changeable message signs in Chapter 2L. The information in this Section describes situations where the provisions for portable changeable message signs differ from those given in Chapter 2L.

2 Portable changeable message signs are used most frequently on high-density urban freeways, but have applications on all types of highways where highway alignment, road user routing problems, or other pertinent conditions require advance warning and information.

3 Portable changeable message signs have a wide variety of applications in TTC zones including: roadway, lane, or ramp closures; incident management; width restriction information; speed control or reductions; advisories on work scheduling; road user management and diversion; warning of adverse conditions or special events; and other operational control.

4 The primary purpose of portable changeable message signs in TTC zones is to advise the road user of unexpected situations. Portable changeable message signs are particularly useful as they are capable of:

A. Conveying complex messages,
B. Displaying real time information about conditions ahead, and
C. Providing information to assist road users in making decisions prior to the point where actions must be taken.

5 Some typical applications include the following:

A. Where the speed of vehicular traffic is expected to drop substantially;
B. Where significant queuing and delays are expected;
C. Where adverse environmental conditions are present;
D. Where there are changes in alignment or surface conditions;
E. Where advance notice of ramp, lane, or roadway closures is needed;
F. Where crash or incident management is needed; and/or
G. Where changes in the road user pattern occur.

Guidance:

6 *The components of a portable changeable message sign should include: a message sign, control systems, a power source, and mounting and transporting equipment. The front face of the sign should be covered with a protective material.*

Standard:

7 **Portable changeable message signs shall comply with the applicable design and application principles established in Chapter 2A. Portable changeable message signs shall display only traffic operational, regulatory, warning, and guidance information, and shall not be used for advertising messages.**

Support:

8 Section 2L.02 contains information regarding overly simplistic or vague messages that is also applicable to portable changeable message signs.

Standard:

9 **The colors used for legends on portable changeable message signs shall comply with those shown in Table 2A-5.**

Support:

10 Section 2L.04 contains information regarding the luminance, luminance contrast, and contrast orientation that is also applicable to portable changeable message signs.

Guidance:

11 *Portable changeable message signs should be visible from 1/2 mile under both day and night conditions.*

Support:

12 Section 2B.13 contains information regarding the design of portable changeable message signs that are used to display speed limits that change based on operational conditions, or are used to display the speed at which approaching drivers are traveling.

Guidance:

13 *A portable changeable message sign should be limited to three lines of eight characters per line or should consist of a full matrix display.*

14 *Except as provided in Paragraph 15, the letter height used for portable changeable message sign messages should be a minimum of 18 inches.*

Option:

15 For portable changeable message signs mounted on service patrol trucks or other incident response vehicles, a letter height as short as 10 inches may be used. Shorter letter sizes may also be used on a portable changeable message sign used on low speed facilities provided that the message is legible from at least 650 feet.

16 The portable changeable message sign may vary in size.

Guidance:

17 *Messages on a portable changeable message sign should consist of no more than two phases, and a phase should consist of no more than three lines of text. Each phase should be capable of being understood by itself, regardless of the order in which it is read. Messages should be centered within each line of legend. If more than one portable changeable message sign is simultaneously legible to road users, then only one of the signs should display a sequential message at any given time.*

Support:

18 Road users have difficulties in reading messages displayed in more than two phases on a typical three-line portable changeable message sign.

Standard:

19 **Techniques of message display such as animation, rapid flashing, dissolving, exploding, scrolling, travelling horizontally or vertically across the face of the sign, or other dynamic elements shall not be used.**

Guidance:

20 *When a message is divided into two phases, the display time for each phase should be at least 2 seconds, and the sum of the display times for both of the phases should be a maximum of 8 seconds.*

21 *All messages should be designed with consideration given to the principles provided in this Section and also taking into account the following:*

- *A. The message should be as brief as possible and should contain three thoughts (with each thought preferably shown on its own line) that convey:*
  - *1. The problem or situation that the road user will encounter ahead,*
  - *2. The location of or distance to the problem or situation, and*

3. *The recommended driver action.*

B. *If more than two phases are needed to display a message, additional portable changeable message signs should be used. When multiple portable changeable message signs are needed, they should be placed on the same side of the roadway and they should be separated from each other by a distance of at least 1,000 feet on freeways and expressways, and by a distance of at least 500 feet on other types of highways.*

Standard:

22 **When the word messages shown in Tables 1A-1 or 1A-2 need to be abbreviated on a portable changeable message sign, the provisions described in Section 1A.15 shall be followed.**

23 **In order to maintain legibility, portable changeable message signs shall automatically adjust their brightness under varying light conditions.**

24 **The control system shall include a display screen upon which messages can be reviewed before being displayed on the message sign. The control system shall be capable of maintaining memory when power is unavailable.**

25 **Portable changeable message signs shall be equipped with a power source and a battery back-up to provide continuous operation when failure of the primary power source occurs.**

26 **The mounting of portable changeable message signs on a trailer, a large truck, or a service patrol truck shall be such that the bottom of the message sign shall be a minimum of 7 feet above the roadway in urban areas and 5 feet above the roadway in rural areas when it is in the operating mode.**

Guidance:

27 *Portable changeable message signs should be used as a supplement to and not as a substitute for conventional signs and pavement markings.*

28 *When portable changeable message signs are used for route diversion, they should be placed far enough in advance of the diversion to allow road users ample opportunity to perform necessary lane changes, to adjust their speed, or to exit the affected highway.*

29 *Portable changeable message signs should be sited and aligned to provide maximum legibility and to allow time for road users to respond appropriately to the portable changeable Message sign message.*

30 *Portable changeable message signs should be placed off the shoulder of the roadway and behind a traffic barrier, if practical. Where a traffic barrier is not available to shield the portable changeable message sign, it should be placed off the shoulder and outside of the clear zone. If a portable changeable message sign has to be placed on the shoulder of the roadway or within the clear zone, it should be delineated with retroreflective TTC devices.*

31 *When portable changeable message signs are used in TTC zones, they should display only TTC messages.*

32 *When portable changeable message signs are not being used to display TTC messages, they should be relocated such that they are outside of the clear zone or shielded behind a traffic barrier and turned away from traffic. If relocation or shielding is not practical, they should be delineated with retroreflective TTC devices.*

33 *Portable changeable message sign trailers should be delineated on a permanent basis by affixing retroreflective material, known as conspicuity material, in a continuous line on the face of the trailer as seen by oncoming road users.*

Section 6F.61 Arrow Boards

Standard:

1 **An arrow board shall be a sign with a matrix of elements capable of either flashing or sequential displays. This sign shall provide additional warning and directional information to assist in merging and controlling road users through or around a TTC zone.**

Guidance:

2 *An arrow board in the arrow or chevron mode should be used to advise approaching traffic of a lane closure along major multi-lane roadways in situations involving heavy traffic volumes, high speeds, and/or limited sight distances, or at other locations and under other conditions where road users are less likely to expect such lane closures.*

3 *If used, an arrow board should be used in combination with appropriate signs, channelizing devices, or other TTC devices.*

4 *An arrow board should be placed on the shoulder of the roadway or, if practical, farther from the traveled lane. It should be delineated with retroreflective TTC devices. When an arrow board is not being used, it should be*

removed; if not removed, it should be shielded; or if the previous two options are not feasible, it should be delineated with retroreflective TTC devices.

Standard:

5 **Arrow boards shall meet the minimum size, legibility distance, number of elements, and other specifications shown in Figure 6F-6.**

Support:

6 Type A arrow boards are appropriate for use on low-speed urban streets. Type B arrow boards are appropriate for intermediate-speed facilities and for maintenance or mobile operations on high-speed roadways. Type C arrow boards are intended to be used on high-speed, high-volume motor vehicle traffic control projects. Type D arrow boards are intended for use on vehicles authorized by the State or local agency.

Standard:

7 **Type A, B, and C arrow boards shall have solid rectangular appearances. A Type D arrow board shall conform to the shape of the arrow.**

8 **All arrow boards shall be finished in non-reflective black. The arrow board shall be mounted on a vehicle, a trailer, or other suitable support.**

Guidance:

9 *The minimum mounting height, measured vertically from the bottom of the board to the roadway below it or to the elevation of the near edge of the roadway, of an arrow board should be 7 feet , except on vehicle-mounted arrow boards, which should be as high as practical.*

10 *A vehicle-mounted arrow board should be provided with remote controls.*

Standard:

11 **Arrow board elements shall be capable of at least a 50 percent dimming from full brilliance. The dimmed mode shall be used for nighttime operation of arrow boards.**

Guidance:

12 *Full brilliance should be used for daytime operation of arrow boards.*

Standard:

13 **The arrow board shall have suitable elements capable of the various operating modes. The color presented by the elements shall be yellow.**

Guidance:

14 *If an arrow board consisting of a bulb matrix is used, the elements should be recess-mounted or equipped with an upper hood of not less than 180 degrees.*

Figure 6F-6. Advance Warning Arrow Board Display Specifications

Operating Mode	Display (Type C arrow board illustrated)
1. At least one of the three following modes shall be provided:	(right arrow shown; left is similar)
Flashing Arrow	 Merge Right
Sequential Arrow	 Merge Right
Sequential Chevron	 Merge Right
2. The following mode shall be provided: Flashing Double Arrow	 Merge Right or Left
3. At least one of the following modes shall be provided: Flashing Caution or Alternating Diamond Caution	 Flashing Caution or Flashing Caution or Alternating Diamond Caution

Arrow Board Type	Minimum Size	Minimum Legibility Distance	Minimum Number of Elements
A	48 x 24 inches	1/2 mile	12
B	60 x 30 inches	3/4 mile	13
C	96 x 48 inches	1 mile	15
D	None*	1/2 mile	12

*Length of arrow equals 48 inches, width of arrowhead equals 24 inches

Standard:

15 **The minimum element on-time shall be 50 percent for the flashing mode, with equal intervals of 25 percent for each sequential phase. The flashing rate shall be not less than 25 or more than 40 flashes per minute.**

16 **An arrow board shall have the following three mode selections:**

- **A. A Flashing Arrow, Sequential Arrow, or Sequential Chevron mode;**
- **B. A flashing Double Arrow mode; and**
- **C. A flashing Caution or Alternating Diamond mode.**

17 **An arrow board in the arrow or chevron mode shall be used only for stationary or moving lane closures on multi-lane roadways.**

18 **For shoulder work, blocking the shoulder, for roadside work near the shoulder, or for temporarily closing one lane on a two-lane, two-way roadway, an arrow board shall be used only in the caution mode.**

Guidance:

19 *For a stationary lane closure, the arrow board should be located on the shoulder at the beginning of the merging taper.*

20 *Where the shoulder is narrow, the arrow board should be located in the closed lane.*

Standard:

21 **When arrow boards are used to close multiple lanes, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**

Guidance:

22 *When arrow boards are used to close multiple lanes, if the first arrow board is placed on the shoulder, the second arrow board should be placed in the first closed lane at the upstream end of the second merging taper (see Figure 6H-37). When the first arrow board is placed in the first closed lane, the second arrow board should be placed in the second closed lane at the downstream end of the second merging taper.*

23 *For mobile operations where a lane is closed, the arrow board should be located to provide adequate separation from the work operation to allow for appropriate reaction by approaching drivers.*

Standard:

24 **A vehicle displaying an arrow board shall be equipped with high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**

25 **Arrow boards shall only be used to indicate a lane closure. Arrow boards shall not be used to indicate a lane shift.**

Option:

26 A portable changeable message sign may be used to simulate an arrow board display.

Section 6F.62 High-Level Warning Devices (Flag Trees)

Option:

1 A high-level warning device (flag tree) may supplement other TTC devices in TTC zones.

Support:

2 A high-level warning device is designed to be seen over the top of typical passenger cars. A typical high-level warning device is shown in Figure 6F-2.

Standard:

3 **A high-level warning device shall consist of a minimum of two flags with or without a Type B high-intensity flashing warning light. The distance from the roadway to the bottom of the lens of the light and to the lowest point of the flag material shall be not less than 8 feet. The flag shall be 16 inches square or larger and shall be orange or fluorescent red-orange in color.**

Option:

4 An appropriate warning sign may be mounted below the flags.

Support:

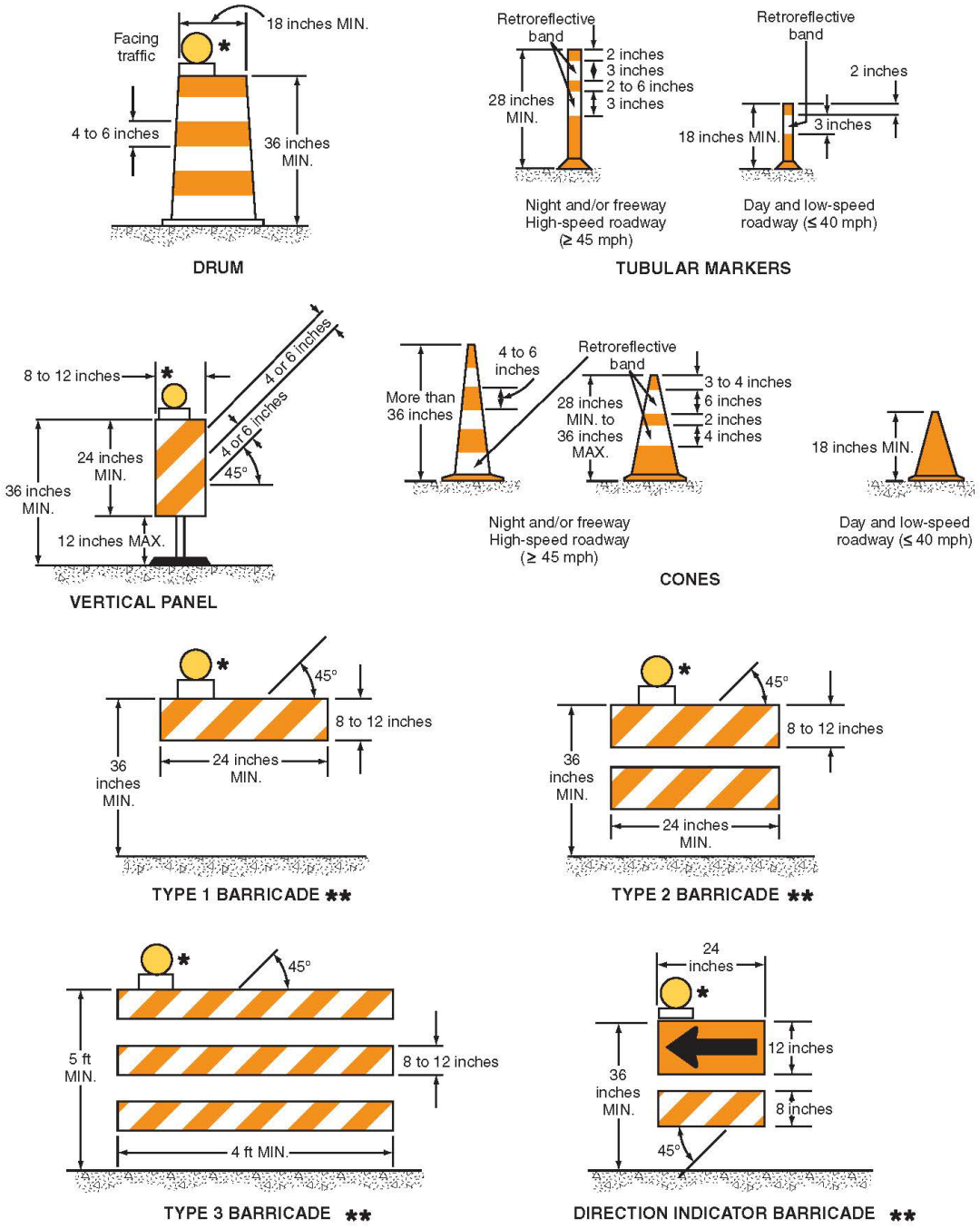
5 High-level warning devices are most commonly used in high-density road user situations to warn road users of short-term operations.

Section 6F.63 Channelizing Devices

Standard:

1 **Designs of various channelizing devices shall be as shown in Figure 6F–7. All channelizing devices shall be crashworthy.**

Figure 6F-7. Channelizing Devices



* Warning lights (optional)
** Rail stripe widths shall be 6 inches, except that 4-inch wide stripes may be used if rail lengths are less than 36 inches. The sides of barricades facing traffic shall have retroreflective rail faces.

Support:

2 The function of channelizing devices is to warn road users of conditions created by work activities in or near the roadway and to guide road users. Channelizing devices include cones, tubular markers, vertical panels, drums, barricades, and longitudinal channelizing devices.

3 Channelizing devices provide for smooth and gradual vehicular traffic flow from one lane to another, onto a bypass or detour, or into a narrower traveled way. They are also used to channelize vehicular traffic away from the work space, pavement drop-offs, pedestrian or shared-use paths, or opposing directions of vehicular traffic.

Standard:

4 **Devices used to channelize pedestrians shall be detectable to users of long canes and visible to persons having low vision.**

5 **Where channelizing devices are used to channelize pedestrians, there shall be continuous detectable bottom and top surfaces to be detectable to users of long canes. The bottom of the bottom surface shall be no higher than 2 inches above the ground. The top of the top surface shall be no lower than 32 inches above the ground.**

Option:

6 A gap not exceeding 2 inches between the bottom rail and the ground surface may be used to facilitate drainage.

Guidance:

7 *Where multiple channelizing devices are aligned to form a continuous pedestrian channelizer, connection points should be smooth to optimize long-cane and hand trailing.*

8 *The spacing between cones, tubular markers, vertical panels, drums, and barricades should not exceed a distance in feet equal to 1.0 times the speed limit in mph when used for taper channelization, and a distance in feet equal to 2.0 times the speed limit in mph when used for tangent channelization.*

9 *When channelizing devices have the potential of leading vehicular traffic out of the intended vehicular traffic space as shown in Figure 6H-39, the channelizing devices should be extended a distance in feet of 2.0 times the speed limit in mph beyond the downstream end of the transition area.*

Option:

10 Warning lights (see Section 6F.83) may be added to channelizing devices in areas with frequent fog, snow, or severe roadway curvature, or where visual distractions are present.

Option:
MUTCD guidance on device spacing says the spacing should not exceed a distance in feet equal to 1.0 times the speed limit in mph when used for taper channelization, and a distance in feet equal to 2.0 times the speed limit in mph when used for tangent channelization. To correspond with the pavement marking cycle length (length of one broken line segment plus one gap), or multiples of the pavement marking cycle length, the device spacing may be modified to a maximum of 1.25 times the speed limit in mph for taper channelization, and 2.5 times the speed limit in mph for tangent channelization.
Guidance:
No fewer than five devices should be used for a one-lane, two-way taper.

Standard:

11 **Warning lights shall flash when placed on channelizing devices used alone or in a cluster to warn of a condition. Except for the sequential flashing warning lights discussed in Paragraphs 12 and 13, warning lights placed on channelizing devices used in a series to channelize road users shall be steady-burn.**

Option:

12 A series of sequential flashing warning lights may be placed on channelizing devices that form a merging taper in order to increase driver detection and recognition of the merging taper.

Standard:

13 **When used, the successive flashing of the sequential warning lights shall occur from the upstream end of the merging taper to the downstream end of the merging taper in order to identify the desired vehicle path. Each warning light in the sequence shall be flashed at a rate of not less than 55 nor more than 75 times per minute.**

14 **The retroreflective material used on channelizing devices shall have a smooth, sealed outer surface that will display a similar color day or night.**

Option:

15 The name and telephone number of the highway agency, contractor, or supplier may be displayed on the non-retroreflective surface of all types of channelizing devices.

Standard:

16 **The letters and numbers of the name and telephone number shall be non-retroreflective and not over 2 inches in height.**

Guidance:

17 *Particular attention should be given to maintaining the channelizing devices to keep them clean, visible, and properly positioned at all times.*

Standard:

18 **Devices that are damaged or have lost a significant amount of their retroreflectivity and effectiveness shall be replaced.**

Section 6F.64 Cones

Standard:

1 **Cones (see Figure 6F-7) shall be predominantly orange and shall be made of a material that can be struck without causing damage to the impacting vehicle. For daytime and low-speed roadways, cones shall be not less than 18 inches in height. When cones are used on freeways and other high-speed highways or at night on all highways, or when more conspicuous guidance is needed, cones shall be a minimum of 28 inches in height.**

2 **For nighttime use, cones shall be retroreflectorized or equipped with lighting devices for maximum visibility. Retroreflectorization of cones that are 28 to 36 inches in height shall be provided by a 6-inch wide white band located 3 to 4 inches from the top of the cone and an additional 4-inch wide white band located approximately 2 inches below the 6-inch band.**

3 **Retroreflectorization of cones that are more than 36 inches in height shall be provided by horizontal, circumferential, alternating orange and white retroreflective stripes that are 4 to 6 inches wide. Each cone shall have a minimum of two orange and two white stripes with the top stripe being orange. Any non-retroreflective spaces between the orange and white stripes shall not exceed 3 inches in width.**

Option:

4 Traffic cones may be used to channelize road users, divide opposing vehicular traffic lanes, divide lanes when two or more lanes are kept open in the same direction, and delineate short duration maintenance and utility work.

Guidance:

5 *Steps should be taken to minimize the possibility of cones being blown over or displaced by wind or moving vehicular traffic.*

Option:

6 Cones may be doubled up to increase their weight.

Support:

7 Some cones are constructed with bases that can be filled with ballast. Others have specially weighted bases, or weight such as sandbag rings that can be dropped over the cones and onto the base to provide added stability.

Guidance:

8 *Ballast should be kept to the minimum amount needed.*

Section 6F.65 Tubular Markers

Standard:

1 **Tubular markers (see Figure 6F-7) shall be predominantly orange and shall be not less than 18 inches high and 2 inches wide facing road users. They shall be made of a material that can be struck without causing damage to the impacting vehicle.**

2 **Tubular markers shall be a minimum of 28 inches in height when they are used on freeways and other high-speed highways, on all highways during nighttime, or whenever more conspicuous guidance is needed.**

3 **For nighttime use, tubular markers shall be retroreflectorized. Retroreflectorization of tubular markers that have a height of less than 42 inches shall be provided by two 3-inch wide white bands placed a maximum of 2 inches from the top with a maximum of 6 inches between the bands. Retroreflectorization of tubular markers that have a height of 42 inches or more shall be provided by four 4- to 6-inch wide alternating orange and white stripes with the top stripe being orange.**

Guidance:

4 *Tubular markers have less visible area than other devices and should be used only where space restrictions do not allow for the use of other more visible devices.*

5 *Tubular markers should be stabilized by affixing them to the pavement, by using weighted bases, or weights such as sandbag rings that can be dropped over the tubular markers and onto the base to provide added stability. Ballast should be kept to the minimum amount needed.*

Option:

6 Tubular markers may be used effectively to divide opposing lanes of road users, divide vehicular traffic lanes when two or more lanes of moving vehicular traffic are kept open in the same direction, and to delineate the edge of a pavement drop off where space limitations do not allow the use of larger devices.

Standard:

7 **A tubular marker shall be attached to the pavement to display the minimum 2-inch width to the approaching road users.**

Section 6F.66 Vertical Panels

Standard:

1 **Vertical panels (see Figure 6F-7) shall have retroreflective striped material that is 8 to 12 inches in width and at least 24 inches in height. They shall have alternating diagonal orange and white retroreflective stripes sloping downward at an angle of 45 degrees in the direction vehicular traffic is to pass.**

2 **Where the height of the retroreflective material on the vertical panel is 36 inches or more, a stripe width of 6 inches shall be used.**

Option:

3 Where the height of the retroreflective material on the vertical panel is less than 36 inches, a stripe width of 4 inches may be used.

4 Where space is limited, vertical panels may be used to channelize vehicular traffic, divide opposing lanes, or replace barricades.

Section 6F.67 Drums

Standard:

1 **Drums (see Figure 6F-7) used for road user warning or channelization shall be constructed of lightweight, deformable materials. They shall be a minimum of 36 inches in height and have at least an 18-inch minimum width regardless of orientation. Metal drums shall not be used. The markings on drums shall be horizontal, circumferential, alternating orange and white retroreflective stripes 4 to 6 inches wide. Each drum shall have a minimum of two orange and two white stripes with the top stripe being orange. Any non-retroreflectorized spaces between the horizontal orange and white stripes shall not exceed 3 inches wide. Drums shall have closed tops that will not allow collection of construction debris or other debris.**

Support:

2 Drums are highly visible, have good target value, give the appearance of being formidable obstacles and, therefore, command the respect of road users. They are portable enough to be shifted from place to place within a TTC zone in order to accommodate changing conditions, but are generally used in situations where they will remain in place for a prolonged period of time.

Option:

3 Although drums are most commonly used to channelize or delineate road user flow, they may also be used alone or in groups to mark specific locations.

Guidance:

4 *Drums should not be weighted with sand, water, or any material to the extent that would make them hazardous to road users or workers when struck. Drums used in regions susceptible to freezing should have drain holes in the bottom so that water will not accumulate and freeze causing a hazard if struck by a road user.*

Standard:

5 **Ballast shall not be placed on the top of a drum.**

Section 6F.68 Type 1, 2, or 3 Barricades

Support:

1 A barricade is a portable or fixed device having from one to three rails with appropriate markings and is used to control road users by closing, restricting, or delineating all or a portion of the right-of-way.

2 As shown in Figure 6F-7, barricades are classified as Type 1, Type 2, or Type 3.

Standard:

3 **Stripes on barricade rails shall be alternating orange and white retroreflective stripes sloping downward at an angle of 45 degrees in the direction road users are to pass. Except as provided in Paragraph 4, the stripes shall be 6 inches wide.**

Option:

4 When rail lengths are less than 36 inches, 4-inch wide stripes may be used.

Standard:

5 **The minimum length for Type 1 and Type 2 Barricades shall be 24 inches, and the minimum length for Type 3 Barricades shall be 48 inches. Each barricade rail shall be 8 to 12 inches wide. Barricades used on freeways, expressways, and other high-speed roadways shall have a minimum of 270 square inches of retroreflective area facing road users.**

Guidance:

6 *Where barricades extend entirely across a roadway, the stripes should slope downward in the direction toward which road users must turn.*

7 *Where both right and left turns are provided, the barricade stripes should slope downward in both directions from the center of the barricade or barricades.*

8 *Where no turns are intended, the stripes should be positioned to slope downward toward the center of the barricade or barricades.*

9 *Barricade rails should be supported in a manner that will allow them to be seen by the road user, and in a manner that provides a stable support that is not easily blown over or displaced.*

10 *The width of the existing pedestrian facility should be provided for the temporary facility if practical. Traffic control devices and other construction materials and features should not intrude into the usable width of the sidewalk, temporary pathway, or other pedestrian facility. When it is not possible to maintain a minimum width of 60 inches throughout the entire length of the pedestrian pathway, a 60 x 60-inch passing space should be provided at least every 200 feet to allow individuals in wheelchairs to pass.*

11 *Barricade rail supports should not project into pedestrian circulation routes more than 4 inches from the support between 27 and 80 inches from the surface as described in Section 4.4.1 of the "Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)" (see Section 1A.11).*

Option:

12 For Type 1 Barricades, the support may include other unstriped horizontal rails necessary to provide stability.

Guidance:

13 *On high-speed expressways or in other situations where barricades may be susceptible to overturning in the wind, ballasting should be used.*

Option:

14 Sandbags may be placed on the lower parts of the frame or the stays of barricades to provide the required ballast.

Support:

15 Type 1 or Type 2 Barricades are intended for use in situations where road user flow is maintained through the TTC zone.

Option:

16 Barricades may be used alone or in groups to mark a specific condition or they may be used in a series for channelizing road users.

17 Type 1 Barricades may be used on conventional roads or urban streets.

Guidance:

18 *Type 2 or Type 3 Barricades should be used on freeways and expressways or other high-speed roadways. Type 3 Barricades should be used to close or partially close a road.*

Option:

19 Type 3 Barricades used at a road closure may be placed completely across a roadway or from curb to curb.

Guidance:

20 *Where provision is made for access of authorized equipment and vehicles, the responsibility for Type 3 Barricades should be assigned to a person who will provide proper closure at the end of each work day.*

Support:

21 When a highway is legally closed but access must still be allowed for local road users, barricades usually are not extended completely across the roadway.

Standard:

22 **A sign shall be installed with the appropriate legend concerning permissible use by local road users (see Section 6F.09). Adequate visibility of the barricades from both directions shall be provided.**

Option:

23 Signs may be installed on barricades (see Section 6F.03).

Section 6F.69 Direction Indicator Barricades

Standard:

1 **The Direction Indicator Barricade (see Figure 6F-7) shall consist of a One-Direction Large Arrow (W1-6) sign mounted above a diagonal striped, horizontally aligned, retroreflective rail.**

2 **The One-Direction Large Arrow (W1-6) sign shall be black on an orange background. The stripes on the bottom rail shall be alternating orange and white retroreflective stripes sloping downward at an angle of 45 degrees in the direction road users are to pass. The stripes shall be 4 inches wide. The One-Direction Large Arrow (W1-6) sign shall be 24 x 12 inches. The bottom rail shall have a length of 24 inches and a height of 8 inches.**

Option:

3 The Direction Indicator Barricade may be used in tapers, transitions, and other areas where specific directional guidance to drivers is necessary.

Guidance:

4 *If used, Direction Indicator Barricades should be used in series to direct the driver through the transition and into the intended travel lane.*

Section 6F.70 Temporary Traffic Barriers as Channelizing Devices

Support:

1 Temporary traffic barriers are not TTC devices in themselves; however, when placed in a position identical to a line of channelizing devices and marked and/or equipped with appropriate channelization features to provide guidance and warning both day and night, they serve as TTC devices.

Standard:

2 **Temporary traffic barriers serving as TTC devices shall comply with requirements for such devices as set forth throughout Part 6.**

3 **Temporary traffic barriers (see Section 6F.85) shall not be used solely to channelize road users, but also to protect the work space. If used to channelize vehicular traffic, the temporary traffic barrier shall be supplemented with delineation, pavement markings, or channelizing devices for improved daytime and nighttime visibility.**

Guidance:

4 *Temporary traffic barriers should not be used for a merging taper except in low-speed urban areas.*

5 *When it is necessary to use a temporary traffic barrier for a merging taper in low-speed urban areas or for a constricted/restricted TTC zone, the taper length should be designed to optimize road user operations considering the available geometric conditions.*

Standard:

6 **When it is necessary to use a temporary traffic barrier for a merging taper in low-speed urban areas or for a constricted/restricted TTC zone, the taper shall be delineated.**

Guidance:

7 *When used for channelization, temporary traffic barriers should be of a light color for increased visibility.*

Section 6F.71 Longitudinal Channelizing Devices

Support:

1 Longitudinal channelizing devices are lightweight, deformable devices that are highly visible, have good target value, and can be connected together.

Standard:

2 **If used singly as Type 1, 2, or 3 barricades, longitudinal channelizing devices shall comply with the general size, color, stripe pattern, retroreflectivity, and placement characteristics established for the devices described in this Chapter.**

Guidance:

3 *If used to channelize vehicular traffic at night, longitudinal channelizing devices should be supplemented with retroreflective material or delineation for improved nighttime visibility.*

Option:

4 Longitudinal channelizing devices may be used instead of a line of cones, drums, or barricades.

5 Longitudinal channelizing devices may be hollow and filled with water as a ballast.

6 Longitudinal channelizing devices may be used for pedestrian traffic control.

Standard:

7 **If used for pedestrian traffic control, longitudinal channelizing devices shall be interlocked to delineate or channelize flow. The interlocking devices shall not have gaps that allow pedestrians to stray from the channelizing path.**

Guidance:

8 *Longitudinal channelizing devices have not met the crashworthy requirements for temporary traffic barriers and should not be used to shield obstacles or provide positive protection for pedestrians or workers.*

Section 6F.72 Temporary Lane Separators

Option:

1 Temporary lane separators may be used to channelize road users, to divide opposing vehicular traffic lanes, to divide lanes when two or more lanes are open in the same direction, and to provide continuous pedestrian channelization.

Standard:

2 **Temporary lane separators shall be crashworthy. Temporary lane separators shall have a maximum height of 4 inches and a maximum width of 1 foot, and shall have sloping sides in order to facilitate crossover by emergency vehicles.**

Option:

3 Temporary lane separators may be supplemented with any of the approved channelizing devices contained in this Chapter, such as tubular markers, vertical panels, and opposing traffic lane dividers.

Standard:

4 **If appropriate channelizing devices are used to supplement a temporary lane separator, the channelizing devices shall be retroreflectorized to provide nighttime visibility. If channelizing devices are not used, the temporary lane separator shall contain retroreflectorization to enhance its visibility.**

Guidance:

5 *A temporary lane separator should be stabilized by affixing it to the pavement in a manner suitable to its design, while allowing the unit to be shifted from place to place within the TTC zone in order to accommodate changing conditions.*

Standard:

6 **At pedestrian crossing locations, temporary lane separators shall have an opening or be shortened to provide a pathway that is at least 60 inches wide for crossing pedestrians.**

Section 6F.73 Other Channelizing Devices

Option:

1 Channelizing devices other than those described in this Chapter may be used in special situations based on an engineering study.

Guidance:

2 *Other channelizing devices should comply with the general size, color, stripe pattern, retroreflection, and placement characteristics established for the devices described in this Chapter.*

Section 6F.74 Detectable Edging for Pedestrians

Support:

1 Individual channelizing devices, tape or rope used to connect individual devices, other discontinuous barriers and devices, and pavement markings are not detectable by persons with visual disabilities and are incapable of providing detectable path guidance on temporary or realigned sidewalks or other pedestrian facilities.

Guidance:

2 *When it is determined that a facility should be accessible to and detectable by pedestrians with visual disabilities, a continuously detectable edging should be provided throughout the length of the facility such that it can be followed by pedestrians using long canes for guidance. This edging should protrude at least 6 inches above the surface of the sidewalk or pathway, with the bottom of the edging a maximum of 2 inches above the surface. This edging should be continuous throughout the length of the facility except for gaps at locations where pedestrians or vehicles will be turning or crossing. This edging should consist of a prefabricated or formed-in-place curbing or other continuous device that is placed along the edge of the sidewalk or walkway. This edging should be firmly attached to the ground or to other devices. Adjacent sections of this edging should be interconnected such that the edging is not displaced by pedestrian or vehicular traffic or work operations, and such that it does not constitute a hazard to pedestrians, workers, or other road users.*

Support:

3 Examples of detectable edging for pedestrians include:

A. Prefabricated lightweight sections of plastic, metal, or other suitable materials that are interconnected and fixed in place to form a continuous edge.
B. Prefabricated lightweight sections of plastic, metal, or other suitable materials that are interconnected, fixed in place, and placed at ground level to provide a continuous connection between channelizing devices located at intervals along the edge of the sidewalk or walkway.
C. Sections of lumber interconnected and fixed in place to form a continuous edge.
D. Formed-in-place asphalt or concrete curb.
E. Prefabricated concrete curb sections that are interconnected and fixed in place to form a continuous edge.
F. Continuous temporary traffic barrier or longitudinal channelizing barricades placed along the edge of the sidewalk or walkway that provides a pedestrian edging at ground level.
G. Chain link or other fencing equipped with a continuous bottom rail.

Guidance:

4 *Detectable pedestrian edging should be orange, white, or yellow and should match the color of the adjacent channelizing devices or traffic control devices, if any are present.*

Section 6F.75 Temporary Raised Islands

Standard:

1 **Temporary raised islands shall be used only in combination with pavement striping and other suitable channelizing devices.**

Option:

2 A temporary raised island may be used to separate vehicular traffic flows in two-lane, two-way operations on roadways having a vehicular traffic volume range of 4,000 to 15,000 average daily traffic (ADT) and on freeways having a vehicular traffic volume range of 22,000 ADT to 60,000 ADT.

3 Temporary raised islands also may be used in other than two-lane, two-way operations where physical separation of vehicular traffic from the TTC zone is not required.

Guidance:

4 *Temporary raised islands should have the basic dimensions of 4 inches high by at least 12 inches wide and have rounded or chamfered corners.*

5 *The temporary raised islands should not be designed in such a manner that they would cause a motorist to lose control of the vehicle if the vehicle inadvertently strikes the temporary raised island. If struck, pieces of the island should not be dislodged to the extent that they could penetrate the occupant compartment or involve other vehicles.*

Standard:

6 **At pedestrian crossing locations, temporary raised islands shall have an opening or be shortened to provide at least a 60-inch wide pathway for the crossing pedestrian.**

Section 6F.76 Opposing Traffic Lane Divider and Sign (W6-4)

Support:

1 Opposing traffic lane dividers are delineation devices used as center lane dividers to separate opposing vehicular traffic on a two-lane, two-way operation.

Standard:

2 **Opposing traffic lane dividers shall not be placed across pedestrian crossings.**

3 **The Opposing Traffic Lane Divider (W6-4) sign (see Figure 6F-4) shall be an upright, retroreflective orange-colored sign placed on a flexible support and sized at least 12 inches wide by 18 inches high.**

Opposing Traffic Lane Divider (W6-4) signs shall not be used on roadways with speed limits of 45 mph or greater.

Section 6F.77 Pavement Markings

Support:

1 Pavement markings are installed or existing markings are maintained or enhanced in TTC zones to provide road users with a clearly defined path for travel through the TTC zone in day, night, and twilight periods under both wet and dry pavement conditions.

Guidance:

2 *The work should be planned and staged to provide for the placement and removal of the pavement markings in a way that minimizes the disruption to traffic flow approaching and through the TTC zone during the placement and removal process.*

Standard:

3 **Existing pavement markings shall be maintained in all long-term stationary (see Section 6G.02) TTC zones in accordance with Chapters 3A and 3B, except as otherwise provided for temporary pavement markings in Section 6F.78. Pavement markings shall match the alignment of the markings in place at both ends of the TTC zone. Pavement markings shall be placed along the entire length of any paved detour or temporary roadway prior to the detour or roadway being opened to road users.**

4 **For long-term stationary operations, pavement markings in the temporary traveled way that are no longer applicable shall be removed or obliterated as soon as practical. Pavement marking obliteration shall remove the non-applicable pavement marking material, and the obliteration method shall minimize pavement scarring. Painting over existing pavement markings with black paint or spraying with asphalt shall not be accepted as a substitute for removal or obliteration.**

Option:

5 Removable, non-reflective, preformed tape that is approximately the same color as the pavement surface may be used where markings need to be covered temporarily.

Section 6F.78 Temporary Markings

Support:

1 Temporary markings are those pavement markings or devices that are placed within TTC zones to provide road users with a clearly defined path of travel through the TTC zone when the permanent markings are either removed or obliterated during the work activities. Temporary markings are typically needed during the reconstruction of a road while it is open to traffic, such as overlays or surface treatments or where lanes are temporarily shifted on pavement that is to remain in place.

Guidance:

2 *Unless justified based on engineering judgment, temporary pavement markings should not remain in place for more than 14 days after the application of the pavement surface treatment or the construction of the final pavement surface on new roadways or over existing pavements.*

3 *The temporary use of edge lines, channelizing lines, lane-reduction transitions, gore markings, and other longitudinal markings, and the various non-longitudinal markings (such as stop lines, railroad crossings, crosswalks, words, symbols, or arrows) should be in accordance with the State's or highway agency's policy.*

Standard:

4 **Warning signs, channelizing devices, and delineation shall be used to indicate required road user paths in TTC zones where it is not possible to provide a clear path by pavement markings.**

5 **Except as otherwise provided in this Section, all temporary pavement markings for no-passing zones shall comply with the requirements of Chapters 3A and 3B. All temporary broken-line pavement markings shall use the same cycle length as permanent markings and shall have line segments that are at least 2 feet long.**

Guidance:

6 *All pavement markings and devices used to delineate road user paths should be reviewed during daytime and nighttime periods.*

Option:

7 Half-cycle lengths with a minimum of 2-foot stripes may be used on roadways with severe curvature (see Section 3A.06) for broken line center lines in passing zones and for lane lines.

8 For temporary situations of 14 days or less, for a two- or three-lane road, no-passing zones may be identified by using DO NOT PASS (R4-1), PASS WITH CARE (R4-2), and NO PASSING ZONE (W14-3) signs (see Sections 2B.28, 2B.29, and 2C.45) rather than pavement markings. Also, DO NOT PASS, PASS WITH CARE, and NO PASSING ZONE signs may be used instead of pavement markings on roads with low volumes for longer periods in accordance with the State's or highway agency's policy.

Guidance:

9 *If used, the DO NOT PASS, PASS WITH CARE, and NO PASSING ZONE signs should be placed in accordance with Sections 2B.28, 2B.29, and 2C.45.*

10 *If used, the NO CENTER LINE sign should be placed in accordance with Section 6F.47.*

Section 6F.79 Temporary Raised Pavement Markers

Option:

1 Retroreflective or internally illuminated raised pavement markers, or non-retroreflective raised pavement markers supplemented by retroreflective or internally illuminated markers, may be substituted for markings of other types in TTC zones.

Standard:

2 **If used, the color and pattern of the raised pavement markers shall simulate the color and pattern of the markings for which they substitute.**

3 **If temporary raised pavement markers are used to substitute for broken line segments, a group of at least three retroreflective markers shall be equally spaced at no greater than N/8 (see Section 3B.14). The value of N for a broken or dotted line shall equal the length of one line segment plus one gap.**

4 **If temporary raised pavement markers are used to substitute for solid lines, the markers shall be equally spaced at no greater than N/4, with retroreflective or internally illuminated units at a spacing no greater than N/2. The value of N referenced for solid lines shall equal the N for the broken or dotted lines that might be adjacent to or might extend the solid lines (see Section 3B.11).**

Option:

5 Temporary raised pavement markers may be used to substitute for broken line segments by using at least two retroreflective markers placed at each end of a segment of 2 to 5 feet in length, using the same cycle length as permanent markings.

Guidance:

6 *Temporary raised pavement markers used on 2- to 5-foot segments to substitute for broken line segments should not be in place for more than 14 days unless justified by engineering judgment.*

7 *Raised pavement markers should be considered for use along surfaced detours or temporary roadways, and other changed or new travel-lane alignments.*

Option:

8 Retroreflective or internally illuminated raised pavement markers, or non-retroreflective raised pavement markers supplemented by retroreflective or internally illuminated markers, may also be used in TTC zones to supplement markings as prescribed in Chapters 3A and 3B.

Section 6F.80 Delineators

Standard:

When used, delineators shall combine with or supplement other TTC devices. They shall be mounted on crashworthy supports so that the reflecting unit is approximately 4 feet above the near roadway edge. The standard color for delineators used along both sides of two-way streets and highways and the right-hand side of one-way roadways shall be white. Delineators used along the left-hand side of one-way roadways shall be yellow.

Guidance:

Spacing along roadway curves should be as set forth in Section 3F.04 and should be such that several delineators are constantly visible to the driver.

Option:

Delineators may be used in TTC zones to indicate the alignment of the roadway and to outline the required vehicle path through the TTC zone.

Section 6F.81 Lighting Devices

Guidance:

Lighting devices should be provided in TTC zones based on engineering judgment.

When used to supplement channelization, the maximum spacing for warning lights should be identical to the channelizing device spacing requirements.

Option:

Lighting devices may be used to supplement retroreflectorized signs, barriers, and channelizing devices.

During normal daytime maintenance operations, the functions of flashing warning beacons may be provided by high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights on a maintenance vehicle.

Standard:

Although vehicle hazard warning lights are permitted to be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights, they shall not be used instead of high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Section 6F.82 Floodlights

Support:

Utility, maintenance, or construction activities on highways are frequently conducted during nighttime periods when vehicular traffic volumes are lower. Large construction projects are sometimes operated on a double-shift basis requiring night work (see Section 6G.19).

Guidance:

When nighttime work is being performed, floodlights should be used to illuminate the work area, equipment crossings, and other areas.

Standard:

Except in emergency situations, flagger stations shall be illuminated at night.

Floodlighting shall not produce a disabling glare condition for approaching road users, flaggers, or workers.

Guidance:

The adequacy of the floodlight placement and elimination of potential glare should be determined by driving through and observing the floodlighted area from each direction on all approaching roadways after the initial floodlight setup, at night, and periodically.

Support:

Desired illumination levels vary depending upon the nature of the task involved. An average horizontal luminance of 5 foot candles can be adequate for general activities. Tasks requiring high levels of precision and extreme care can require an average horizontal luminance of 20 foot candles.

Section 6F.83 Warning Lights

Support:

Type A, Type B, Type C, and Type D 360-degree warning lights are portable, powered, yellow, lens-directed, enclosed lights.

Standard:

2 **Warning lights shall be in accordance with the current ITE "Purchase Specification for Flashing and Steady-Burn Warning Lights" (see Section 1A.11).**

3 **When warning lights are used, they shall be mounted on signs or channelizing devices in a manner that, if hit by an errant vehicle, they will not be likely to penetrate the windshield.**

Guidance:

4 *The maximum spacing for warning lights should be identical to the channelizing device spacing requirements.*

Support:

5 The light weight and portability of warning lights are advantages that make these devices useful as supplements to the retroreflectorization on signs and channelizing devices. The flashing lights are effective in attracting road users' attention.

Option:

6 Warning lights may be used in either a steady-burn or flashing mode.

Standard:

7 **Except for the sequential flashing warning lights that are described in Paragraphs 8 and 9, flashing warning lights shall not be used for delineation, as a series of flashers fails to identify the desired vehicle path.**

Option:

8 A series of sequential flashing warning lights may be placed on channelizing devices that form a merging taper in order to increase driver detection and recognition of the merging taper.

Standard:

9 **If a series of sequential flashing warning lights is used, the successive flashing of the lights shall occur from the upstream end of the merging taper to the downstream end of the merging taper in order to identify the desired vehicle path. Each flashing warning light in the sequence shall be flashed at a rate of not less than 55 or more than 75 times per minute.**

10 **Type A Low-Intensity Flashing warning lights, Type C Steady-Burn warning lights, and Type D 360-degree Steady-Burn warning lights shall be maintained so as to be capable of being visible on a clear night from a distance of 3,000 feet. Type B High-Intensity Flashing warning lights shall be maintained so as to be capable of being visible on a sunny day when viewed without the sun directly on or behind the device from a distance of 1,000 feet.**

11 **Warning lights shall have a minimum mounting height of 30 inches to the bottom of the lens.**

Support:

12 Type A Low-Intensity Flashing warning lights are used to warn road users during nighttime hours that they are approaching or proceeding in a potentially hazardous area.

Option:

13 Type A warning lights may be mounted on channelizing devices.

Support:

14 Type B High-Intensity Flashing warning lights are used to warn road users during both daylight and nighttime hours that they are approaching a potentially hazardous area.

Option:

15 Type B warning lights are designed to operate 24 hours per day and may be mounted on advance warning signs or on independent supports.

16 Type C Steady-Burn warning lights and Type D 360-degree Steady-Burn warning lights may be used during nighttime hours to delineate the edge of the traveled way.

Guidance:

17 *When used to delineate a curve, Type C and Type D 360-degree warning lights should only be used on devices on the outside of the curve, and not on the inside of the curve.*

Section 6F.84 Temporary Traffic Control Signals

Standard:

1 **Temporary traffic control signals (see Section 4D.32) used to control road user movements through TTC zones and in other TTC situations shall comply with the applicable provisions of Part 4.**

Support:

2 Temporary traffic control signals are typically used in TTC zones such as temporary haul road crossings; temporary one-way operations along a one-lane, two-way highway; temporary one-way operations on bridges, reversible lanes, and intersections.

Standard:

3 **A temporary traffic control signal that is used to control traffic through a one-lane, two-way section of roadway shall comply with the provisions of Section 4H.02.**

Guidance:

4 *Where pedestrian traffic is detoured to a temporary traffic control signal, engineering judgment should be used to determine if pedestrian signals or accessible pedestrian signals (see Section 4E.09) are needed for crossing along an alternate route.*

5 *When temporary traffic control signals are used, conflict monitors typical of traditional traffic control signal operations should be used.*

Option:

6 Temporary traffic control signals may be portable or temporarily mounted on fixed supports.

Guidance:

7 *Temporary traffic control signals should only be used in situations where temporary traffic control signals are preferable to other means of traffic control, such as changing the work staging or work zone size to eliminate one-way vehicular traffic movements, using flaggers to control one-way or crossing movements, using STOP or YIELD signs, and using warning devices alone.*

Support:

8 Factors related to the design and application of temporary traffic control signals include the following:

A. Safety and road user needs;
B. Work staging and operations;
C. The feasibility of using other TTC strategies (for example, flaggers, providing space for two lanes, or detouring road users, including bicyclists and pedestrians);
D. Sight distance restrictions;
E. Human factors considerations (for example, lack of driver familiarity with temporary traffic control signals);
F. Road-user volumes including roadway and intersection capacity;
G. Affected side streets and driveways;
H. Vehicle speeds;
I. The placement of other TTC devices;
J. Parking;
K. Turning restrictions;
L. Pedestrians;
M. The nature of adjacent land uses (such as residential or commercial);
N. Legal authority;
O. Signal phasing and timing requirements;
P. Full-time or part-time operation;
Q. Actuated, fixed-time, or manual operation;
R. Power failures or other emergencies;
S. Inspection and maintenance needs;
T. Need for detailed placement, timing, and operation records; and
U. Operation by contractors or by others.

9 Although temporary traffic control signals can be mounted on trailers or lightweight portable supports, fixed supports offer superior resistance to displacement or damage by severe weather, vehicle impact, and vandalism.

Guidance:

10 *Other TTC devices should be used to supplement temporary traffic control signals, including warning and regulatory signs, pavement markings, and channelizing devices.*

11 *Temporary traffic control signals not in use should be covered or removed.*

12 *If a temporary traffic control signal is located within 1/2 mile of an adjacent traffic control signal, consideration should be given to interconnected operation.*

Standard:

13 **Temporary traffic control signals shall not be located within 200 feet of a grade crossing unless the temporary traffic control signal is provided with preemption in accordance with Section 4D.27, or unless a uniformed officer or flagger is provided at the crossing to prevent vehicles from stopping within the crossing.**

Section 6F.85 Temporary Traffic Barriers

Support:

1 Temporary traffic barriers, including shifting portable or movable barriers, are devices designed to help prevent penetration by vehicles while minimizing injuries to vehicle occupants, and to protect workers, bicyclists, and pedestrians.

2 The four primary functions of temporary traffic barriers are:

A. To keep vehicular traffic from entering work areas, such as excavations or material storage sites;
B. To separate workers, bicyclists, and pedestrians from motor vehicle traffic;
C. To separate opposing directions of vehicular traffic; and
D. To separate vehicular traffic, bicyclists, and pedestrians from the work area such as false work for bridges and other exposed objects.

Option:

3 Temporary traffic barriers may be used to separate two-way vehicular traffic.

Guidance:

4 *Because the protective requirements of a TTC situation have priority in determining the need for temporary traffic barriers, their use should be based on an engineering study.*

Standard:

5 **Temporary traffic barriers shall be supplemented with standard delineation, pavement markings, or channelizing devices for improved daytime and nighttime visibility if they are used to channelize vehicular traffic. The delineation color shall match the applicable pavement marking color.**

6 **Temporary traffic barriers, including their end treatments, shall be crashworthy. In order to mitigate the effect of striking the upstream end of a temporary traffic barrier, the end shall be installed in accordance with AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11) by flaring until the end is outside the acceptable clear zone or by providing crashworthy end treatments.**

Option:

7 Warning lights or steady-burn lamps may be mounted on temporary traffic barrier installations.

Support:

8 Movable barriers are capable of being repositioned laterally using a transfer vehicle that travels along the barrier. Movable barriers enable short-term closures to be installed and removed on long-term projects. Providing a barrier-protected work space for short-term closures and providing unbalanced flow to accommodate changes in the direction of peak-period traffic flows are two of the advantages of using movable barriers.

9 Figure 6H-45 shows a temporary reversible lane using movable barriers. The notable feature of the movable barrier is that in both Phase A and Phase B, the lanes used by opposing traffic are separated by a barrier.

10 Figure 6H-34 shows an exterior lane closure using a temporary traffic barrier. Notes 7 though 9 address the option of using a movable barrier. By using a movable barrier, the barrier can be positioned to close the lane during the off-peak periods and can be relocated to open the lane during peak periods to accommodate peak traffic flows. With one pass of the transfer vehicle, the barrier can be moved out of the lane and onto the shoulder. Furthermore, if so desired, with a second pass of the transfer vehicle, the barrier could be moved to the roadside beyond the shoulder.

11 More specific information on the use of temporary traffic barriers is contained in Chapters 8 and 9 of AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11).

Section 6F.86 Crash Cushions

Support:

1 Crash cushions are systems that mitigate the effects of errant vehicles that strike obstacles, either by smoothly decelerating the vehicle to a stop when hit head-on, or by redirecting the errant vehicle. The two types of crash cushions that are used in TTC zones are stationary crash cushions and truck-mounted attenuators. Crash cushions in TTC zones help protect the drivers from the exposed ends of barriers, fixed objects, shadow vehicles, and other obstacles. Specific information on the use of crash cushions can be found in AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11).

Standard:

2 **Crash cushions shall be crashworthy. They shall also be designed for each application to stop or redirect errant vehicles under prescribed conditions. Crash cushions shall be periodically inspected to verify that they have not been hit or damaged. Damaged crash cushions shall be promptly repaired or replaced to maintain their crashworthiness.**

Support:

3 Stationary crash cushions are used in the same manner as permanent highway installations to protect drivers from the exposed ends of barriers, fixed objects, and other obstacles.

Standard:

4 **Stationary crash cushions shall be designed for the specific application intended.**

5 **Truck-mounted attenuators shall be energy-absorbing devices attached to the rear of shadow trailers or trucks. If used, the shadow vehicle with the attenuator shall be located in advance of the work area, workers, or equipment to reduce the severity of rear-end crashes from errant vehicles.**

Support:

6 Trucks or trailers are often used as shadow vehicles to protect workers or work equipment from errant vehicles. These shadow vehicles are normally equipped with flashing arrows, changeable message signs, and/or high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights located properly in advance of the workers and/or equipment that they are protecting. However, these shadow vehicles might themselves cause injuries to occupants of the errant vehicles if they are not equipped with truck-mounted attenuators.

Guidance:

7 *The shadow truck should be positioned a sufficient distance in advance of the workers or equipment being protected so that there will be sufficient distance, but not so much so that errant vehicles will travel around the shadow truck and strike the protected workers and/or equipment.*

Support:

8 Chapter 9 of AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11) contains additional information regarding the use of shadow vehicles.

Guidance:

9 *If used, the truck-mounted attenuator should be used in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.*

Section 6F.87 Rumble Strips

Support:

1 Transverse rumble strips consist of intermittent, narrow, transverse areas of rough-textured or slightly raised or depressed road surface that extend across the travel lanes to alert drivers to unusual vehicular traffic conditions. Through noise and vibration they attract the driver's attention to such features as unexpected changes in alignment and to conditions requiring a stop.

2 Longitudinal rumble strips consist of a series of rough-textured or slightly raised or depressed road surfaces located along the shoulder to alert road users that they are leaving the travel lanes.

Standard:

3 **If it is desirable to use a color other than the color of the pavement for a longitudinal rumble strip, the color of the rumble strip shall be the same color as the longitudinal line the rumble strip supplements.**

4 **If the color of a transverse rumble strip used within a travel lane is not the color of the pavement, the color of the rumble strip shall be white, black, or orange.**

Option:

5 Intervals between transverse rumble strips may be reduced as the distance to the approached conditions is diminished in order to convey an impression that a closure speed is too fast and/or that an action is imminent. A sign warning drivers of the onset of rumble strips may be placed in advance of any transverse rumble strip installation.

Guidance:

6 *Transverse rumble strips should be placed transverse to vehicular traffic movement. They should not adversely affect overall pavement skid resistance under wet or dry conditions.*

7 *In urban areas, even though a closer spacing might be warranted, transverse rumble strips should be designed in a manner that does not promote unnecessary braking or erratic steering maneuvers by road users.*

8 *Transverse rumble strips should not be placed on sharp horizontal or vertical curves.*

9 *Rumble strips should not be placed through pedestrian crossings or on bicycle routes.*

10 *Transverse rumble strips should not be placed on roadways used by bicyclists unless a minimum clear path of 4 feet is provided at each edge of the roadway or on each paved shoulder as described in AASHTO's "Guide to the Development of Bicycle Facilities" (see Section 1A.11).*

11 *Longitudinal rumble strips should not be placed on the shoulder of a roadway that is used by bicyclists unless a minimum clear path of 4 feet is also provided on the shoulder.*

Section 6F.88 Screens

Support:

1 Screens are used to block the road users' view of activities that can be distracting. Screens might improve safety and motor vehicle traffic flow where volumes approach the roadway capacity because they discourage gawking and reduce headlight glare from oncoming motor vehicle traffic.

Guidance:

2 *Screens should not be mounted where they could adversely restrict road user visibility and sight distance and adversely affect the reasonably safe operation of vehicles.*

Option:

3 Screens may be mounted on the top of temporary traffic barriers that separate two-way motor vehicle traffic.

Guidance:

4 *Design of screens should be in accordance with Chapter 9 of AASHTO's "Roadside Design Guide" (see Section 1A.11).*

CHAPTER 6G. TYPE OF TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL ZONE ACTIVITIES

Section 6G.01 Typical Applications

Support:

1 Each TTC zone is different. Many variables, such as location of work, highway type, geometrics, vertical and horizontal alignment, intersections, interchanges, road user volumes, road vehicle mix (buses, trucks, and cars), and road user speeds affect the needs of each zone. The goal of TTC in work zones is safety with minimum disruption to road users. The key factor in promoting TTC zone safety is proper judgment.

2 Typical applications (TAs) of TTC zones are organized according to duration, location, type of work, and highway type. Table 6H-1 is an index of these typical applications. These typical applications include the use of various TTC methods, but do not include a layout for every conceivable work situation.

3 Well-designed TTC plans for planned special events will likely be developed from a combination of treatments from several of the typical applications.

Guidance:

4 *For any planned special event that will have an impact on the traffic on any street or highway, a TTC plan should be developed in conjunction with and be approved by the agency or agencies that have jurisdiction over the affected roadways.*

5 *Typical applications should be altered, when necessary, to fit the conditions of a particular TTC zone.*

Option:

6 Other devices may be added to supplement the devices shown in the typical applications, while others may be deleted. The sign spacings and taper lengths may be increased to provide additional time or space for driver response.

Support:

7 Decisions regarding the selection of the most appropriate typical application to use as a guide for a specific TTC zone require an understanding of each situation. Although there are many ways of categorizing TTC zone applications, the four factors mentioned earlier (work duration, work location, work type, and highway type) are used to characterize the typical applications illustrated in Chapter 6H.

Section 6G.02 Work Duration

Support:

1 Work duration is a major factor in determining the number and types of devices used in TTC zones. The duration of a TTC zone is defined relative to the length of time a work operation occupies a spot location.

Standard:

2 **The five categories of work duration and their time at a location shall be:**

- **A. Long-term stationary is work that occupies a location more than 3 days.**
- **B. Intermediate-term stationary is work that occupies a location more than one daylight period up to 3 days, or nighttime work lasting more than 1 hour.**
- **C. Short-term stationary is daytime work that occupies a location for more than 1 hour within a single daylight period.**
- **D. Short duration is work that occupies a location up to 1 hour.**
- **E. Mobile is work that moves intermittently or continuously.**

Support:

3 At long-term stationary TTC zones, there is ample time to install and realize benefits from the full range of TTC procedures and devices that are available for use. Generally, larger channelizing devices, temporary roadways, and temporary traffic barriers are used.

Standard:

4 **Since long-term operations extend into nighttime, retroreflective and/or illuminated devices shall be used in long-term stationary TTC zones.**

Guidance:

5 *Inappropriate markings in long-term stationary TTC zones should be removed and replaced with temporary markings.*

Support:

6 In intermediate-term stationary TTC zones, it might not be feasible or practical to use procedures or devices that would be desirable for long-term stationary TTC zones, such as altered pavement markings, temporary traffic barriers, and temporary roadways. The increased time to place and remove these devices in some cases could significantly lengthen the project, thus increasing exposure time.

Standard:

7 **Since intermediate-term operations extend into nighttime, retroreflective and/or illuminated devices shall be used in intermediate-term stationary TTC zones.**

Support:

8 Most maintenance and utility operations are short-term stationary work.

9 As compared to stationary operations, mobile and short-duration operations are activities that might involve different treatments. Devices having greater mobility might be necessary such as signs mounted on trucks. Devices that are larger, more imposing, or more visible can be used effectively and economically. The mobility of the TTC zone is important.

Guidance:

10 *Safety in short-duration or mobile operations should not be compromised by using fewer devices simply because the operation will frequently change its location.*

Option:

11 Appropriately colored or marked vehicles with high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights may be used in place of signs and channelizing devices for short-duration or mobile operations. These vehicles may be augmented with signs or arrow boards.

Support:

12 During short-duration work, it often takes longer to set up and remove the TTC zone than to perform the work. Workers face hazards in setting up and taking down the TTC zone. Also, since the work time is short, delays affecting road users are significantly increased when additional devices are installed and removed.

Option:

13 Considering these factors, simplified control procedures may be warranted for short-duration work. A reduction in the number of devices may be offset by the use of other more dominant devices such as high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights on work vehicles.

Support:

14 Mobile operations often involve frequent short stops for activities such as litter cleanup, pothole patching, or utility operations, and are similar to short-duration operations.

Guidance:

15 *Warning signs and high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights should be used on the vehicles that are participating in the mobile work.*

Option:

16 Flags and/or channelizing devices may additionally be used and moved periodically to keep them near the mobile work area.

17 Flaggers may be used for mobile operations that often involve frequent short stops.

Support:

18 Mobile operations also include work activities where workers and equipment move along the road without stopping, usually at slow speeds. The advance warning area moves with the work area.

Guidance:

19 *When mobile operations are being performed, a shadow vehicle equipped with an arrow board or a sign should follow the work vehicle, especially when vehicular traffic speeds or volumes are high. Where feasible, warning signs should be placed along the roadway and moved periodically as work progresses.*

20 *Under high-volume conditions, consideration should be given to scheduling mobile operations work during off-peak hours.*

21 *If there are mobile operations on a high-speed travel lane of a multi-lane divided highway, arrow boards should be used.*

Standard:

22 **Mobile operations shall have appropriate devices on the equipment (that is, high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights, signs, or special lighting), or shall use a separate vehicle with appropriate warning devices.**

Option:

23 For mobile operations that move at speeds of less than 3 mph, mobile signs or stationary signing that is periodically retrieved and repositioned in the advance warning area may be used.

Section 6G.03 Location of Work

Support:

1 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

2 The choice of TTC needed for a TTC zone depends upon where the work is located. As a general rule, the closer the work is to road users (including bicyclists and pedestrians), the greater the number of TTC devices that are needed. Procedures are described later in this Chapter for establishing TTC zones in the following locations:

A. Outside the shoulder,
B. On the shoulder with no encroachment,
C. On the shoulder with minor encroachment,
D. Within the median, and
E. Within the traveled way.

Standard:

3 **When the work space is within the traveled way, except for short-duration and mobile operations, advance warning shall provide a general message that work is taking place and shall supply information about highway conditions. TTC devices shall indicate how vehicular traffic can move through the TTC zone.**

Section 6G.04 Modifications To Fulfill Special Needs

Support:

1 The typical applications in Chapter 6H illustrate commonly encountered situations in which TTC devices are employed.

Option:

2 Other devices may be added to supplement the devices provided in the typical applications, and device spacing may be adjusted to provide additional reaction time. When conditions are less complex than those depicted in the typical applications, fewer devices may be needed.

Guidance:

3 *When conditions are more complex, typical applications should be modified by giving particular attention to the provisions set forth in Chapter 6B and by incorporating appropriate devices and practices from the following list:*

A. Additional devices:
1. Signs
2. Arrow boards
3. More channelizing devices at closer spacing (see Section 6F.74 for information regarding detectable edging for pedestrians)
4. Temporary raised pavement markers
5. High-level warning devices
6. Portable changeable message signs
7. Temporary traffic control signals (including pedestrian signals and accessible pedestrian signals)
8. Temporary traffic barriers
9. Crash cushions
10. Screens
11. Rumble strips
12. More delineation

B. Upgrading of devices:

1. A full complement of standard pavement markings
2. Brighter and/or wider pavement markings
3. Larger and/or brighter signs
4. Channelizing devices with greater conspicuity
5. Temporary traffic barriers in place of channelizing devices

C. Improved geometrics at detours or crossovers
D. Increased distances:

1. Longer advance warning area
2. Longer tapers

E. Lighting:

1. Temporary roadway lighting
2. Steady-burn lights used with channelizing devices
3. Flashing lights for isolated hazards
4. Illuminated signs
5. Floodlights

F. Pedestrian routes and temporary facilities
G. Bicycle diversions and temporary facilities

Section 6G.05 Work Affecting Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities

Support:

1 It is not uncommon, particularly in urban areas, that road work and the associated TTC will affect existing pedestrian or bicycle facilities. It is essential that the needs of all road users, including pedestrians with disabilities, are considered in TTC zones.

2 In addition to specific provisions identified in Sections 6G.06 through 6G.14, there are a number of provisions that might be applicable for all of the types of activities identified in this Chapter.

Guidance:

3 *Where pedestrian or bicycle usage is high, the typical applications should be modified by giving particular attention to the provisions set forth in Chapter 6D, this Chapter, Section 6F.74, and in other Sections of Part 6 related to accessibility and detectability provisions in TTC zones.*

4 *Pedestrians should be separated from the worksite by appropriate devices that maintain the accessibility and detectability for pedestrians with disabilities.*

5 *Bicyclists and pedestrians should not be exposed to unprotected excavations, open utility access, overhanging equipment, or other such conditions.*

6 *Except for short duration and mobile operations, when a highway shoulder is occupied, a SHOULDER WORK (W21-5) sign should be placed in advance of the activity area. When work is performed on a paved shoulder 8 feet or more in width, channelizing devices should be placed on a taper having a length that conforms to the requirements of a shoulder taper. Signs should be placed such that they do not narrow any existing pedestrian passages to less than 48 inches.*

7 *Pedestrian detours should be avoided since pedestrians rarely observe them and the cost of providing accessibility and detectability might outweigh the cost of maintaining a continuous route. Whenever possible, work should be done in a manner that does not create a need to detour pedestrians from existing routes or crossings.*

Standard:

8 **Where pedestrian routes are closed, alternate pedestrian routes shall be provided.**

9 **When existing pedestrian facilities are disrupted, closed, or relocated in a TTC zone, the temporary facilities shall be detectable and shall include accessibility features consistent with the features present in the existing pedestrian facility.**

Section 6G.06 Work Outside of the Shoulder

Support:

1 When work is being performed off the roadway (beyond the shoulders, but within the right-of-way), little or no TTC might be needed. TTC generally is not needed where work is confined to an area 15 feet or more from the edge of

the traveled way. However, TTC is appropriate where distracting situations exist, such as vehicles parked on the shoulder, vehicles accessing the worksite via the highway, and equipment traveling on or crossing the roadway to perform the work operations (for example, mowing). For work beyond the shoulder, see Figure 6H-1.

Guidance:

2 *Where the situations described in Paragraph 1 exist, a single warning sign, such as ROAD WORK AHEAD (W20-1), should be used. If the equipment travels on the roadway, the equipment should be equipped with appropriate flags, high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights, and/or a SLOW MOVING VEHICLE (W21-4) sign.*

Option:

3 If work vehicles are on the shoulder, a SHOULDER WORK (W21-5) sign may be used. For mowing operations, the sign MOWING AHEAD (W21-8) may be used.

4 Where the activity is spread out over a distance of more than 2 miles, the SHOULDER WORK (W21-5) sign may be repeated every 1 mile.

5 A supplementary plaque with the message NEXT XX MILES (W7-3aP) may be used.

Guidance:

6 *A general warning sign like ROAD MACHINERY AHEAD (W21-3) should be used if workers and equipment must occasionally move onto the shoulder.*

Section 6G.07 Work on the Shoulder with No Encroachment

Support:

1 The provisions of this Section apply to short-term through long-term stationary operations.

Standard:

2 **When paved shoulders having a width of 8 feet or more are closed, at least one advance warning sign shall be used. In addition, channelizing devices shall be used to close the shoulder in advance to delineate the beginning of the work space and direct motor vehicle traffic to remain within the traveled way.**

Guidance:

3 *When paved shoulders having a width of 8 feet or more are closed on freeways and expressways, road users should be warned about potential disabled vehicles that cannot get off the traveled way. An initial general warning sign, such as ROAD WORK AHEAD (W20-1), should be used, followed by a RIGHT or LEFT SHOULDER CLOSED (W21-5a) sign. Where the downstream end of the shoulder closure extends beyond the distance that can be perceived by road users, a supplementary plaque bearing the message NEXT XX FEET (W16-4P) or MILES (W7-3aP) should be placed below the SHOULDER CLOSED (W21-5a) sign. On multi-lane, divided highways, signs advising of shoulder work or the condition of the shoulder should be placed only on the side of the affected shoulder.*

4 *When an improved shoulder is closed on a high-speed roadway, it should be treated as a closure of a portion of the road system because road users expect to be able to use it in emergencies. Road users should be given ample advance warning that shoulders are closed for use as refuge areas throughout a specified length of the approaching TTC zone. The sign(s) should read SHOULDER CLOSED (W21-5a) with distances indicated. The work space on the shoulder should be closed off by a taper or channelizing devices with a length of 1/3 L using the formulas in Tables 6C-3 and 6C-4.*

5 *When the shoulder is not occupied but work has adversely affected its condition, the LOW SHOULDER (W8-9) or SOFT SHOULDER (W8-4) sign should be used, as appropriate.*

6 *Where the condition extends over a distance in excess of 1 mile, the sign should be repeated at 1-mile intervals.*

Option:

7 In addition, a supplementary plaque bearing the message NEXT XX MILES (W7-3aP) may be used. Temporary traffic barriers may be needed to inhibit encroachment of errant vehicles into the work space and to protect workers.

Standard:

8 **When used for shoulder work, arrow boards shall operate only in the caution mode.**

Support:

9 A typical application for stationary work operations on shoulders is shown in Figure 6H-3. Short duration or mobile work on shoulders is shown in Figure 6H-4. Work on freeway shoulders is shown in Figure 6H-5.

Section 6G.08 Work on the Shoulder with Minor Encroachment

Support:

1 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

Guidance:

2 *When work takes up part of a lane, vehicular traffic volumes, vehicle mix (buses, trucks, cars, and bicycles), speed, and capacity should be analyzed to determine whether the affected lane should be closed. Unless the lane encroachment permits a remaining lane width of 10 feet, the lane should be closed.*

3 *Truck off-tracking should be considered when determining whether the minimum lane width of 10 feet is adequate.*

Option:

4 A lane width of 9 feet may be used for short-term stationary work on low-volume, low-speed roadways when vehicular traffic does not include longer and wider heavy commercial vehicles.

Support:

5 Figure 6H-6 illustrates a method for handling vehicular traffic where the stationary or short duration work space encroaches slightly into the traveled way.

Section 6G.09 Work Within the Median

Support:

1 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

Guidance:

2 *If work in the median of a divided highway is within 15 feet from the edge of the traveled way for either direction of travel, TTC should be used through the use of advance warning signs and channelizing devices.*

Section 6G.10 Work Within the Traveled Way of a Two-Lane Highway

Support:

1 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

2 Detour signs are used to direct road users onto another roadway. At diversions, road users are directed onto a temporary roadway or alignment placed within or adjacent to the right-of-way. Typical applications for detouring or diverting road users on two-lane highways are shown in Figures 6H-7, 6H-8, and 6H-9. Figure 6H-7 illustrates the controls around an area where a section of roadway has been closed and a diversion has been constructed. Channelizing devices and pavement markings are used to indicate the transition to the temporary roadway.

Guidance:

3 *When a detour is long, Detour (M4-8, M4-9) signs should be installed to remind and reassure road users periodically that they are still successfully following the detour.*

4 *When an entire roadway is closed, as illustrated in Figure 6H-8, a detour should be provided and road users should be warned in advance of the closure, which in this example is a closure 10 miles from the intersection. If local road users are allowed to use the roadway up to the closure, the ROAD CLOSED AHEAD, LOCAL TRAFFIC ONLY (R11-3a) sign should be used. The portion of the road open to local road users should have adequate signing, marking, and delineation.*

5 *Detours should be signed so that road users will be able to traverse the entire detour route and back to the original roadway as shown in Figure 6H-9.*

Support:

6 Techniques for controlling vehicular traffic under one-lane, two-way conditions are described in Section 6C.10.

Standard:

For one-lane, two-way conditions on roads with low traffic volumes, the MUTCD allows stop or yield-sign control. Yield-sign control shall not be used for one-lane, two-way conditions on State Trunk Highways, Connecting Highways, or any other roadways declared as through highways.

If STOP signs are used for one-lane, two-way conditions, both directions shall be stopped.

Option:

7 Flaggers may be used as shown in Figure 6H-10.

8 STOP/YIELD sign control may be used on roads with low traffic volumes as shown in Figure 6H-11.

9 A temporary traffic control signal may be used as shown in Figure 6H-12.

Section 6G.11 Work Within the Traveled Way of an Urban Street

Support:

1 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

2 In urban TTC zones, decisions are needed on how to control vehicular traffic, such as how many lanes are required, whether any turns need to be prohibited at intersections, and how to maintain access to business, industrial, and residential areas.

3 Pedestrian traffic needs separate attention. Chapter 6D contains information regarding pedestrian movements near TTC zones.

Standard:

4 **If the TTC zone affects the movement of bicyclists, adequate access to the roadway or shared-use paths shall be provided (see Part 9).**

5 **Where transit stops are affected or relocated because of work activity, both pedestrian and vehicular access to the affected or relocated transit stops shall be provided.**

Guidance:

6 *If a designated bicycle route is closed because of the work being done, a signed alternate route should be provided. Bicyclists should not be directed onto the path used by pedestrians.*

7 *Worksites within the intersection should be protected against inadvertent pedestrian incursion by providing detectable channelizing devices.*

Support:

8 Utility work takes place both within and outside the roadway to construct and maintain services such as power, gas, light, water, or telecommunications. Operations often involve intersections, since that is where many of the network junctions occur. The work force is usually small, only a few vehicles are involved, and the number and types of TTC devices placed in the TTC zone is usually minimal.

Standard:

9 **All TTC devices shall be retroreflective or illuminated if utility work is performed during nighttime hours.**

Guidance:

10 *As discussed under short-duration projects, however, the reduced number of devices in utility work zones should be offset by the use of high-visibility devices, such as high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights on work vehicles or high-level warning devices.*

Support:

11 Figures 6H-6, 6H-10, 6H-15, 6H-18, 6H-21, 6H-22, 6H-23, 6H-26, and 6H-33 are examples of typical applications for utility operations. Other typical applications might apply as well.

Section 6G.12 Work Within the Traveled Way of a Multi-Lane, Non-Access Controlled Highway

Support:

1 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

2 Work on multi-lane (two or more lanes of moving motor vehicle traffic in one direction) highways is divided into right-lane closures, left-lane closures, interior-lane closures, multiple-lane closures, and closures on five-lane roadways.

Standard:

3 **When a lane is closed on a multi-lane road for other than a mobile operation, a transition area containing a merging taper shall be used.**

Guidance:

4 *When justified by an engineering study, temporary traffic barriers (see Section 6F.70) should be used to prevent incursions of errant vehicles into hazardous areas or work space.*

Support:

5 Figure 6H-34 illustrates a lane closure in which temporary traffic barriers are used.

Option:

6 When the right-hand lane is closed, TTC similar to that shown in Figure 6H-33 may be used for undivided or divided four-lane roads.

Guidance:

7 *If morning and evening peak hour vehicular traffic volumes in the two directions are uneven and the greater volume is on the side where the work is being done in the right-hand lane, consideration should be given to closing the inside lane for opposing vehicular traffic and making the lane available to the side with heavier vehicular traffic, as shown in Figure 6H-31.*

8 *If the larger vehicular traffic volume changes to the opposite direction at a different time of the day, the TTC should be changed to allow two lanes for opposing vehicular traffic by moving the devices from the opposing lane to the center line. When it is necessary to create a temporary center line that is not consistent with the pavement markings, channelizing devices should be used and closely spaced.*

Option:

9 When closing a left-hand lane on a multi-lane undivided road, as vehicular traffic flow permits, the two interior lanes may be closed, as shown in Figure 6H-30, to provide drivers and workers additional lateral clearance and to provide access to the work space.

Standard:

10 **When only the left-hand lane is closed on undivided roads, channelizing devices shall be placed along the center line as well as along the adjacent lane.**

Guidance:

11 *When an interior lane is closed, an adjacent lane should also be considered for closure to provide additional space for vehicles and materials and to facilitate the movement of equipment within the work space.*

12 *When multiple lanes in one direction are closed, a capacity analysis should be made to determine the number of lanes needed to accommodate motor vehicle traffic needs. Vehicular traffic should be moved over one lane at a time. As shown in Figure 6H-37, the tapers should be separated by a distance of 2L, with L being determined by the formulas in Tables 6C-3 and 6C-4.*

Option:

13 If operating speeds are 40 mph or less and the space approaching the work area does not permit moving traffic over one lane at a time, a single continuous taper may be used.

Standard:

14 **When a directional roadway is closed, inapplicable WRONG WAY signs and markings, and other existing traffic control devices at intersections within the temporary two-lane, two-way operations section shall be covered, removed, or obliterated.**

Option:

15 When half the road is closed on an undivided highway, both directions of vehicular traffic may be accommodated as shown in Figure 6H-32. When both interior lanes are closed, temporary traffic controls may be used as provided in Figure 6H-30. When a roadway must be closed on a divided highway, a median crossover may be used (see Section 6G.16).

Support:

16 TTC for lane closures on five-lane roads is similar to other multi-lane undivided roads. Figure 6H-32 can be adapted for use on five-lane roads. Figure 6H-35 can be used on a five-lane road for short duration and mobile operations.

Section 6G.13 Work Within the Traveled Way at an Intersection

Support:

1 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

2 The typical applications for intersections are classified according to the location of the work space with respect to the intersection area (as defined by the extension of the curb or edge lines). The three classifications are near side, far side, and in-the-intersection. Work spaces often extend into more than one portion of the intersection. For example, work in one quadrant often creates a near-side work space on one street and a far-side work space on the cross street. In such instances, an appropriate TTC plan is obtained by combining features shown in two or more of the intersection and pedestrian typical applications.

3 TTC zones in the vicinity of intersections might block movements and interfere with normal road user flows. Such conflicts frequently occur at more complex signalized intersections having such features as traffic signal heads over particular lanes, lanes allocated to specific movements, multiple signal phases, signal detectors for actuated control, and accessible pedestrian signals and detectors.

Guidance:

4 *The effect of the work upon signal operation should be considered, and temporary corrective actions should be taken, if necessary, such as revising signal phasing and/or timing to provide adequate capacity, maintaining or adjusting signal detectors, and relocating signal heads to provide adequate visibility as described in Part 4.*

Standard:

5 **When work will occur near an intersection where operational, capacity, or pedestrian accessibility problems are anticipated, the highway agency having jurisdiction shall be contacted.**

Guidance:

6 *For work at an intersection, advance warning signs, devices, and markings should be used on all cross streets, as appropriate. The typical applications depict urban intersections on arterial streets. Where the posted speed limit, the off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to the work starting, or the anticipated speed exceeds 40 mph, additional warning signs should be used in the advance warning area.*

7 *Pedestrian crossings near TTC sites should be separated from the worksite by appropriate barriers that maintain the accessibility and detectability for pedestrians with disabilities.*

Support:

8 Near-side work spaces, as depicted in Figure 6H-21, are simply handled as a midblock lane closure. A problem that might occur with near-side lane closure is a reduction in capacity, which during certain hours of operation could result in congestion and backups.

Option:

9 When near-side work spaces are used, an exclusive turn lane may be used for through vehicular traffic.

10 Where space is restricted in advance of near-side work spaces, as with short block spacings, two warning signs may be used in the advance warning area, and a third action-type warning or a regulatory sign (such as Keep Left) may be placed within the transition area.

Support:

11 Far-side work spaces, as depicted in Figures 6H-22 through 6H-25, involve additional treatment because road users typically enter the activity area by straight-through and left- or right-turning movements.

Guidance:

12 *When a lane through an intersection must be closed on the far side, it should also be closed on the near-side approach to preclude merging movements within the intersection.*

Option:

13 If there are a significant number of vehicles turning from a near-side lane that is closed on the far side, the near-side lane may be converted to an exclusive turn lane.

Support:

14 Figures 6H-26 and 6H-27 provide guidance on applicable procedures for work performed within the intersection.

Option:

15 If the work is within the intersection, any of the following strategies may be used:

A. A small work space so that road users can move around it, as shown in Figure 6H-26;
B. Flaggers or uniformed law enforcement officers to direct road users, as shown in Figure 6H-27;
C. Work in stages so the work space is kept to a minimum; and
D. Road closures or upstream diversions to reduce road user volumes.

Guidance:

16 *Depending on road user conditions, a flagger(s) and/or a uniformed law enforcement officer(s) should be used to control road users.*

Section 6G.14 Work Within the Traveled Way of a Freeway or Expressway

Support:

1 Problems of TTC might occur under the special conditions encountered where vehicular traffic must be moved through or around TTC zones on high-speed, high-volume roadways. Although the general principles outlined in the previous Sections of this Manual are applicable to all types of highways, high-speed, access-controlled highways need special attention in order to accommodate vehicular traffic while also protecting road users and workers. The road user volumes, road vehicle mix (buses, trucks, cars, and bicycles, if permitted), and speed of vehicles on these facilities require that careful TTC procedures be implemented, for example, to induce critical merging maneuvers well in advance of work spaces and in a manner that creates minimum turbulence and delay in the vehicular traffic stream. These situations often require more conspicuous devices than specified for normal rural highway or urban street use. However, the same important basic considerations of uniformity and standardization of general principles apply for all roadways.

2 Work under high-speed, high-volume vehicular traffic on a controlled access highway is complicated by the roadway design and operational features. The presence of a median that establishes separate roadways for directional vehicular traffic flow might prohibit the closing of one of the roadways or the diverting of vehicular traffic to the other roadway. Lack of access to and from adjacent roadways prohibits rerouting of vehicular traffic away from the work space in many cases. Other conditions exist where work must be limited to night hours, thereby necessitating increased use of warning lights, illumination of work spaces, and advance warning systems.

3 TTC for a typical lane closure on a divided highway is shown in Figure 6H-33. Temporary traffic controls for short duration and mobile operations on freeways are shown in Figure 6H-35. A typical application for shifting vehicular traffic lanes around a work space is shown in Figure 6H-36. TTC for multiple and interior lane closures on a freeway is shown in Figures 6H-37 and 6H-38.

Guidance:

4 *The method for closing an interior lane when the open lanes have the capacity to carry vehicular traffic should be as shown in Figure 6H-37. When the capacity of the other lanes is needed, the method shown in Figure 6H-38 should be used.*

Section 6G.15 Two-Lane, Two-Way Traffic on One Roadway of a Normally Divided Highway

Support:

1 Two-lane, two-way operation on one roadway of a normally divided highway is a typical procedure that requires special consideration in the planning, design, and work phases, because unique operational problems (for example, increasing the risk of head-on crashes) can arise with the two-lane, two-way operation.

Standard:

2 **When two-lane, two-way traffic control must be maintained on one roadway of a normally divided highway, opposing vehicular traffic shall be separated with either temporary traffic barriers (concrete safety-shape or approved alternate), channelizing devices, or a temporary raised island throughout the length of the two-way operation. The use of markings and complementary signing, by themselves, shall not be used.**

Support:

3 Figure 6H-39 shows the procedure for two-lane, two-way operation. Treatments for entrance and exit ramps within the two-way roadway segment of this type of work are shown in Figures 6H-40 and 6H-41.

Section 6G.16 Crossovers

Guidance:

1 *The following are considered good guiding principles for the design of crossovers:*

- *A. Tapers for lane drops should be separated from the crossovers, as shown in Figure 6H-39.*
- *B. Crossovers should be designed for speeds no lower than 10 mph below the posted speed, the off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to the work starting, or the anticipated operating speed of the roadway, unless unusual site conditions require that a lower design speed be used.*

C. *A good array of channelizing devices, delineators, and full-length, properly placed pavement markings should be used to provide drivers with a clearly defined travel path.*
D. *The design of the crossover should accommodate all vehicular traffic, including trucks and buses.*

Support:

2 Temporary traffic barriers and the excessive use of TTC devices cannot compensate for poor geometric and roadway cross-section design of crossovers.

Section 6G.17 Interchanges

Guidance:

1 *Access to interchange ramps on limited-access highways should be maintained even if the work space is in the lane adjacent to the ramps. Access to exit ramps should be clearly marked and delineated with channelizing devices. For long-term projects, conflicting pavement markings should be removed and new ones placed. Early coordination with officials having jurisdiction over the affected cross streets and providing emergency services should occur before ramp closings.*

Option:

2 If access is not possible, ramps may be closed by using signs and Type 3 Barricades. As the work space changes, the access area may be changed, as shown in Figure 6H-42. A TTC zone in the exit ramp may be handled as shown in Figure 6H-43.

3 When a work space interferes with an entrance ramp, a lane may need to be closed on the freeway (see Figure 6H-44). A TTC zone in the entrance ramp may require shifting ramp vehicular traffic (see Figure 6H-44).

Section 6G.18 Work in the Vicinity of a Grade Crossing

Standard:

1 **When grade crossings exist either within or in the vicinity of a TTC zone, lane restrictions, flagging, or other operations shall not create conditions where vehicles can be queued across the tracks. If the queuing of vehicles across the tracks cannot be avoided, a uniformed law enforcement officer or flagger shall be provided at the crossing to prevent vehicles from stopping on the tracks, even if automatic warning devices are in place.**

Support:

2 Figure 6H-46 shows work in the vicinity of a grade crossing.

3 Section 8A.08 contains additional information regarding temporary traffic control zones in the vicinity of grade crossings.

Guidance:

4 *Early coordination with the railroad company or light rail transit agency should occur before work starts.*

Section 6G.19 Temporary Traffic Control During Nighttime Hours

Support:

1 Chapter 6D and Sections 6F.74 and 6G.05 contain additional information regarding the steps to follow when pedestrian or bicycle facilities are affected by the worksite.

2 Conducting highway construction and maintenance activities during night hours could provide an advantage when traditional daytime traffic control strategies cannot achieve an acceptable balance between worker and public safety, traffic and community impact, and constructability. The two basic advantages of working at night are reduced traffic congestion and less involvement with business activities. However, the two basic conditions that must normally be met for night work to offer any advantage are reduced traffic volumes and easy set up and removal of the traffic control patterns on a nightly basis.

3 Shifting work activities to night hours, when traffic volumes are lower and normal business is less active, might offer an advantage in some cases, as long as the necessary work can be completed and the worksite restored to essentially normal operating conditions to carry the higher traffic volume during non-construction hours.

4 Although working at night might offer advantages, it also includes safety issues. Reduced visibility inherent in night work impacts the performance of both drivers and workers. Because traffic volumes are lower and congestion is minimized, speeds are often higher at night necessitating greater visibility at a time when visibility is reduced. Finally, the incidence of impaired (alcohol or drugs), fatigued, or drowsy drivers might be higher at night.

5 Working at night also involves other factors, including construction productivity and quality, social impacts, economics, and environmental issues. A decision to perform construction or maintenance activities at night normally involves some consideration of the advantages to be gained compared to the safety and other issues that might be impacted.

Guidance:

6 *Considering the safety issues inherent to night work, consideration should be given to enhancing traffic controls (see Section 6G.04) to provide added visibility and driver guidance, and increased protection for workers.*

7 *In addition to the enhancements listed in Section 6G.04, consideration should be given to providing additional lights and retroreflective markings to workers, work vehicles, and equipment.*

Option:

8 Where reduced traffic volumes at night make it feasible, the entire roadway may be closed by detouring traffic to alternate facilities, thus removing the traffic risk from the activity area.

Guidance:

9 *Consideration should be given to stationing uniformed law enforcement officers and lighted patrol cars at night work locations where there is a concern that high speeds or impaired drivers might result in undue risks for workers or other drivers.*

Standard:

10 **Except in emergencies, temporary lighting shall be provided at all flagger stations.**

Support:

11 Desired illumination levels vary depending upon the nature of the task involved. An average horizontal luminance of 5 foot candles can be adequate for general activities. An average horizontal luminance of 10 foot candles can be adequate for activities around equipment. Tasks requiring high levels of precision and extreme care can require an average horizontal luminance of 20 foot candles.

CHAPTER 6H. TYPICAL APPLICATIONS

Section 6H.01 Typical Applications

Support:

1 Chapter 6G contains discussions of typical TTC activities. This Chapter presents typical applications for a variety of situations commonly encountered. While not every situation is addressed, the information illustrated can generally be adapted to a broad range of conditions. In many instances, an appropriate TTC plan is achieved by combining features from various typical applications. For example, work at an intersection might present a near-side work zone for one street and a far-side work zone for the other street. These treatments are found in two different typical applications, while a third typical application shows how to handle pedestrian crosswalk closures. For convenience in using the typical application diagrams, Tables 6C-1 and 6C-4 are reproduced in this Chapter as Tables 6H-3 and 6H-4, respectively.

2 Procedures for establishing TTC zones vary with such conditions as road configuration, location of the work, work activity, duration of work, road user volumes, road vehicle mix (buses, trucks, cars, motorcycles, and bicycles), and road user speeds.

3 In general, the procedures illustrated represent minimum solutions for the situations depicted. Except for the notes (which are clearly classified using headings as being Standard, Guidance, Option, or Support), the information presented in the typical applications can generally be regarded as Guidance.

Option:

4 Other devices may be added to supplement the devices and device spacing may be adjusted to provide additional reaction time or delineation. Fewer devices may be used based on field conditions.

Support:

5 Figures and tables found throughout Part 6 provide information for the development of TTC plans. Also, Table 6H-3 is used for the determination of sign spacing and other dimensions for various area and roadway types.

6 Table 6H-1 is an index of the 46 typical applications. Typical applications are shown on the right-hand page with notes on the facing page to the left. The legend for the symbols used in the typical applications is provided in Table 6H-2. In many of the typical applications, sign spacings and other dimensions are indicated by letters using the criteria provided in Table 6H-3. The formulas for determining taper lengths are provided in Table 6H-4.

7 Most of the typical applications show TTC devices for only one direction.

Support:

The devices shown in a particular diagram indicate how devices can be used based on the foregoing text and do not create standards or guidance unless supported by a standard or guidance statement in the text or in the notes accompanying that diagram.

Table 6H-1. Index to Typical Applications

Typical Application Description	Typical Application Number
Work Outside of the Shoulder (see Section 6G.06)	
Work Beyond the Shoulder	TA-1
Blasting Zone	TA-2
Work on the Shoulder (see Sections 6G.07 and 6G.08)	
Work on the Shoulders	TA-3
Short Duration or Mobile Operation on a Shoulder	TA-4
Shoulder Closure on a Freeway	TA-5
Shoulder Work with Minor Encroachment	TA-6
Work Within the Traveled Way of a Two-Lane Highway (see Section 6G.10)	
Road Closed with a Diversion	TA-7
Roads Closed with an Off-Site Detour	TA-8
Overlapping Routes with a Detour	TA-9
Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Flaggers	TA-10
Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road with Low Traffic Volumes	TA-11
Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Traffic Control Signals	TA-12
Temporary Road Closure	TA-13
Haul Road Crossing	TA-14
Work in the Center of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes	TA-15
Surveying Along the Center Line of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes	TA-16
Mobile Operations on a Two-Lane Road	TA-17
Work Within the Traveled Way of an Urban Street (see Section 6G.11)	
Lane Closure on a Minor Street	TA-18
Detour for One Travel Direction	TA-19
Detour for a Closed Street	TA-20
Work Within the Traveled Way at an Intersection and on Sidewalks (see Section 6G.13)	
Lane Closure on the Near Side of an Intersection	TA-21
Right-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection	TA-22
Left-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection	TA-23
Half Road Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection	TA-24
Multiple Lane Closures at an Intersection	TA-25
Closure in the Center of an Intersection	TA-26
Closure at the Side of an Intersection	TA-27
Sidewalk Detour or Diversion	TA-28
Crosswalk Closures and Pedestrian Detours	TA-29
Work Within the Traveled Way of a Multi-Lane, Non-Access Controlled Highway (see Section 6G.12)	
Interior Lane Closure on a Multi-Lane Street	TA-30
Lane Closure on a Street with Uneven Directional Volumes	TA-31
Half Road Closure on a Multi-Lane, High-Speed Highway	TA-32
Stationary Lane Closure on a Divided Highway	TA-33
Lane Closure with a Temporary Traffic Barrier	TA-34
Mobile Operation on a Multi-Lane Road	TA-35
Work Within the Traveled Way of a Freeway or Expressway (see Section 6G.14)	
Lane Shift on a Freeway	TA-36
Double Lane Closure on a Freeway	TA-37
Interior Lane Closure on a Freeway	TA-38
Median Crossover on a Freeway	TA-39
Median Crossover for an Entrance Ramp	TA-40
Median Crossover for an Exit Ramp	TA-41
Work in the Vicinity of an Exit Ramp	TA-42
Partial Exit Ramp Closure	TA-43
Work in the Vicinity of an Entrance Ramp	TA-44
Temporary Reversible Lane Using Movable Barriers	TA-45
Work in the Vicinity of a Grade Crossing (see Section 6G.18)	
Work in the Vicinity of a Grade Crossing	TA-46

Table 6H-2. Meaning of Symbols on Typical Application Diagrams

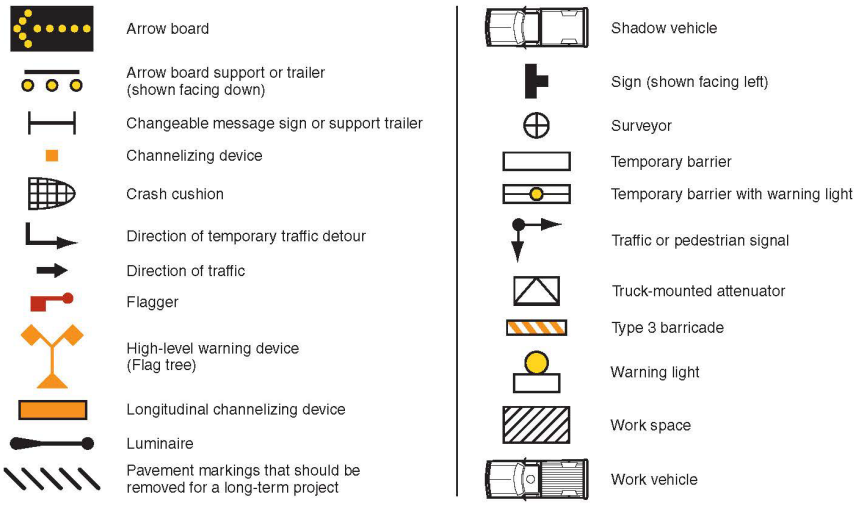


Table 6H-3. Meaning of Letter Codes on Typical Application Diagrams

Road Type	Distance Between Signs**		
	A	B	C
Urban (low speed 25-30 mph)*	100 feet	100 feet	100 feet
Urban (high speed 35-40 mph)*	350 feet	350 feet	350 feet
Rural	500 feet	500 feet	500 feet
Expressway / Freeway	1,000 feet	1,500 feet	2,640 feet

* Speed category to be determined by the highway agency

** The column headings A, B, and C are the dimensions shown in Figures 6H-1 through 6H-46. The A dimension is the distance from the transition or point of restriction to the first sign. The B dimension is the distance between the first and second signs. The C dimension is the distance between the second and third signs. (The "first sign" is the sign in a three-sign series that is closest to the TTC zone. The "third sign" is the sign that is furthest upstream from the TTC zone.) The distance between signs (A, B, and C) should be approximately 200 feet. For urban low speed roads, where field conditions such as location of intersections, trees, existing signs or other obstructions dictate, the distance between signs (A, B, and C) may be as short as 100 feet.

Table 6H-3.

Guidance:

The following should be used to differentiate Urban (low speed) roads from Urban (high speed) roads:

Urban (low speed): Speed limits of 25-30 mph.

Urban (high speed): Speed limits of 35-40 mph.

For urban low speed roads, the distance between signs (A, B, and C) should be approximately 200 feet.

Option:

For urban low speed roads, where field conditions such as location of intersections, trees, existing signs or other obstructions dictate, the distance between signs (A, B, and C) may be as short as 100 feet.

Table 6H-4. Formulas for Determining Taper Length

Speed (S)	Taper Length (L) in feet
40 mph or less	$L = \frac{WS^2}{60}$
45 mph or more	$L = WS$

Where: L = taper length in feet
W = width of offset in feet
S = posted speed limit, or off-peak 85th-percentile speed prior to work starting, or the anticipated operating speed in mph

Notes for Figure 6H-1—Typical Application 1
Work Beyond a Shoulder

Guidance:

1. *If the work space is in the median of a divided highway, an advance warning sign should also be placed on the left-hand side of the directional roadway.*

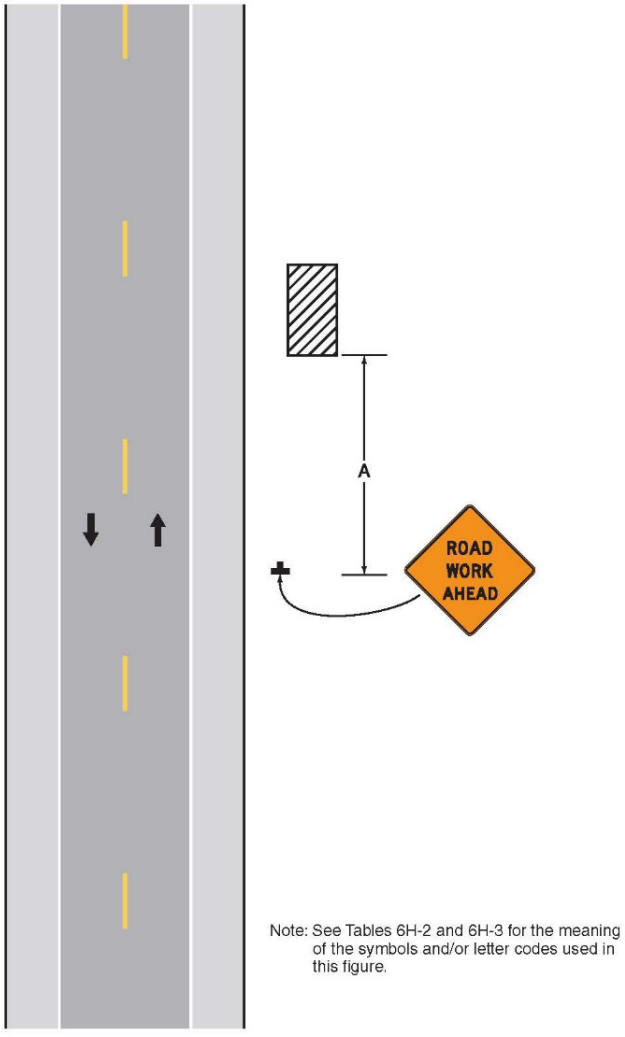
Option:

2. The ROAD WORK AHEAD sign may be replaced with other appropriate signs such as the SHOULDER WORK sign. The SHOULDER WORK sign may be used for work adjacent to the shoulder.
3. The ROAD WORK AHEAD sign may be omitted where the work space is behind a barrier, more than 24 inches behind the curb, or 15 feet or more from the edge of any roadway.
4. For short-term, short duration or mobile operation, all signs and channelizing devices may be eliminated if a vehicle with activated high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights is used.
5. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Standard:

6. **Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**

Figure 6H-1. Work Beyond the Shoulder (TA-1)



Typical Application 1

Notes for Figure 6H-2—Typical Application 2
Blasting Zone

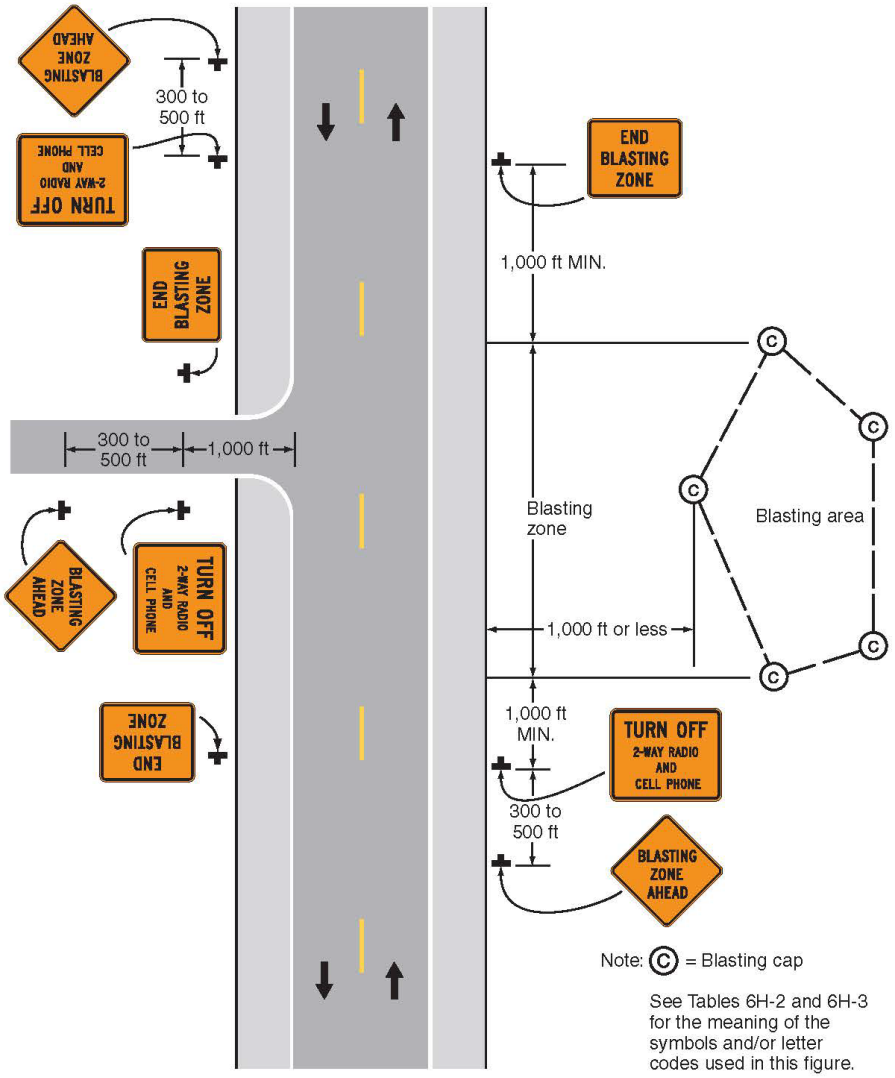
Standard:

1. **Whenever blasting caps are used within 1,000 feet of a roadway, the signing shown shall be used.**
2. **The signs shall be covered or removed when there are no explosives in the area or the area is otherwise secure.**
3. **Whenever a side road intersects the roadway between the BLASTING ZONE AHEAD sign and the END BLASTING ZONE sign, or a side road is within 1,000 feet of any blasting cap, similar signing, as on the mainline, shall be installed on the side road.**
4. **Prior to blasting, the blaster in charge shall determine whether road users in the blasting zone will be endangered by the blasting operation. If there is danger, road users shall not be permitted to pass through the blasting zone during blasting operations.**

Guidance:

5. *On a divided highway, the signs should be mounted on both sides of the directional roadways.*

Figure 6H-2. Blasting Zone (TA-2)



Typical Application 2

Notes for Figure 6H-3—Typical Application 3
Work on Shoulders

Guidance:

1. *A SHOULDER WORK sign should be placed on the left-hand side of the roadway for a divided or one-way street only if the left-hand shoulder is affected.*

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Option:

2. The Workers symbol signs may be used instead of SHOULDER WORK signs.
3. The SHOULDER WORK AHEAD sign on an intersecting roadway may be omitted where drivers emerging from that roadway will encounter another advance warning sign prior to this activity area.
4. For short duration operations of 60 minutes or less, all signs and channelizing devices may be eliminated if a vehicle with activated high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights is used.
5. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

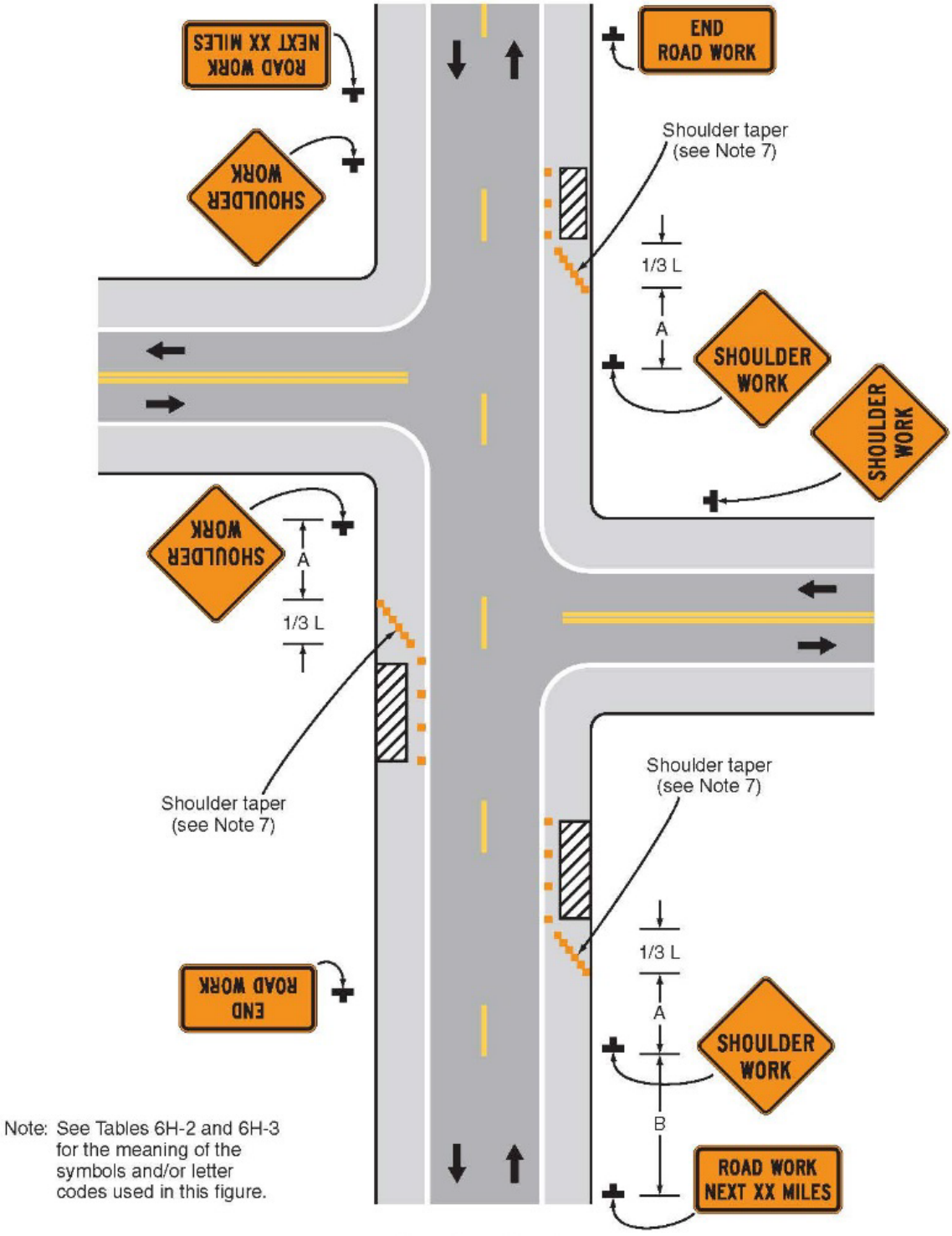
The ROAD WORK NEXT X MILES (G20-1) sign may be omitted.

Figures 6H-3, 6H-6, 6H-10, 6H-12, 6H-15, 6H-23, 6H-24, 6H-25, 6H-26, 6H-27, 6H-32, 6H-33, 6H-37, 6H-43, 6H-44 and 6H-46.

Standard:

6. **Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**
7. **When paved shoulders having a width of 8 feet or more are closed, at least one advance warning sign shall be used. In addition, channelizing devices shall be used to close the shoulder in advance to delineate the beginning of the work space and direct vehicular traffic to remain within the traveled way.**

Figure 6H-3. Work on the Shoulders (TA-3)



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 3

Notes for Figure 6H-4—Typical Application 4
Short Duration or Mobile Operation on a Shoulder

Guidance:

1. *In those situations where multiple work locations within a limited distance make it practical to place stationary signs, the distance between the advance warning sign and the work should not exceed 5 miles.*
2. *In those situations where the distance between the advance signs and the work is 2 miles to 5 miles, a Supplemental Distance plaque should be used with the ROAD WORK AHEAD sign.* The Supplemental Distance plaque may be omitted.

Option:

3. The ROAD WORK NEXT XX MILES sign may be used instead of the ROAD WORK AHEAD sign if the work locations occur over a distance of more than 2 miles.
4. Stationary warning signs may be omitted for short duration or mobile operations if the work vehicle displays high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.
5. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

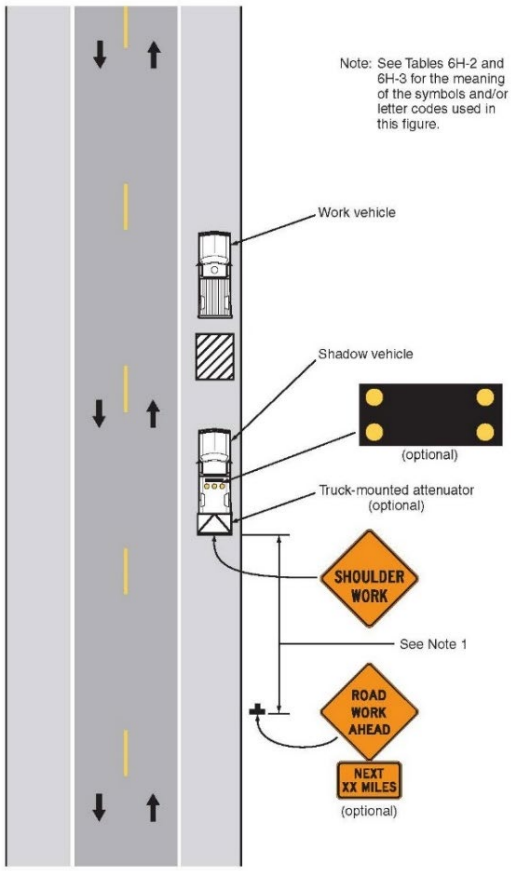
Standard:

6. **Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**
7. **If an arrow board is used for an operation on the shoulder, the caution mode shall be used.**
8. **Vehicle-mounted signs shall be mounted in a manner such that they are not obscured by equipment or supplies. Sign legends on vehicle-mounted signs shall be covered or turned from view when work is not in progress.**

Option:

The shadow vehicle may be omitted.

Figure 6H-4. Short-Duration or Mobile Operation on a Shoulder (TA-4)



Typical Application 4

Notes for Figure 6H-5—Typical Application 5
Shoulder Closure on a Freeway

Guidance:

1. *SHOULDER CLOSED signs should be used on limited-access highways where there is no opportunity for disabled vehicles to pull off the roadway.*
2. *If drivers cannot see a pull-off area beyond the closed shoulder, information regarding the length of the shoulder closure should be provided in feet or miles, as appropriate.*
3. *The use of a temporary traffic barrier should be based on engineering judgment.*

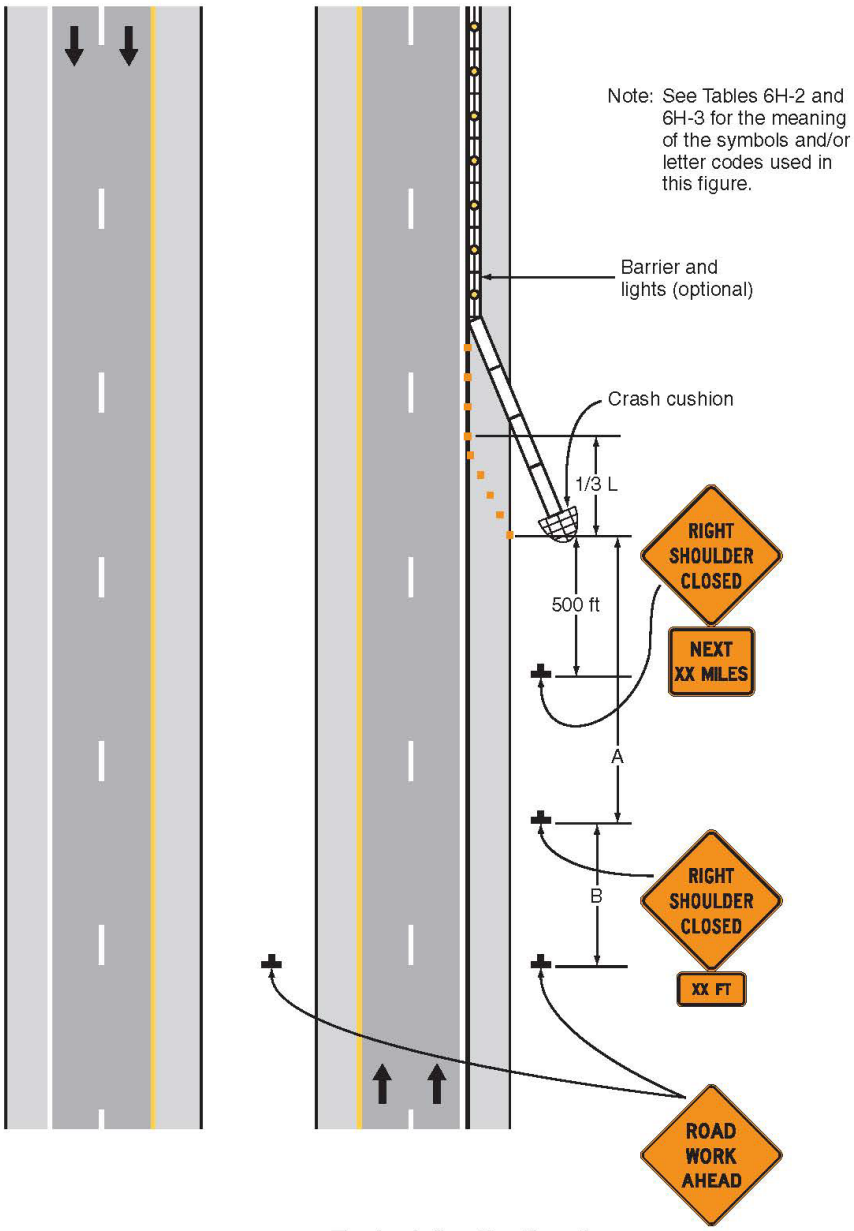
Standard:

4. Temporary traffic barriers, if used, shall comply with the provisions of Section 6F.85.

Option:

5. The barrier shown in this typical application is an example of one method that may be used to close a shoulder of a long-term project.
6. The warning lights shown on the barrier may be used.

Figure 6H-5. Shoulder Closure on a Freeway (TA-5)



Typical Application 5

Notes for Figure 6H-6—Typical Application 6
Shoulder Work with Minor Encroachment

Guidance:

1. *All lanes should be a minimum of 10 feet in width as measured to the near face of the channelizing devices.*
2. *The treatment shown should be used on a minor road having low speeds. For higher-speed traffic conditions, a lane closure should be used.*

Option:

3. For short-term use on low-volume, low-speed roadways with vehicular traffic that does not include longer and wider heavy commercial vehicles, a minimum lane width of 9 feet may be used.
4. Where the opposite shoulder is suitable for carrying vehicular traffic and of adequate width, lanes may be shifted by use of closely-spaced channelizing devices, provided that the minimum lane width of 10 feet is maintained.
5. Additional advance warning may be appropriate, such as a ROAD NARROWS sign.
6. Temporary traffic barriers may be used along the work space.
7. The shadow vehicle may be omitted if a taper and channelizing devices are used.
8. A truck-mounted attenuator may be used on the shadow vehicle.
9. For short-duration work, the taper and channelizing devices may be omitted if a shadow vehicle with activated high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights is used.
10. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

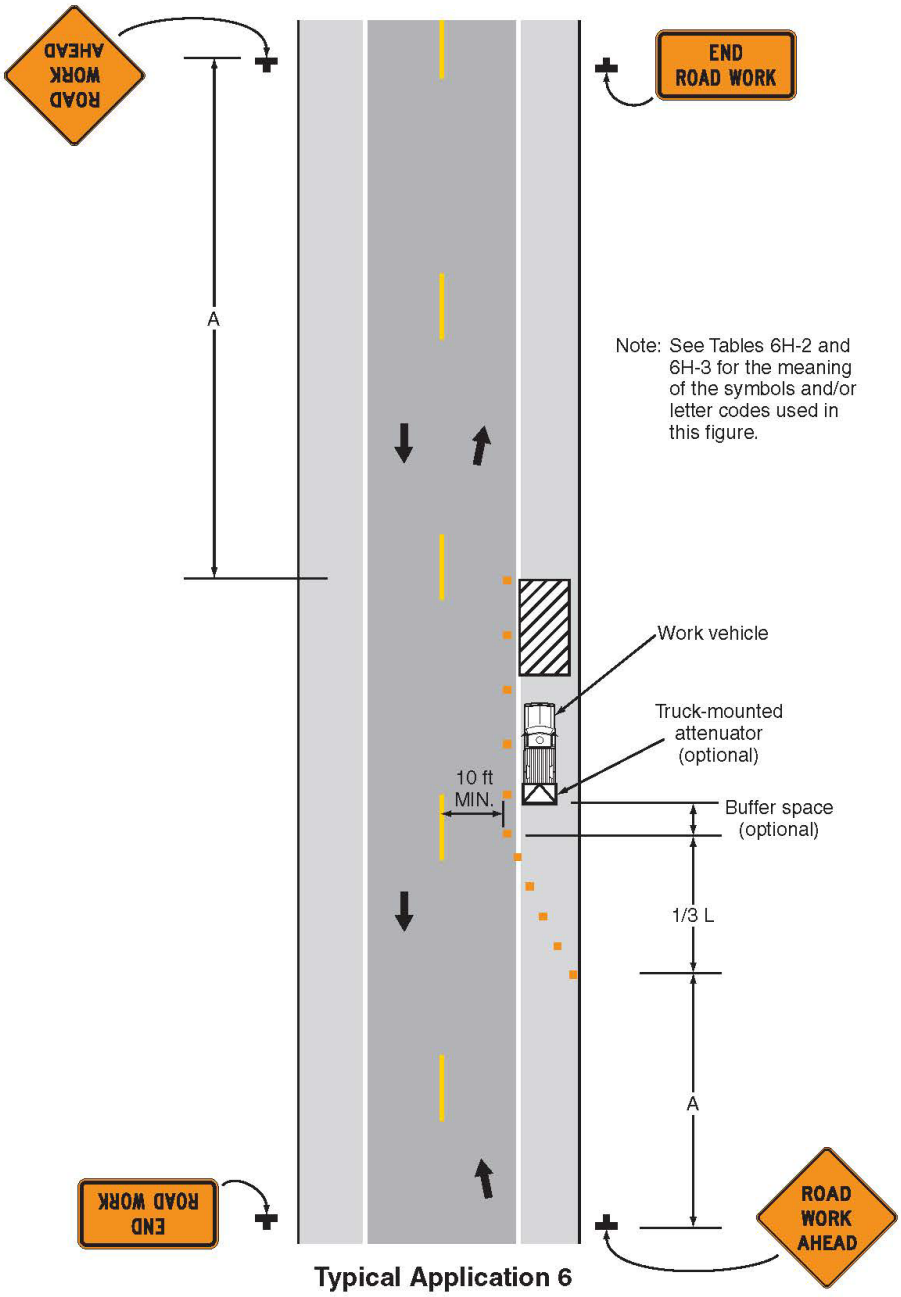
Standard:

11. **Vehicle-mounted signs shall be mounted in a manner such that they are not obscured by equipment or supplies. Sign legends on vehicle-mounted signs shall be covered or turned from view when work is not in progress.**
12. **Shadow and work vehicles shall display high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**
13. **Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**

Guidance:

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-6. Shoulder Work with Minor Encroachment (TA-6)



Typical Application 6

Notes for Figure 6H-7—Typical Application 7
Road Closure with a Diversion

Support:

1. Signs and object markers are shown for one direction of travel only.

Standard:

2. **Devices similar to those depicted shall be placed for the opposite direction of travel.**
3. **Pavement markings no longer applicable to the traffic pattern of the roadway shall be removed or obliterated before any new traffic patterns are open to traffic.**
4. **Temporary barriers and end treatments shall be crashworthy.**

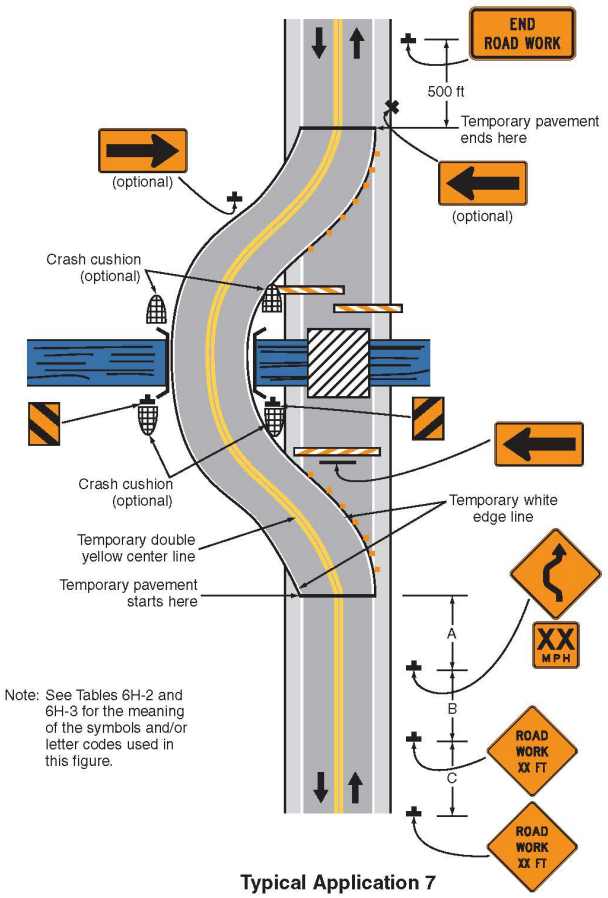
Guidance:

5. *If the tangent distance along the temporary diversion is more than 600 feet, a Reverse Curve sign, left first, should be used instead of the Double Reverse Curve sign, and a second Reverse Curve sign, right first, should be placed in advance of the second reverse curve back to the original alignment.*
6. *When the tangent section of the diversion is more than 600 feet, and the diversion has sharp curves with recommended speeds of 30 mph or less, Reverse Turn signs should be used.*
7. *Where the temporary pavement and old pavement are different colors, the temporary pavement should start on the tangent of the existing pavement and end on the tangent of the existing pavement.*

Option:

8. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the warning signs.
9. On sharp curves, large arrow signs may be used in addition to other advance warning signs.
10. Delineators or channelizing devices may be used along the diversion.

Figure 6H-7. Road Closure with a Diversion (TA-7)



Typical Application 7

Notes for Figure 6H-8—Typical Application 8
Road Closure with an Off-Site Detour

Guidance:

1. *Regulatory traffic control devices should be modified as needed for the duration of the detour.*

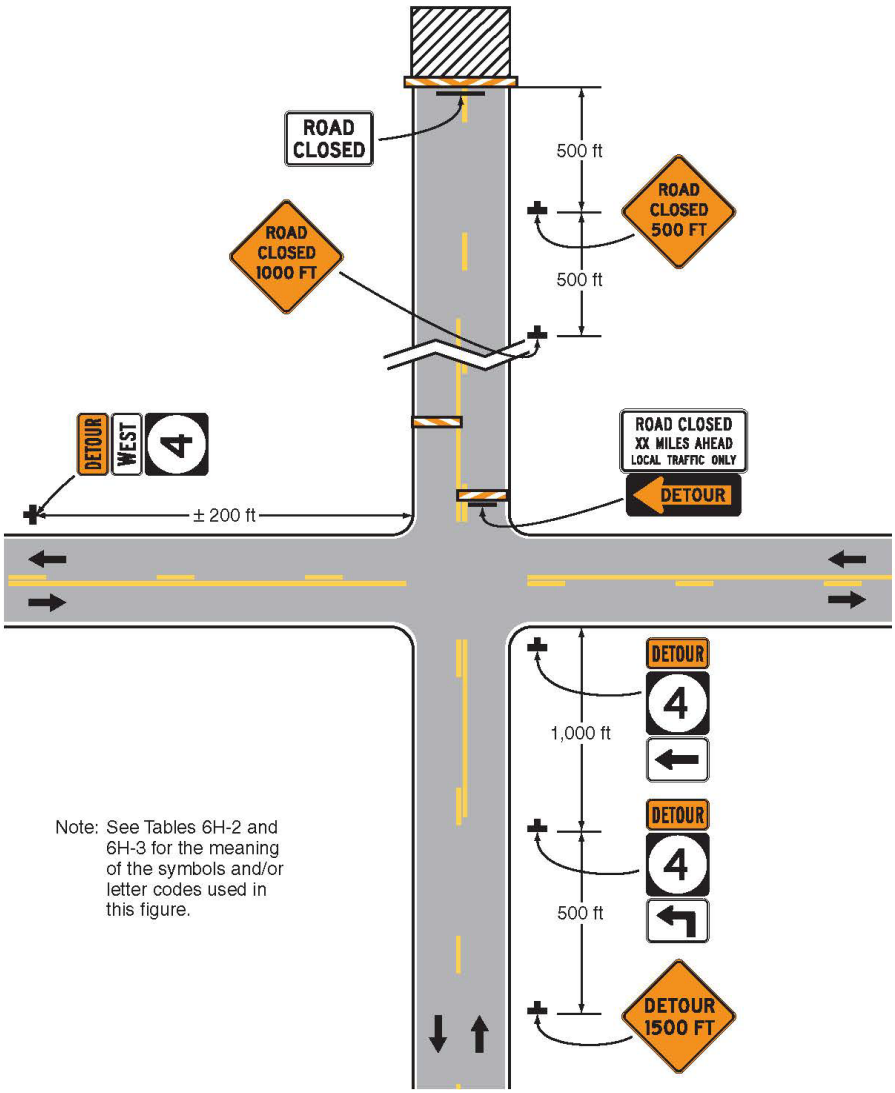
Option:

2. If the road is opened for some distance beyond the intersection and/or there are significant origin/destination points beyond the intersection, the ROAD CLOSED and DETOUR signs on Type 3 Barricades may be located at the edge of the traveled way.
3. A Route Sign Directional assembly may be placed on the far left corner of the intersection to augment or replace the one shown on the near right corner.
4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
5. Cardinal direction plaques may be used with route signs.

The advance route turn sign assembly may be placed as close as 500 feet to the intersection or other distance as determined by engineering judgment.

The M4-9 sign may be used for the Detour Arrow sign in lieu of the M4-10 sign.

Figure 6H-8. Road Closure with an Off-Site Detour (TA-8)



Typical Application 8

Notes for Figure 6H-9—Typical Application 9
Overlapping Routes with a Detour

Support:

1. TTC devices are shown for one direction of travel only.

Standard:

2. Devices similar to those depicted shall be placed for the opposite direction of travel.

Guidance:

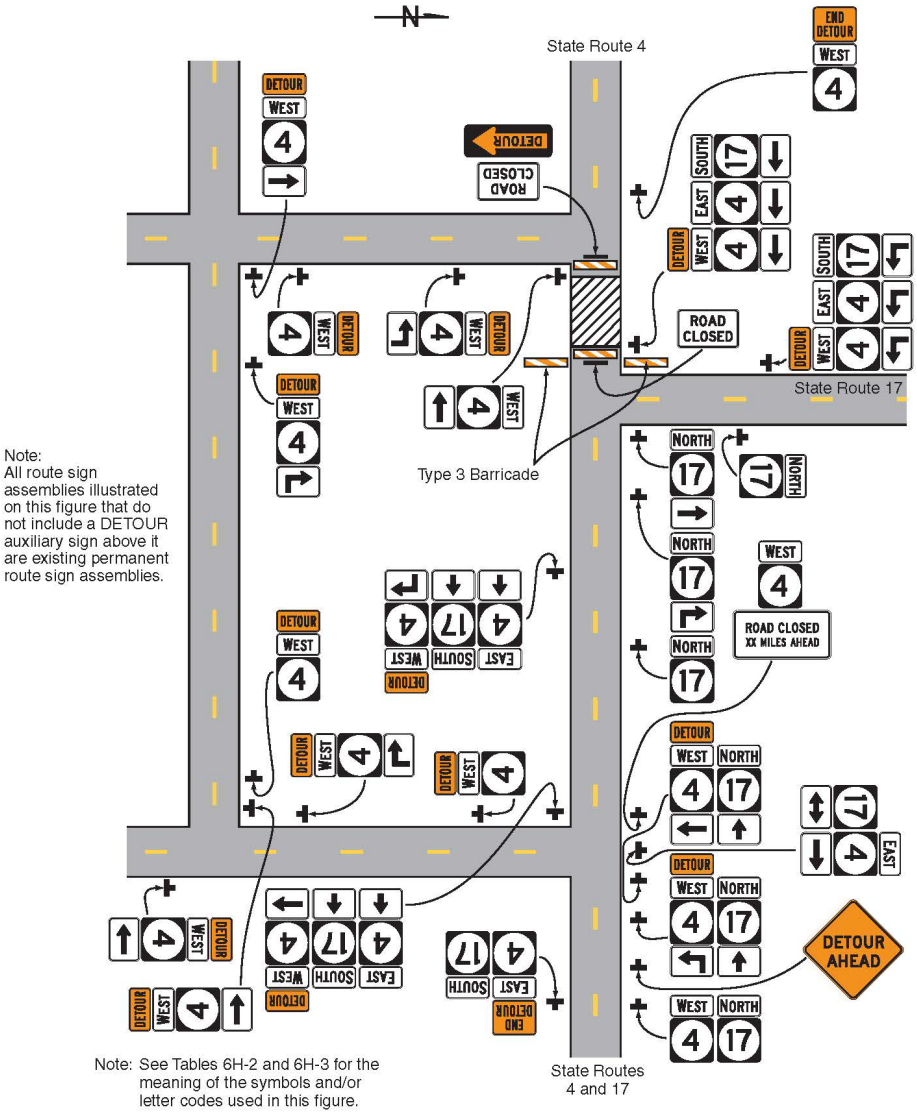
3. STOP or YIELD signs displayed to side roads should be installed as needed along the temporary route.

Option:

4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
5. Flashing warning lights may be used on the Type 3 Barricades.
6. Cardinal direction plaques may be used with route signs.

The M4-9 sign may be used for the Detour Arrow sign in lieu of the M4-10 sign.
The END DETOUR (M4-8a) sign may be omitted.

Figure 6H-9. Overlapping Routes with a Detour (TA-9)



Typical Application 9

Notes for Figure 6H-10—Typical Application 10
Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Flaggers

Option:

1. For low-volume situations with short work zones on straight roadways where the flagger is visible to road users approaching from both directions, a single flagger, positioned to be visible to road users approaching from both directions, may be used (see Chapter 6E).
2. The ROAD WORK AHEAD and the END ROAD WORK signs may be omitted for short-duration operations.
3. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs. A BE PREPARED TO STOP sign may be added to the sign series.

Guidance:

4. *The buffer space should be extended so that the two-way traffic taper is placed before a horizontal (or crest vertical) curve to provide adequate sight distance for the flagger and a queue of stopped vehicles.*

Standard:

5. **At night, flagger stations shall be illuminated, except in emergencies.**

Guidance:

6. *When used, the BE PREPARED TO STOP sign should be located between the Flagger sign and the ONE LANE ROAD sign.*
7. *When a grade crossing exists within or upstream of the transition area and it is anticipated that queues resulting from the lane closure might extend through the grade crossing, the TTC zone should be extended so that the transition area precedes the grade crossing.*
8. *When a grade crossing equipped with active warning devices exists within the activity area, provisions should be made for keeping flaggers informed as to the activation status of these warning devices.*
9. *When a grade crossing exists within the activity area, drivers operating on the left-hand side of the normal center line should be provided with comparable warning devices as for drivers operating on the right-hand side of the normal center line.*
10. *Early coordination with the railroad company or light rail transit agency should occur before work starts.*

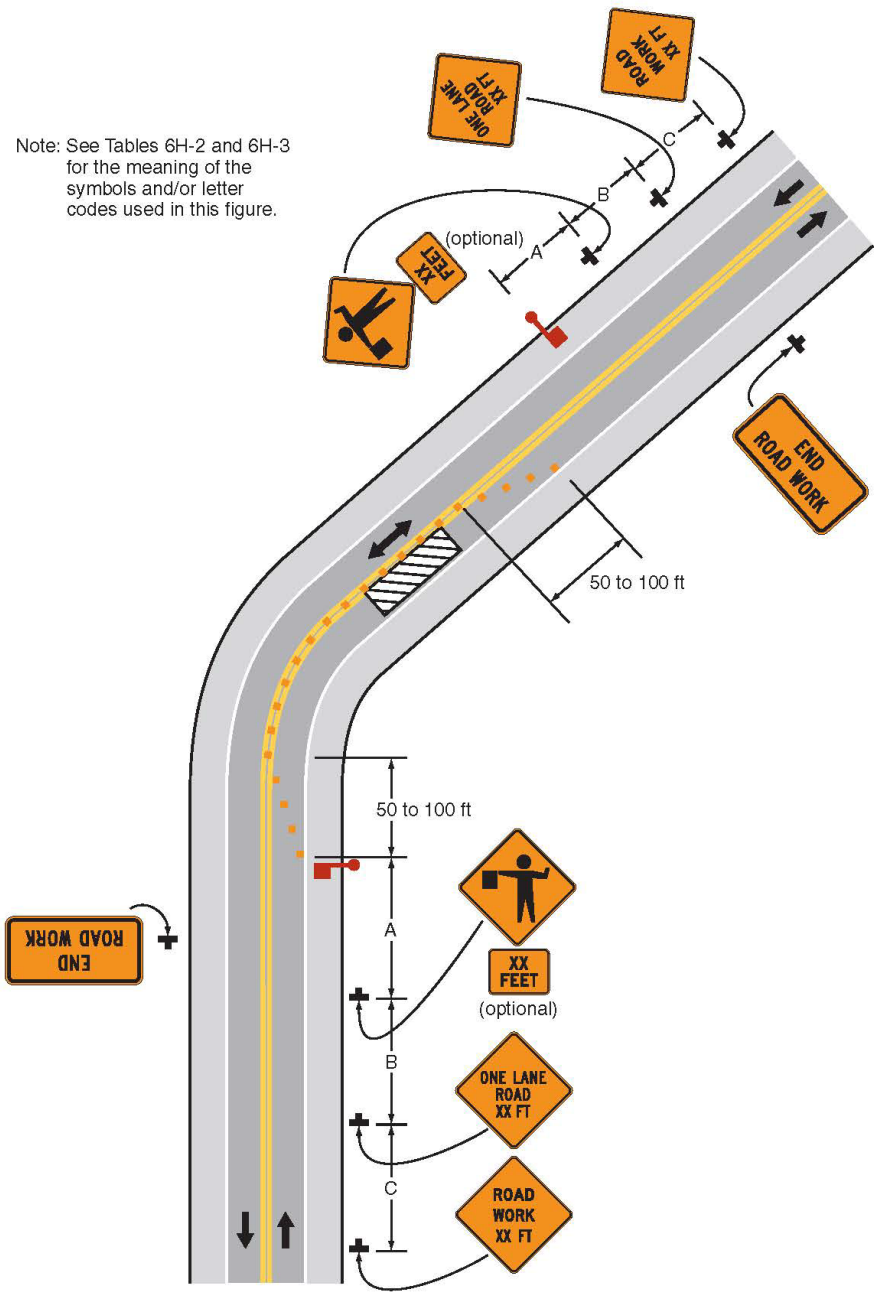
Option:

11. A flagger or a uniformed law enforcement officer may be used at the grade crossing to minimize the probability that vehicles are stopped within 15 feet of the grade crossing, measured from both sides of the outside rails.

Guidance:

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-10. Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Flaggers (TA-10)



Typical Application 10

Notes for Figure 6H-11—Typical Application 11
Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road with Low Traffic Volumes

Option:

1. This TTC zone application may be used as an alternate to the TTC application shown in Figure 6H-10 (using flaggers) when the following conditions exist:
   a. Vehicular traffic volume is such that sufficient gaps exist for vehicular traffic that must yield.
   b. Road users from both directions are able to see approaching vehicular traffic through and beyond the worksite and have sufficient visibility of approaching vehicles.
2. The Type B flashing warning lights may be placed on the ROAD WORK AHEAD and the ONE LANE ROAD AHEAD signs whenever a night lane closure is necessary.

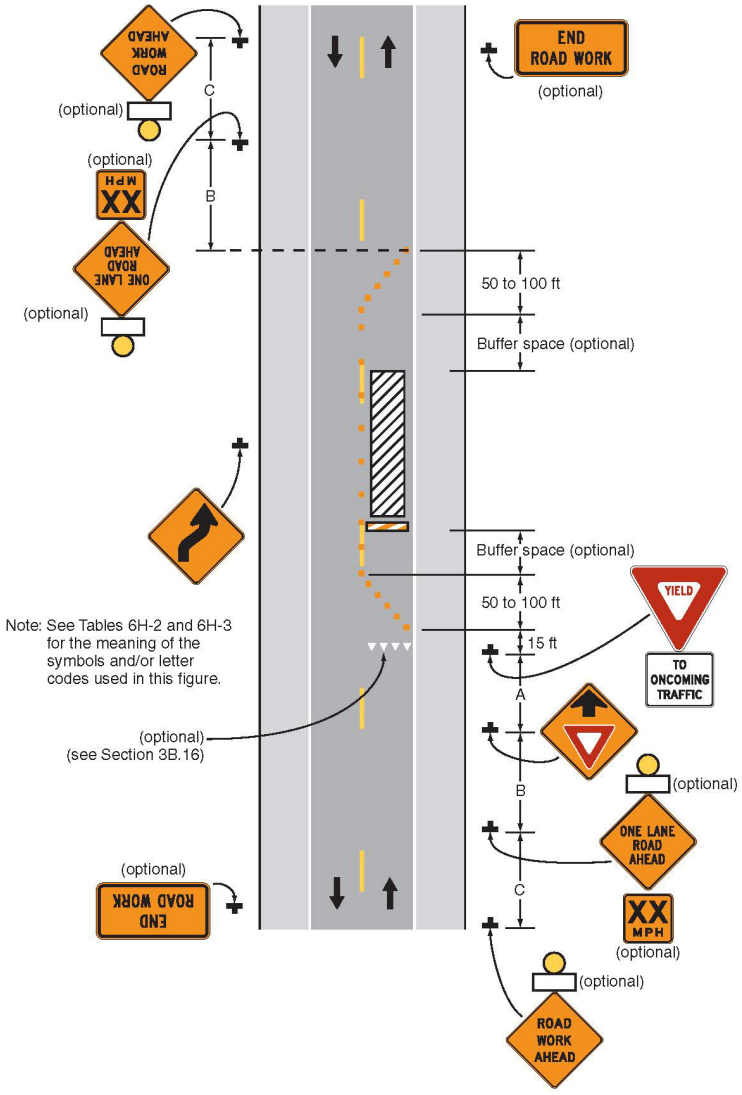
Standard:

Yield-sign control shall not be used at one-lane, two-way sites on State Trunk Highways, Connecting Highways, or any other roadways declared as through highways.

Option:

At one-lane, two-way sites on State Trunk Highways, Connecting Highways, or other roadways declared as through highways, Figures 6H-10, 6H-12, 6H-18, or STOP signs for both directions of travel may be used as appropriate for conditions at the site.

Figure 6H-11. Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road with Low Traffic Volumes (TA-11)



Typical Application 11

Notes for Figure 6H-12—Typical Application 12
Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Traffic Control Signals

Standard:

1. **Temporary traffic control signals shall be installed and operated in accordance with the provisions of Part 4. Temporary traffic control signals shall meet the physical display and operational requirements of conventional traffic control signals.**
2. **Temporary traffic control signal timing shall be established by authorized officials. Durations of red clearance intervals shall be adequate to clear the one-lane section of conflicting vehicles.**
3. **When the temporary traffic control signal is changed to the flashing mode, either manually or automatically, red signal indications shall be flashed to both approaches.**
4. **Stop lines shall be installed with temporary traffic control signals for intermediate and long-term closures. Existing conflicting pavement markings and raised pavement marker reflectors between the activity area and the stop line shall be removed. After the temporary traffic control signal is removed, the stop lines and other temporary pavement markings shall be removed and the permanent pavement markings restored.**
5. **Safeguards shall be incorporated to avoid the possibility of conflicting signal indications at each end of the TTC zone.**

Guidance:

6. *Where no-passing lines are not already in place, they should be added.*
7. *Adjustments in the location of the advance warning signs should be made as needed to accommodate the horizontal or vertical alignment of the roadway, recognizing that the distances shown for sign spacings are minimums. Adjustments in the height of the signal heads should be made as needed to conform to the vertical alignment.*

Option:

8. Flashing warning lights shown on the ROAD WORK AHEAD and the ONE LANE ROAD AHEAD signs may be used.
9. Removable pavement markings may be used.

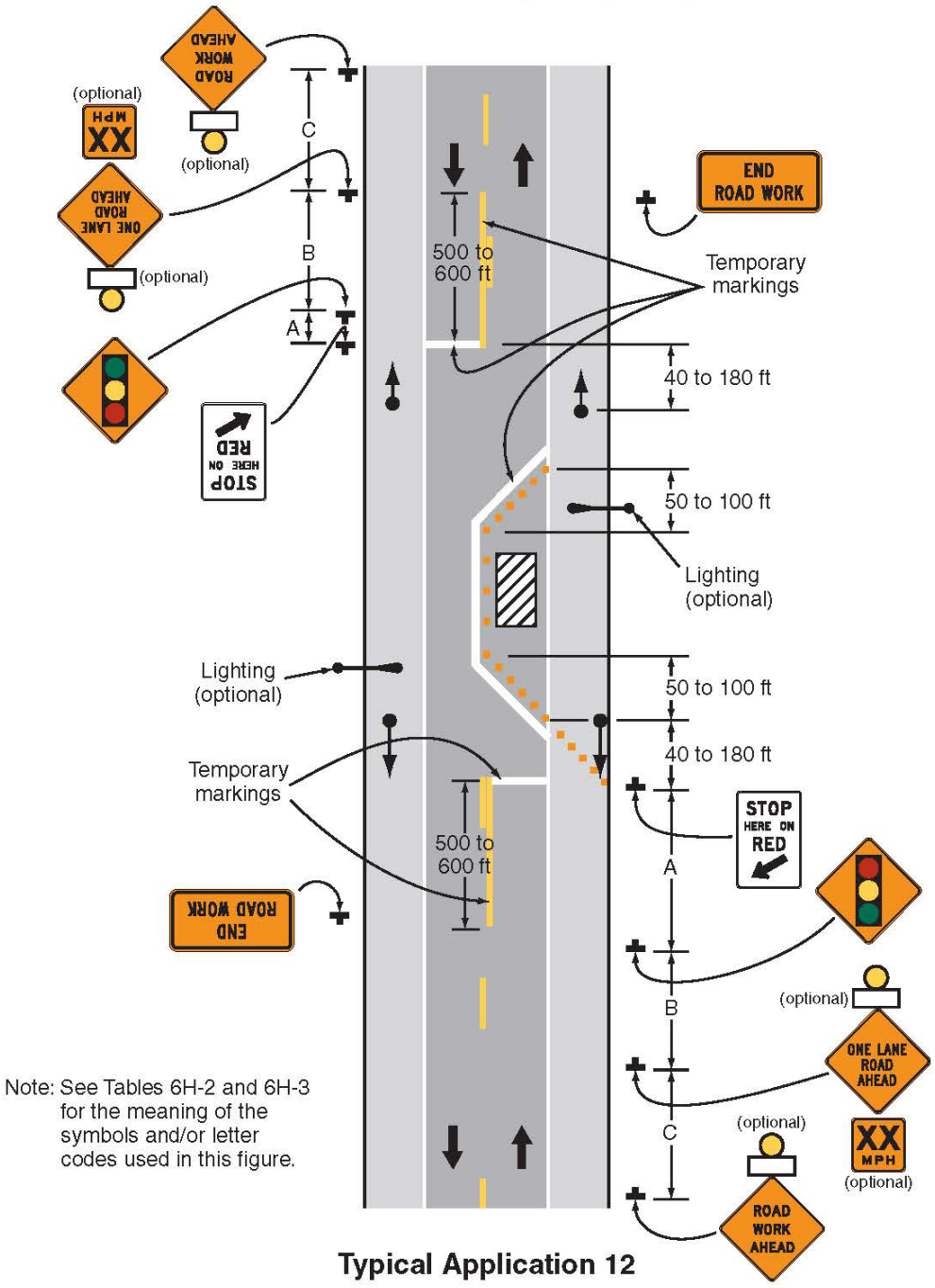
Support:

10. Temporary traffic control signals are preferable to flaggers for long-term projects and other activities that would require flagging at night.
11. The maximum length of activity area for one-way operation under temporary traffic control signal control is determined by the capacity required to handle the peak demand.

Guidance:

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-12. Lane Closure on a Two-Lane Road Using Traffic Control Signals (TA-12)



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 12

Notes for Figure 6H-13—Typical Application 13
Temporary Road Closure

Support:

1. Conditions represented are a planned closure not exceeding 20 minutes during the daytime.

Standard:

2. A flagger or uniformed law enforcement officer shall be used for this application. The flagger, if used for this application, shall follow the procedures provided in Sections 6E.07 and 6E.08.

Guidance:

3. The uniformed law enforcement officer, if used for this application, should follow the procedures provided in Sections 6E.07 and 6E.08.

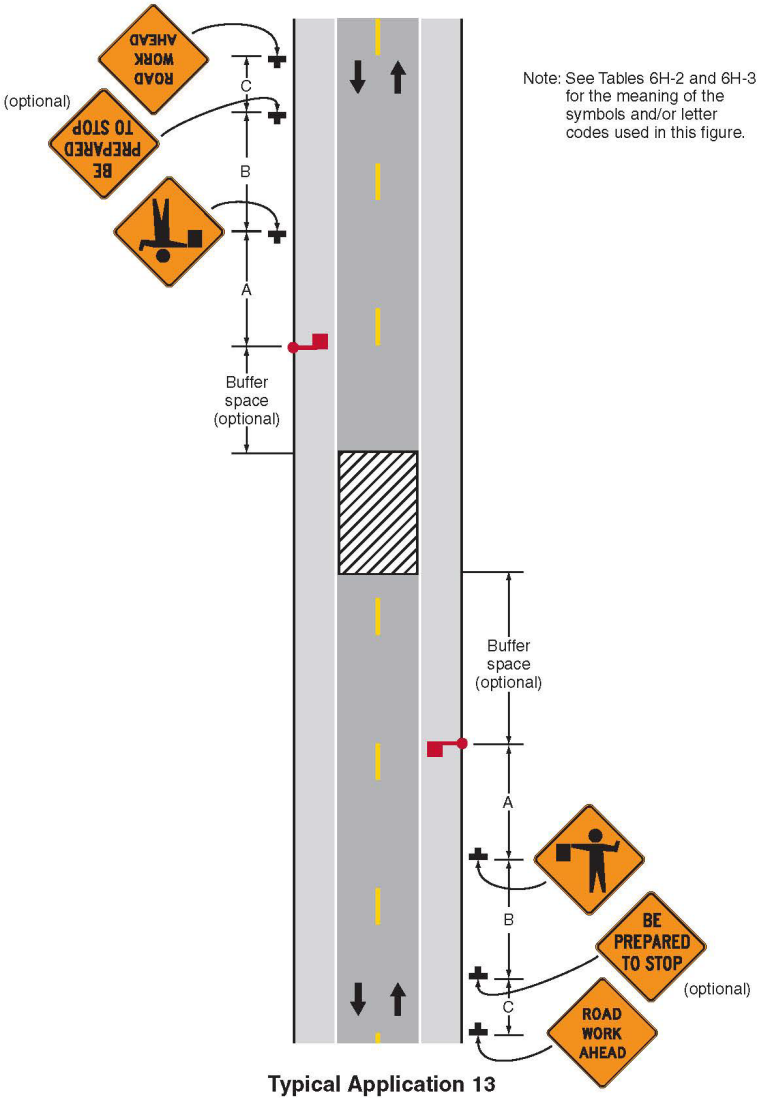
Option:

4. A BE PREPARED TO STOP sign may be added to the sign series.

Guidance:

5. When used, the BE PREPARED TO STOP sign should be located before the Flagger symbol sign.

Figure 6H-13. Temporary Road Closure (TA-13)



Typical Application 13

Notes for Figure 6H-14—Typical Application 14
Haul Road Crossing

Guidance:

1. *Floodlights should be used to illuminate haul road crossings where existing light is inadequate.*
2. *Where no-passing lines are not already in place, they should be added.*

Option:

As shown on the typical application drawing, the no passing lines are optional.

Standard:

3. **The traffic control method selected shall be used in both directions.**

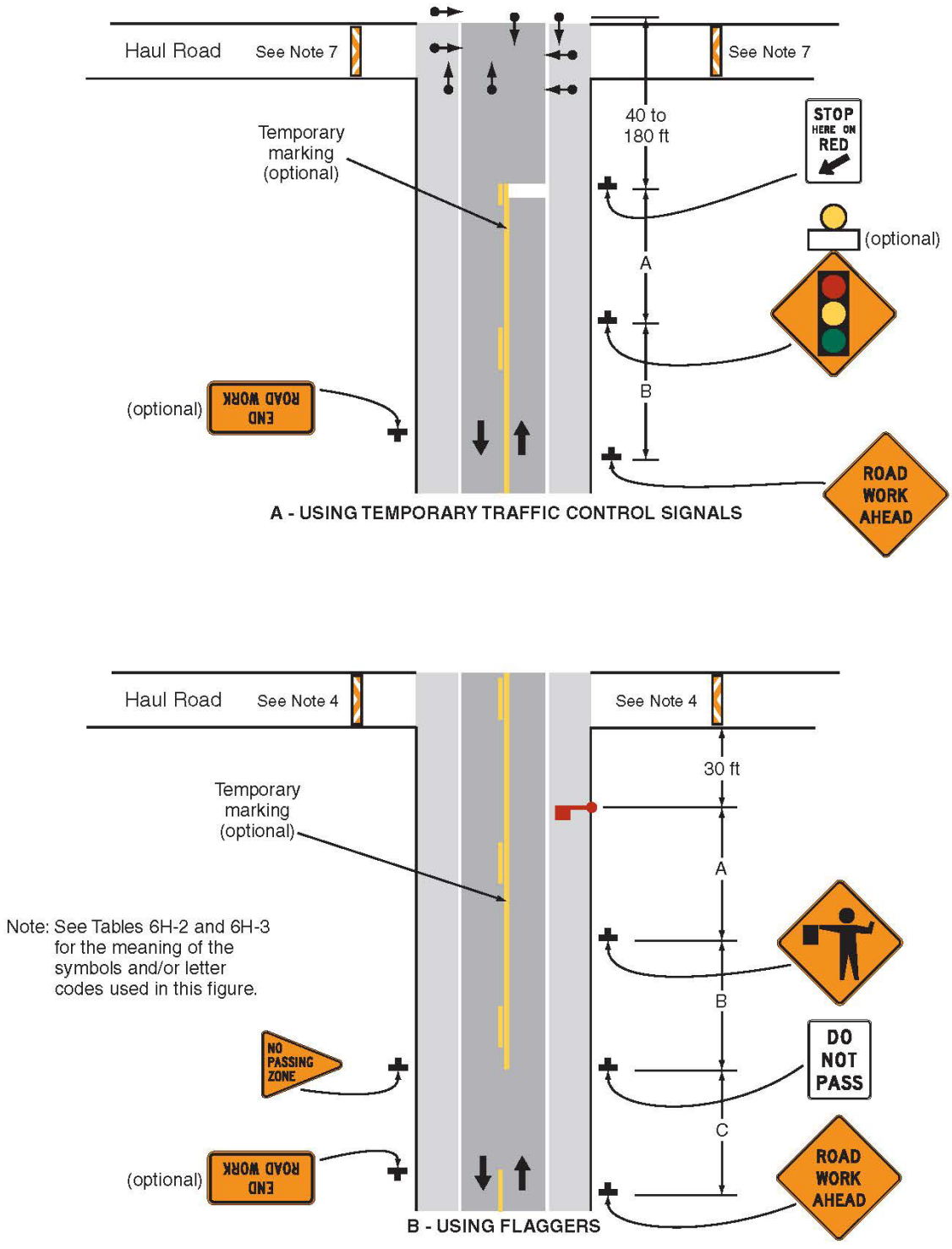
Flagging Method

4. **When a road used exclusively as a haul road is not in use, the haul road shall be closed with Type 3 Barricades and the Flagger symbol signs covered.**
5. **The flagger shall follow the procedures provided in Sections 6E.07 and 6E.08.**
6. **At night, flagger stations shall be illuminated, except in emergencies.**

Signalized Method

7. **When a road used exclusively as a haul road is not in use, the haul road shall be closed with Type 3 Barricades. The signals shall either flash yellow on the main road or be covered, and the Signal Ahead and STOP HERE ON RED signs shall be covered or hidden from view.**
8. **The temporary traffic control signals shall control both the highway and the haul road and shall meet the physical display and operational requirements of conventional traffic control signals as described in Part 4. Traffic control signal timing shall be established by authorized officials.**
9. **Stop lines shall be used on existing highway with temporary traffic control signals.**
10. **Existing conflicting pavements markings between the stop lines shall be removed. After the temporary traffic control signal is removed, the stop lines and other temporary pavement markings shall be removed and the permanent pavement markings restored.**

Figure 6H-14. Haul Road Crossing (TA-14)



Typical Application 14

Notes for Figure 6H-15—Typical Application 15
Work in the Center of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes

Guidance:

1. *The lanes on either side of the center work space should have a minimum width of 10 feet as measured from the near edge of the channelizing devices to the edge of the pavement or the outside edge of the paved shoulder.*

Option:

2. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
3. If the closure continues overnight, warning lights may be used on the channelizing devices.
4. A lane width of 9 feet may be used for short-term stationary work on low-volume, low-speed roadways when motor vehicle traffic does not include longer and wider heavy commercial vehicles.
5. A work vehicle displaying high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights may be used instead of the channelizing devices forming the tapers or the high-level warning devices.
6. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

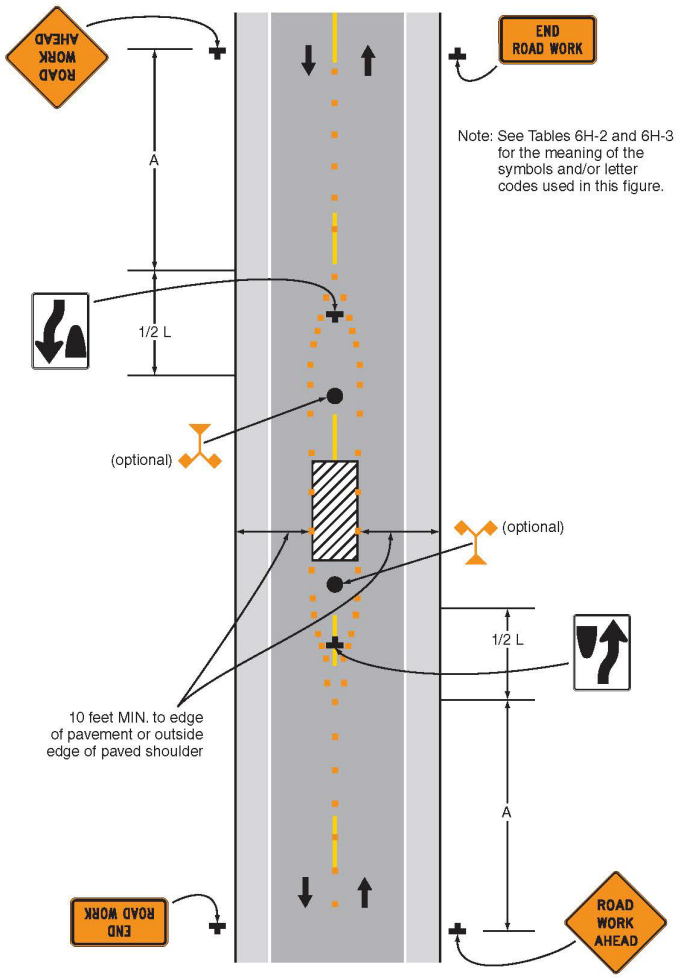
Standard:

7. Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Guidance:

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-15. Work in the Center of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes (TA-15)



Typical Application 15

Notes for Figure 6H-16—Typical Application 16
Surveying Along the Center Line of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes

Guidance:

1. *The lanes on either side of the center work space should have a minimum width of 10 feet as measured from the near edge of the channelizing devices to the edge of the pavement or the outside edge of the paved shoulder.*
2. *Cones should be placed 6 to 12 inches on either side of the center line.*
3. *A flagger should be used to warn workers who cannot watch road users.*

Standard:

4. **For surveying on the center line of a high-volume road, one lane shall be closed using the information illustrated in Figure 6H-10.**

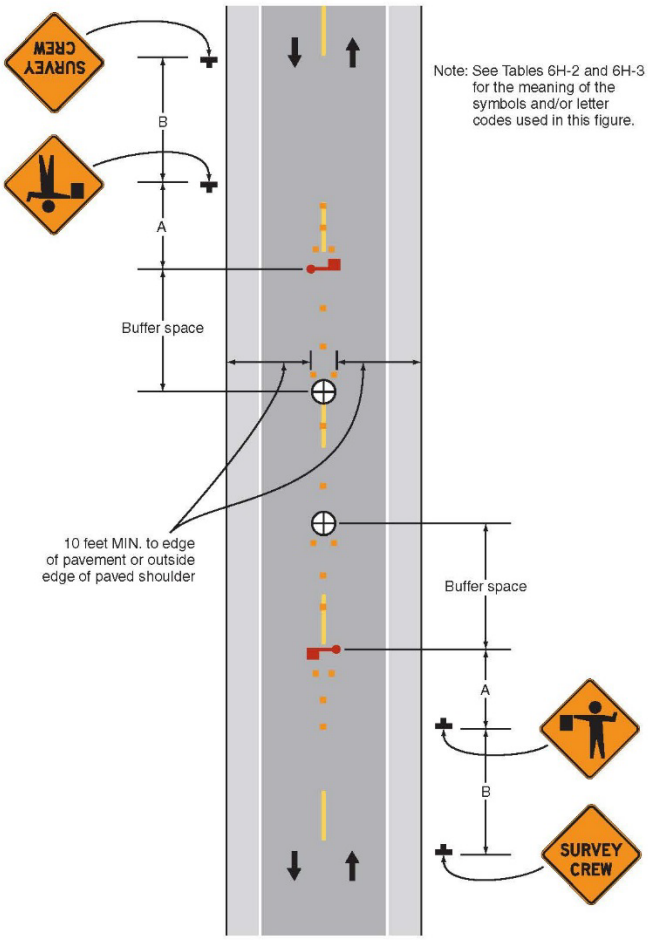
Option:

5. A high-level warning device may be used to protect a surveying device, such as a target on a tripod.
6. Cones may be omitted for a cross-section survey.
7. ROAD WORK AHEAD signs may be used in place of the SURVEY CREW AHEAD signs.
8. Flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
9. If the work is along the shoulder, the flagger may be omitted.
10. For a survey along the edge of the road or along the shoulder, cones may be placed along the edge line.
11. A BE PREPARED TO STOP sign may be added to the sign series.

Guidance:

12. *When used, the BE PREPARED TO STOP sign should be located before the Flagger symbol sign.*

Figure 6H-16. Surveying Along the Center Line of a Road with Low Traffic Volumes (TA-16)



Typical Application 16

Notes for Figure 6H-17—Typical Application 17
Mobile Operations on a Two-Lane Road

Standard:

1. **Vehicle-mounted signs shall be mounted in a manner such that they are not obscured by equipment or supplies. Sign legends on vehicle-mounted signs shall be covered or turned from view when work is not in progress.**
2. **Shadow and work vehicles shall display high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**
3. **If an arrow board is used, it shall be used in the caution mode.**

Guidance:

4. *Where practical and when needed, the work and shadow vehicles should pull over periodically to allow vehicular traffic to pass.*
5. *Whenever adequate stopping sight distance exists to the rear, the shadow vehicle should maintain the minimum distance from the work vehicle and proceed at the same speed. The shadow vehicle should slow down in advance of vertical or horizontal curves that restrict sight distance.*
6. *The shadow vehicles should also be equipped with two high-intensity flashing lights mounted on the rear, adjacent to the sign.*

Option:

7. The distance between the work and shadow vehicles may vary according to terrain, paint drying time, and other factors.
8. Additional shadow vehicles to warn and reduce the speed of oncoming or opposing vehicular traffic may be used. Law enforcement vehicles may be used for this purpose.
9. A truck-mounted attenuator may be used on the shadow vehicle or on the work vehicle.
10. If the work and shadow vehicles cannot pull over to allow vehicular traffic to pass frequently, a DO NOT PASS sign may be placed on the rear of the vehicle blocking the lane.

Use of a shadow vehicle may not always be practicable, such as on roadways with traffic volume less than 1500 AADT and with good sight distance.

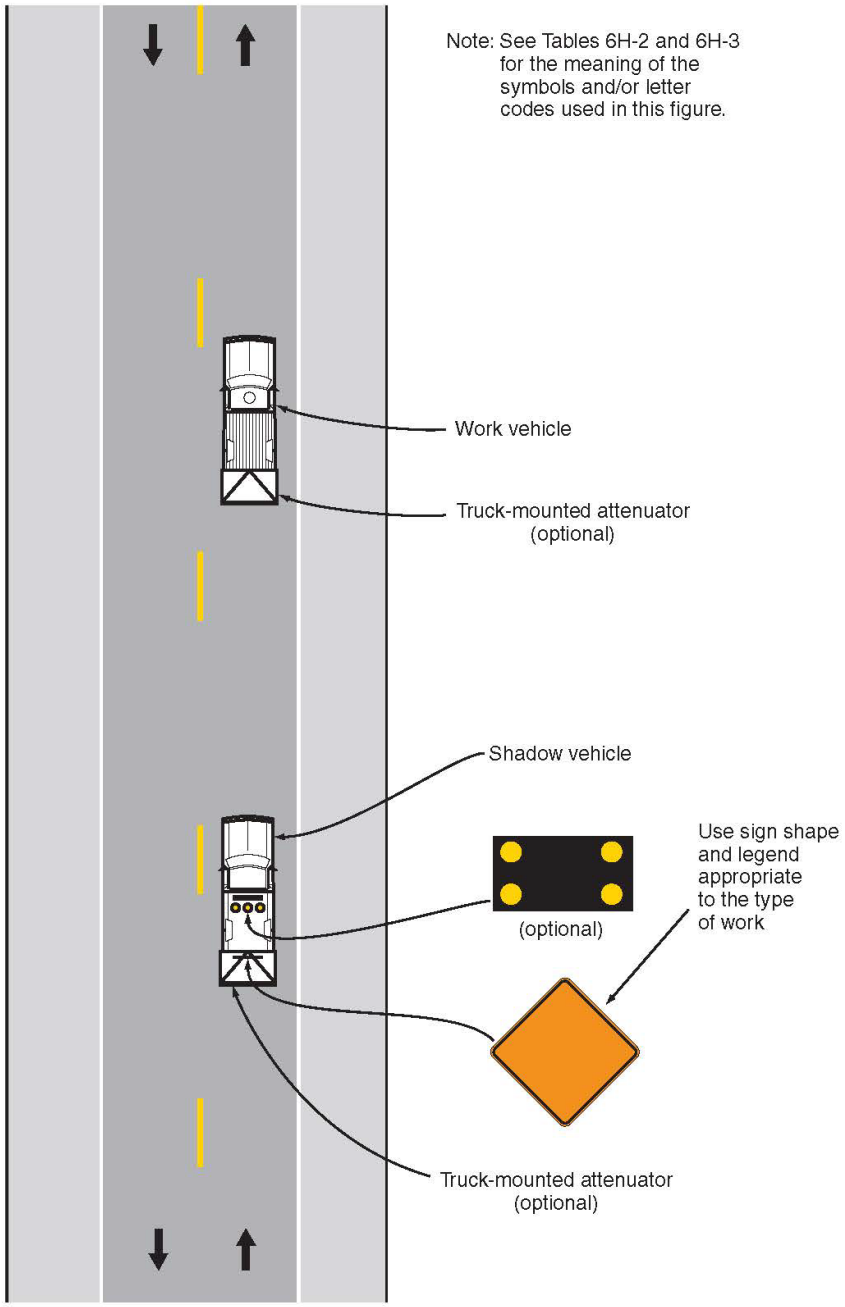
Support:

11. Shadow vehicles are used to warn motor vehicle traffic of the operation ahead.

Standard:

12. **Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**

Figure 6H-17. Mobile Operations on a Two-Lane Road (TA-17)



Typical Application 17

Notes for Figure 6H-18—Typical Application 18
Lane Closure on a Minor Street

Standard:

1. **This TTC shall be used only for low-speed facilities having low traffic volumes.**

Option:

2. Where the work space is short, where road users can see the roadway beyond, and where volume is low, vehicular traffic may be self-regulating.

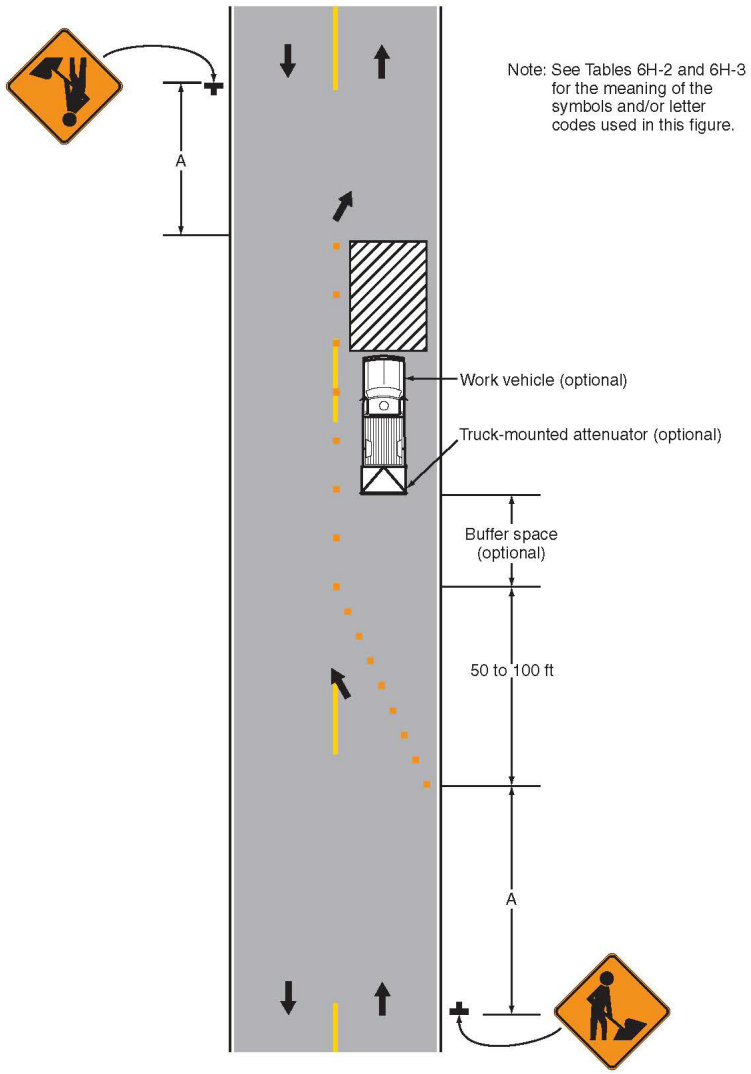
Standard:

3. **Where vehicular traffic cannot effectively self-regulate, one or two flaggers shall be used as illustrated in Figure 6H-10.**

Option:

4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
5. A truck-mounted attenuator may be used on the work vehicle and the shadow vehicle.

Figure 6H-18. Lane Closure on a Minor Street (TA-18)



Typical Application 18

Notes for Figure 6H-19—Typical Application 19
Detour for One Travel Direction

Guidance:

1. *This plan should be used for streets without posted route numbers.*
2. *On multi-lane streets, Detour signs with an Advance Turn Arrow should be used in advance of a turn.*

Option:

3. The STREET CLOSED legend may be used in place of ROAD CLOSED.
4. Additional DO NOT ENTER signs may be used at intersections with intervening streets.
5. Warning lights may be used on Type 3 Barricades.
6. Detour signs may be located on the far side of intersections.
7. A Street Name sign may be mounted with the Detour sign. The Street Name sign may be either white on green or black on orange.

The M4-9 sign may be used for the Detour Arrow sign in lieu of the M4-10 sign.
The END DETOUR (M4-8a) sign may be omitted.

Standard:

8. When used, the Street Name sign shall be placed above the Detour sign.

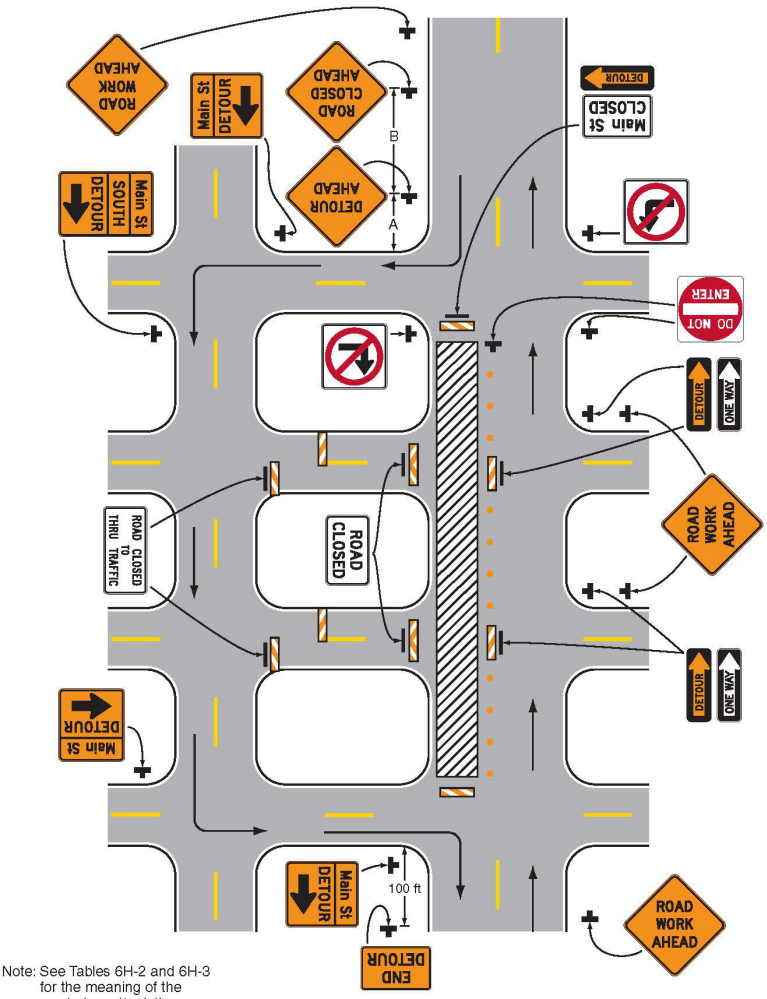
Guidance:

Where Detour signs are placed on a state trunk highway to mark a detour of a local road, Street Name signs should be used with the Detour signs to indicate the name of the street being detoured.

Option:

The Street Name sign may be white on green, black on orange, or black on white.

Figure 6H-19. Detour for One Travel Direction (TA-19)



Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 19

Notes for Figure 6H-20—Typical Application 20
Detour for a Closed Street

Guidance:

1. *This plan should be used for streets without posted route numbers.*
2. *On multi-lane streets, Detour signs with an Advance Turn Arrow should be used in advance of a turn.*

Option:

3. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
4. Flashing warning lights may be used on Type 3 Barricades.
5. Detour signs may be located on the far side of intersections. A Detour sign with an advance arrow may be used in advance of a turn.
6. A Street Name sign may be mounted with the Detour sign. The Street Name sign may be either white on green or black on orange.

The M4-9 sign may be used for the Detour Arrow sign in lieu of the M4-10 sign.
The END DETOUR (M4-8a) sign may be omitted.

Standard:

7. When used, the Street Name sign shall be placed above the Detour sign.

Support:

8. See Figure 6H-9 for the information for detouring a numbered highway.

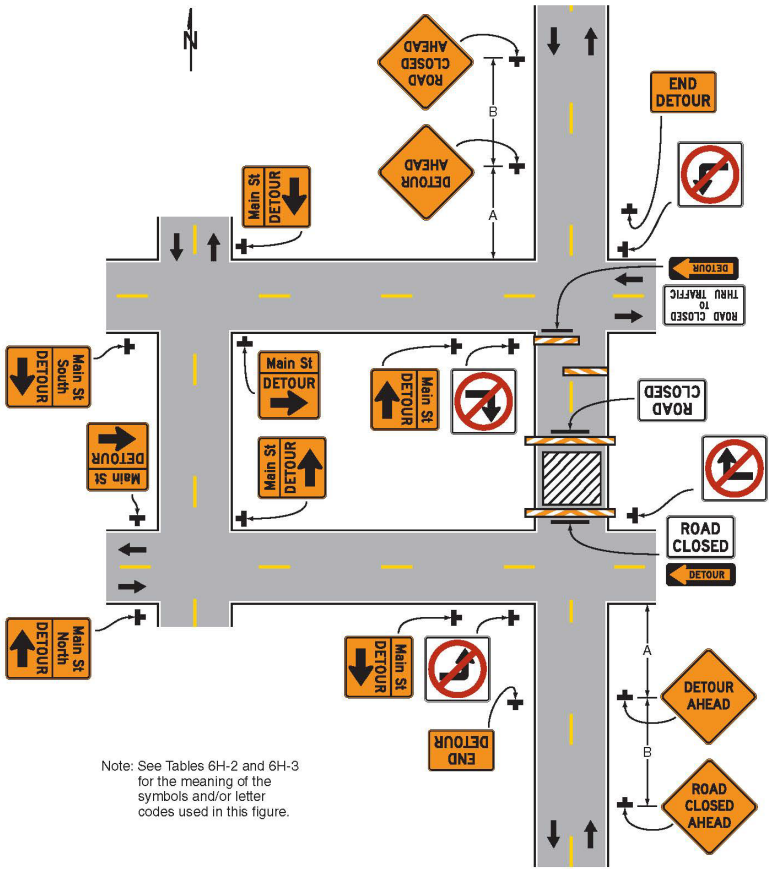
Guidance:

Where Detour signs are placed on a state trunk highway to mark a detour of a local road, Street Name signs should be used with the Detour signs to indicate the name of the street being detoured.

Option:

The Street Name sign may be white on green, black on orange, or black on white.

Figure 6H-20. Detour for a Closed Street (TA-20)



Typical Application 20

Notes for Figure 6H-21—Typical Application 21
Lane Closure on the Near Side of an Intersection

Standard:

1. **The merging taper shall direct vehicular traffic into either the right-hand or left-hand lane, but not both.**

Guidance:

2. *In this typical application, a left taper should be used so that right-turn movements will not impede through motor vehicle traffic. However, the reverse should be true for left-turn movements.*
3. *If the work space extends across a crosswalk, the crosswalk should be closed using the information and devices shown in Figure 6H-29.*

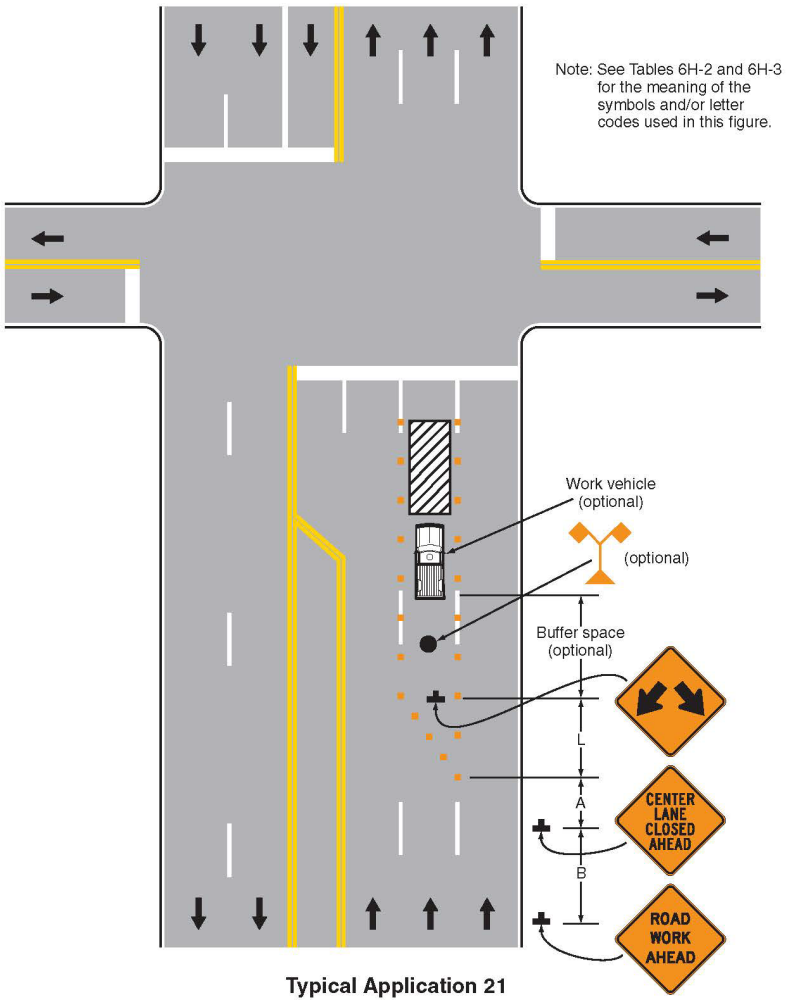
Option:

4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
5. A shadow vehicle with a truck-mounted attenuator may be used.
6. A work vehicle with high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights may be used with the high-level warning device.
7. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Standard:

8. **Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**

Figure 6H-21. Lane Closure on the Near Side of an Intersection (TA-21)



Typical Application 21

Notes for Figure 6H-22—Typical Application 22
Right-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection

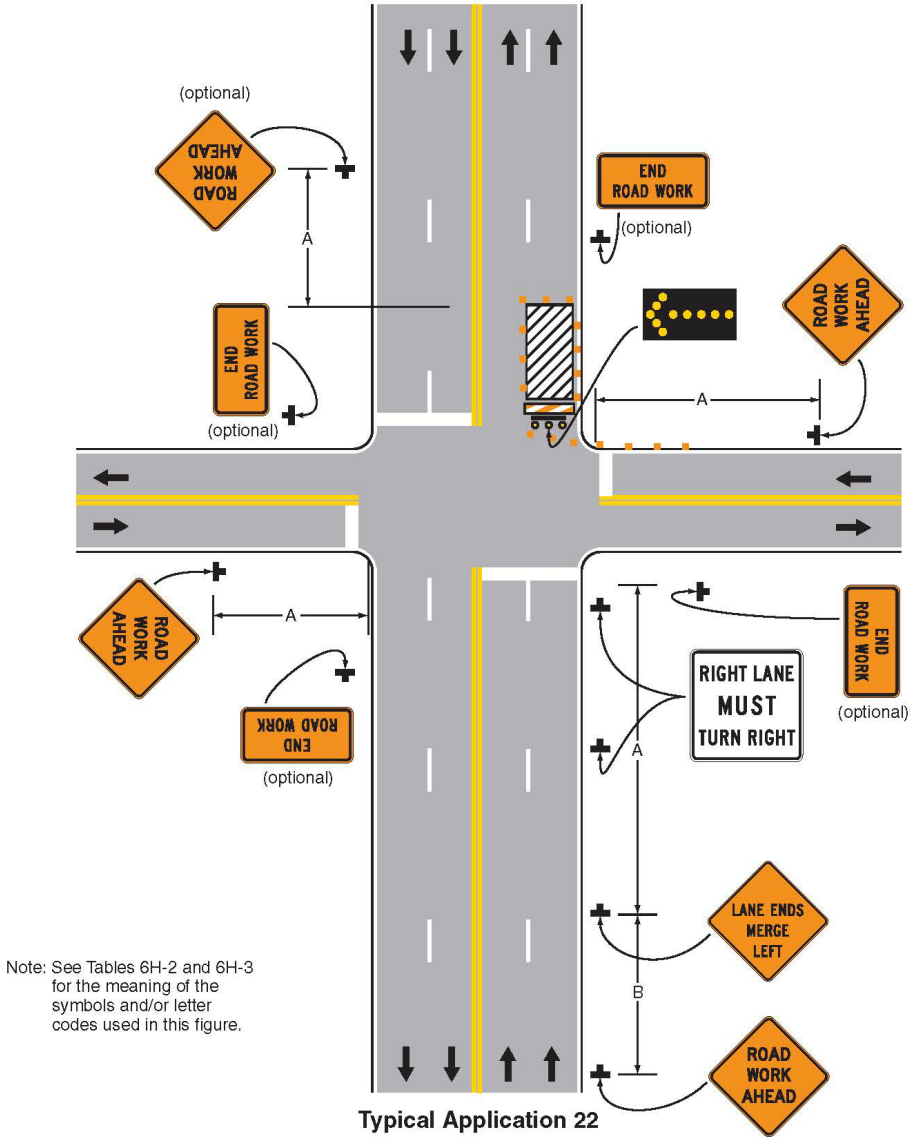
Guidance:

1. *If the work space extends across a crosswalk, the crosswalk should be closed using the information and devices shown in Figure 6H-29.*

Option:

2. The normal procedure is to close on the near side of the intersection any lane that is not carried through the intersection. However, when this results in the closure of a right-hand lane having significant right turning movements, then the right-hand lane may be restricted to right turns only, as shown. This procedure increases the through capacity by eliminating right turns from the open through lane.
3. For intersection approaches reduced to a single lane, left-turning movements may be prohibited to maintain capacity for through vehicular traffic.
4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
5. Where the turning radius is large, it may be possible to create a right-turn island using channelizing devices or pavement markings.

Figure 6H-22. Right-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-22)



Typical Application 22

Notes for Figure 6H-23—Typical Application 23
Left-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection

Guidance:

1. *If the work space extends across a crosswalk, the crosswalk should be closed using the information and devices shown in Figure 6H-29.*

Option:

2. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
3. The normal procedure is to close on the near side of the intersection any lane that is not carried through the intersection. However, when this results in the closure of a left-hand lane having significant left-turning movements, then the left-hand lane may be reopened as a turn bay for left turns only, as shown.

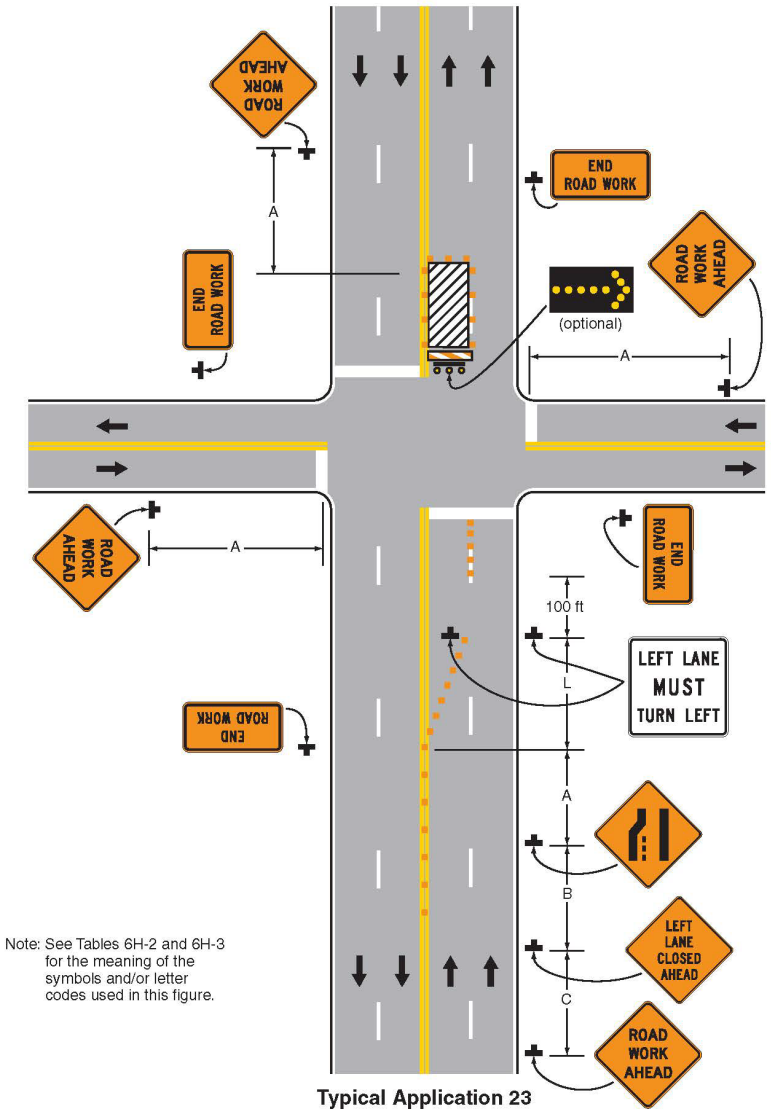
Support:

4. By first closing off the left-hand lane and then reopening it as a turn bay, the left-turn bay allows storage of turning vehicles so that the movement of through traffic is not impeded. A left-turn bay that is long enough to accommodate all turning vehicles during a traffic signal cycle will provide the maximum benefit for through traffic. Also, an island is created with channelizing devices that allows the LEFT LANE MUST TURN LEFT sign to be repeated on the left adjacent to the lane that it controls.

Guidance:

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-23. Left-Hand Lane Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-23)



Typical Application 23

Notes for Figure 6H-24—Typical Application 24
Half Road Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection

Guidance:

1. *If the work space extends across a crosswalk, the crosswalk should be closed using the information and devices shown in Figure 6H-29.*
2. *When turn prohibitions are implemented, two turn prohibition signs should be used, one on the near side and, space permitting, one on the far side of the intersection.*

Option:

3. A buffer space may be used between opposing directions of vehicular traffic as shown in this application.
4. The normal procedure is to close on the near side of the intersection any lane that is not carried through the intersection. However, if there is a significant right-turning movement, then the right-hand lane may be restricted to right turns only, as shown.
5. Where the turning radius is large, a right-turn island using channelizing devices or pavement markings may be used.
6. There may be insufficient space to place the back-to-back Keep Right sign and No Left Turn symbol signs at the end of the row of channelizing devices separating opposing vehicular traffic flows. In this situation, the No Left Turn symbol sign may be placed on the right and the Keep Right sign may be omitted.
7. For intersection approaches reduced to a single lane, left-turning movements may be prohibited to maintain capacity for through vehicular traffic.
8. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to advance warning signs.
9. Temporary pavement markings may be used to delineate the travel path through the intersection.

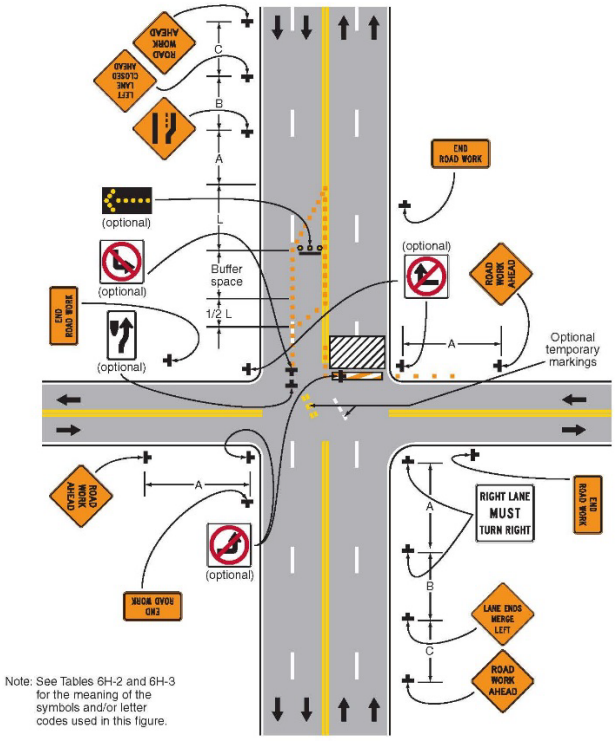
Support:

10. Keeping the right-hand lane open increases the through capacity by eliminating right turns from the open through lane.
11. A temporary turn island reinforces the nature of the temporary exclusive right-turn lane and enables a second RIGHT LANE MUST TURN RIGHT sign to be placed in the island.

Guidance:

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-24. Half Road Closure on the Far Side of an Intersection (TA-24)



Typical Application 24

Notes for Figure 6H-25—Typical Application 25
Multiple Lane Closures at an Intersection

Guidance:

1. *If the work space extends across a crosswalk, the crosswalk should be closed using the information and devices shown in Figure 6H-29.*
2. *If the left-hand through lane is closed on the near-side approach, the LEFT LANE MUST TURN LEFT sign should be placed in the median to discourage through vehicular traffic from entering the left-turn bay.*

Support:

3. The normal procedure is to close on the near side of the intersection any lane that is not carried through the intersection.

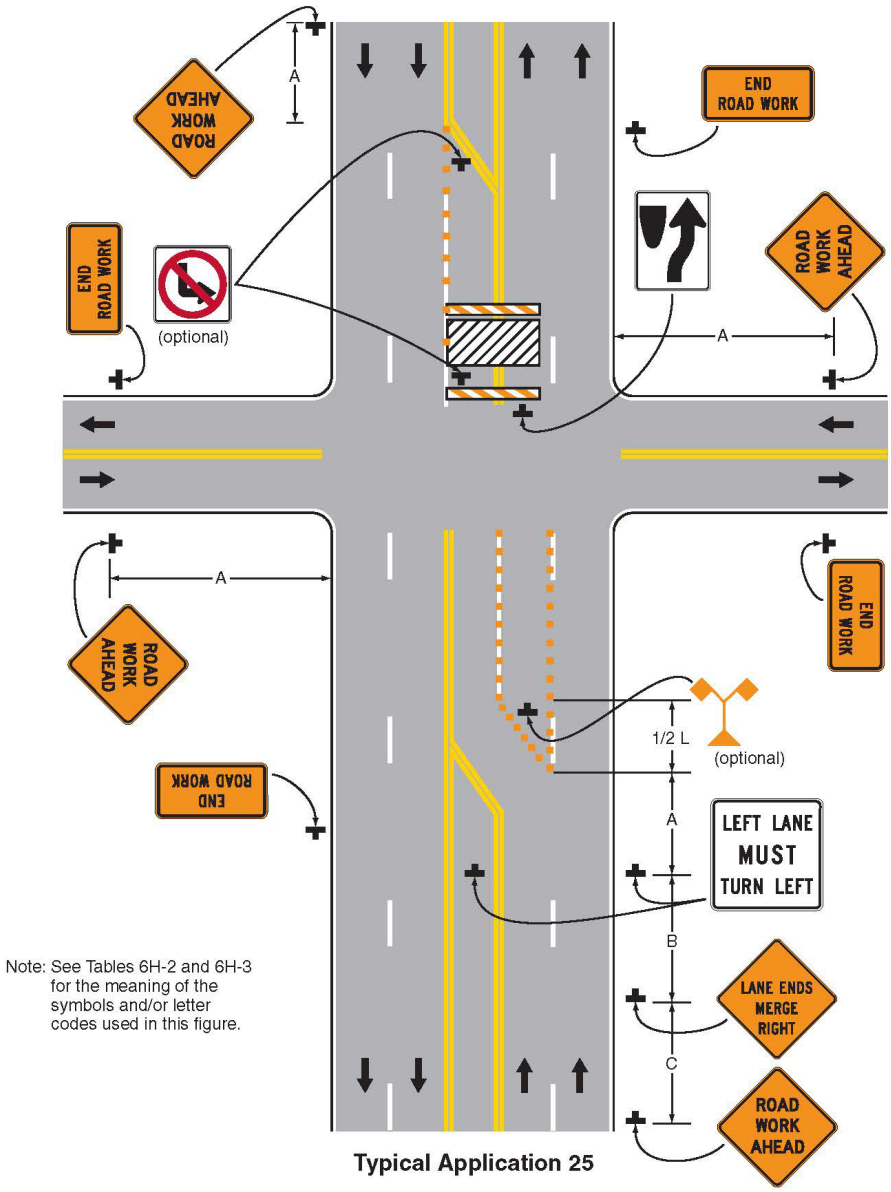
Option:

4. If the left-turning movement that normally uses the closed turn bay is small and/or the gaps in opposing vehicular traffic are frequent, left turns may be permitted on that approach.
5. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.

Guidance:

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-25. Multiple Lane Closures at an Intersection (TA-25)



Typical Application 25

Notes for Figure 6H-26—Typical Application 26
Closure in the Center of an Intersection

Guidance:

1. *All lanes should be a minimum of 10 feet in width as measured to the near face of the channelizing devices.*

Option:

2. A high-level warning device may be placed in the work space, if there is sufficient room.
3. For short-term use on low-volume, low-speed roadways with vehicular traffic that does not include longer and wider heavy commercial vehicles, a minimum lane width of 9 feet may be used.
4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to advance warning signs.
5. Unless the streets are wide, it may be physically impossible to turn left, especially for large vehicles. Left turns may be prohibited as required by geometric conditions.
6. For short-duration work operations, the channelizing devices may be eliminated if a vehicle displaying high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights is positioned in the work space.
7. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

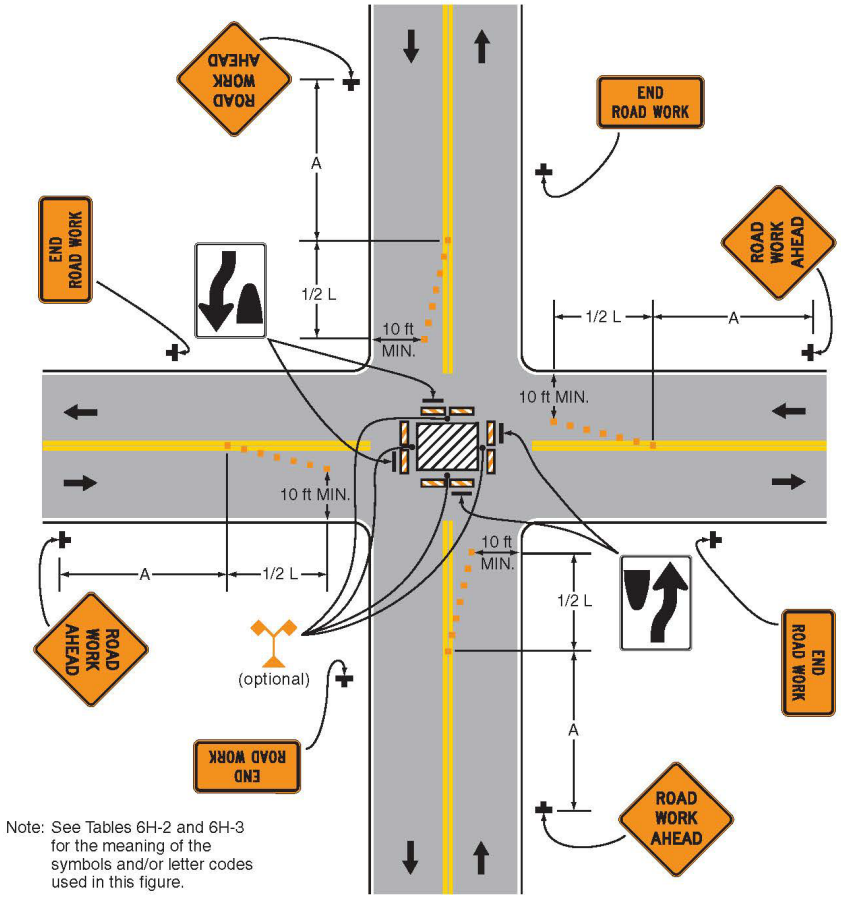
Standard:

8. Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Guidance:

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-26. Closure in the Center of an Intersection (TA-26)



Typical Application 26

Notes for Figure 6H-27—Typical Application 27
Closure at the Side of an Intersection

Guidance:

1. *The situation depicted can be simplified by closing one or more of the intersection approaches. If this cannot be done, and/or when capacity is a problem, through vehicular traffic should be directed to other roads or streets.*
2. *Depending on road user conditions, flagger(s) or uniformed law enforcement officer(s) should be used to direct road users within the intersection.*

Standard:

3. At night, flagger stations shall be illuminated, except in emergencies.

Option:

4. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
5. For short-duration work operations, the channelizing devices may be eliminated if a vehicle displaying high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights is positioned in the work space.
6. A BE PREPARED TO STOP sign may be added to the sign series.

Guidance:

7. *When used, the BE PREPARED TO STOP sign should be located before the Flagger symbol sign.*
8. *ONE LANE ROAD AHEAD signs should also be used to provide adequate advance warning.*

Support:

9. Turns can be prohibited as required by vehicular traffic conditions. Unless the streets are wide, it might be physically impossible to make certain turns, especially for large vehicles.

Option:

10. Vehicle hazard warning signals may be used to supplement high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

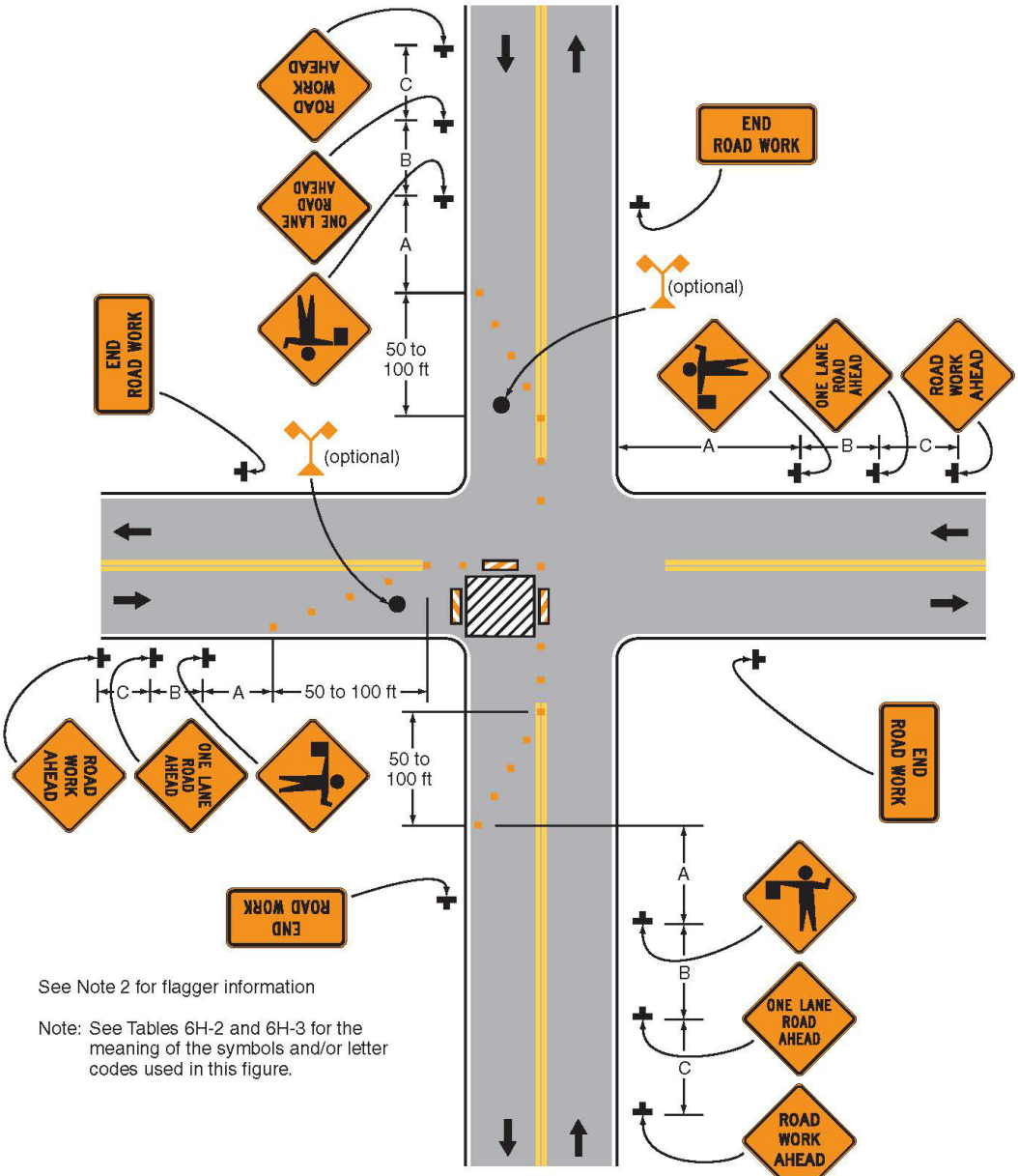
Standard:

11. Vehicle hazard warning signals shall not be used instead of the vehicle's high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.

Guidance:

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-27. Closure at the Side of an Intersection (TA-27)



See Note 2 for flagger information

Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Typical Application 27

Notes for Figure 6H-28—Typical Application 28
Sidewalk Detour or Diversion

Standard:

1. **When crosswalks or other pedestrian facilities are closed or relocated, temporary facilities shall be detectable and shall include accessibility features consistent with the features present in the existing pedestrian facility.**

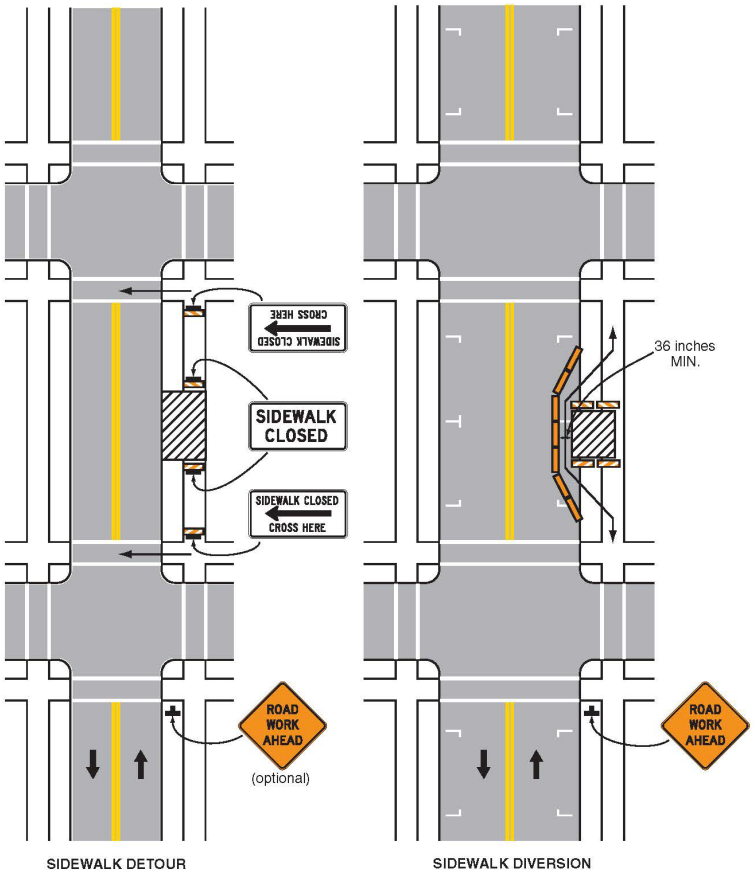
Guidance:

2. *Where high speeds are anticipated, a temporary traffic barrier and, if necessary, a crash cushion should be used to separate the temporary sidewalks from vehicular traffic.*
3. *Audible information devices should be considered where midblock closings and changed crosswalk areas cause inadequate communication to be provided to pedestrians who have visual disabilities.*

Option:

4. Street lighting may be considered.
5. Only the TTC devices related to pedestrians are shown. Other devices, such as lane closure signing or ROAD NARROWS signs, may be used to control vehicular traffic.
6. For nighttime closures, Type A Flashing warning lights may be used on barricades that support signs and close sidewalks.
7. Type C Steady-Burn or Type D 360-degree Steady-Burn warning lights may be used on channelizing devices separating the temporary sidewalks from vehicular traffic flow.
8. Signs, such as KEEP RIGHT (LEFT), may be placed along a temporary sidewalk to guide or direct pedestrians.

Figure 6H-28. Sidewalk Detour or Diversion (TA-28)



Typical Application 28

Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure.

Notes for Figure 6H-29—Typical Application 29
Crosswalk Closures and Pedestrian Detours

Standard:

1. **When crosswalks or other pedestrian facilities are closed or relocated, temporary facilities shall be detectable and shall include accessibility features consistent with the features present in the existing pedestrian facility.**
2. **Curb parking shall be prohibited for at least 50 feet in advance of the midblock crosswalk.**

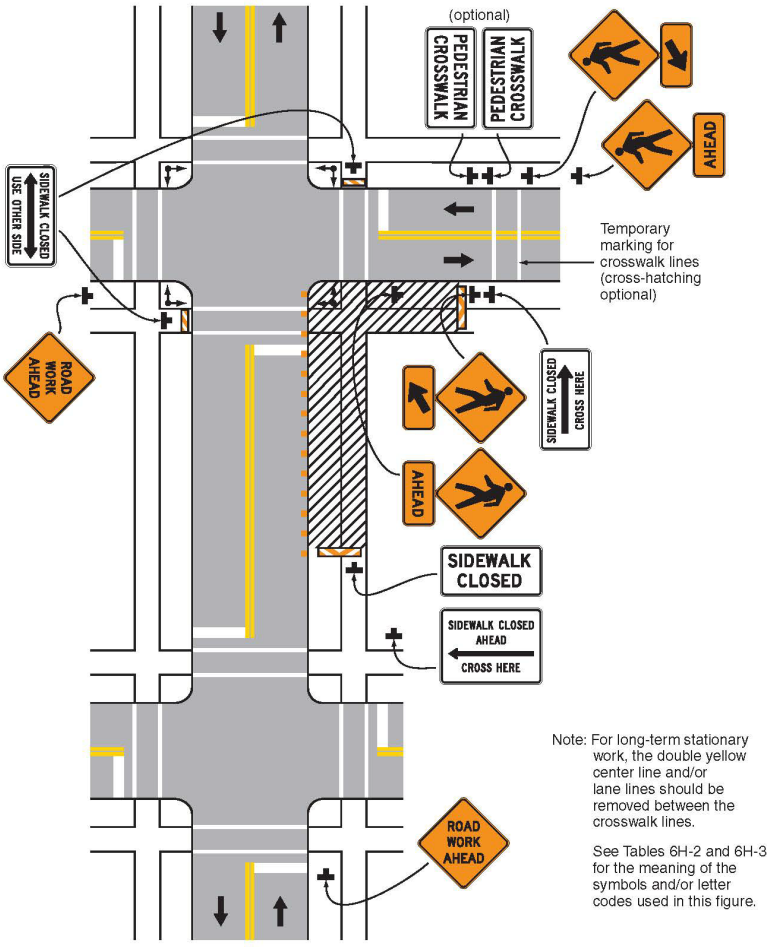
Guidance:

3. *Audible information devices should be considered where midblock closings and changed crosswalk areas cause inadequate communication to be provided to pedestrians who have visual disabilities.*
4. *Pedestrian traffic signal displays controlling closed crosswalks should be covered or deactivated.*

Option:

5. Street lighting may be considered.
6. Only the TTC devices related to pedestrians are shown. Other devices, such as lane closure signing or ROAD NARROWS signs, may be used to control vehicular traffic.
7. For nighttime closures, Type A Flashing warning lights may be used on barricades supporting signs and closing sidewalks.
8. Type C Steady-Burn or Type D 360-degree Steady-Burn warning lights may be used on channelizing devices separating the work space from vehicular traffic.
9. In order to maintain the systematic use of the fluorescent yellow-green background for pedestrian, bicycle, and school warning signs in a jurisdiction, the fluorescent yellow-green background for pedestrian, bicycle, and school warning signs may be used in TTC zones.

Figure 6H-29. Crosswalk Closures and Pedestrian Detours (TA-29)



Typical Application 29

Notes for Figure 6H-30—Typical Application 30
Interior Lane Closure on a Multi-Lane Street

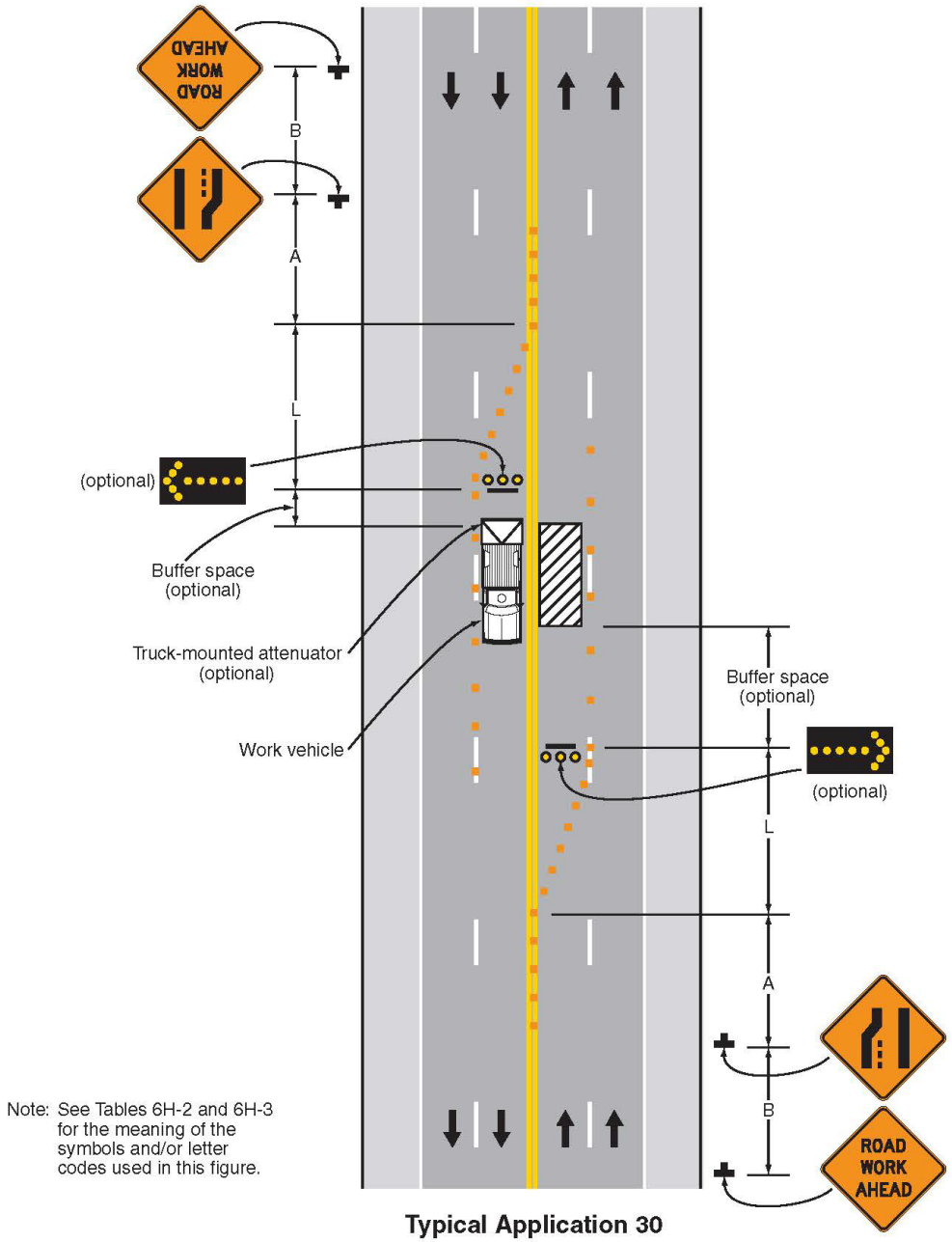
Guidance:

1. *This information applies to low-speed, low-volume urban streets. Where speed or volume is higher, additional signing such as LEFT LANE CLOSED XX FT should be used between the signs shown.*

Option:

2. The closure of the adjacent interior lane in the opposing direction may not be necessary, depending upon the activity being performed and the work space needed for the operation.
3. Shadow vehicles with a truck-mounted attenuator may be used.

Figure 6H-30. Interior Lane Closure on a Multi-Lane Street (TA-30)



Typical Application 30

Notes for Figure 6H-31—Typical Application 31
Lane Closure on a Street with Uneven Directional Volumes

Standard:

1. The illustrated information shall be used only when the vehicular traffic volume indicates that two lanes of vehicular traffic shall be maintained in the direction of travel for which one lane is closed.

Option:

2. The procedure may be used during a peak period of vehicular traffic and then changed to provide two lanes in the other direction for the other peak.

Guidance:

3. *For high speeds, a LEFT LANE CLOSED XX FT sign should be added for vehicular traffic approaching the lane closure, as shown in Figure 6H-32.*
4. *Conflicting pavement markings should be removed for long-term projects. For short-term and intermediate-term projects where this is not practical, the channelizing devices in the area where the pavement markings conflict should be placed at a maximum spacing of 1/2 S feet where S is the speed in mph. Temporary markings should be installed where needed.*
5. *If the lane shift has curves with recommended speeds of 30 mph or less, Reverse Turn signs should be used.*
6. *Where the shifted section is long, a Reverse Curve sign should be used to show the initial shift and a second sign should be used to show the return to the normal alignment.*
7. *If the tangent distance along the temporary diversion is less than 600 feet, the Double Reverse Curve sign should be used at the location of the first Two Lane Reverse Curve sign. The second Two Lane Reverse Curve sign should be omitted.*

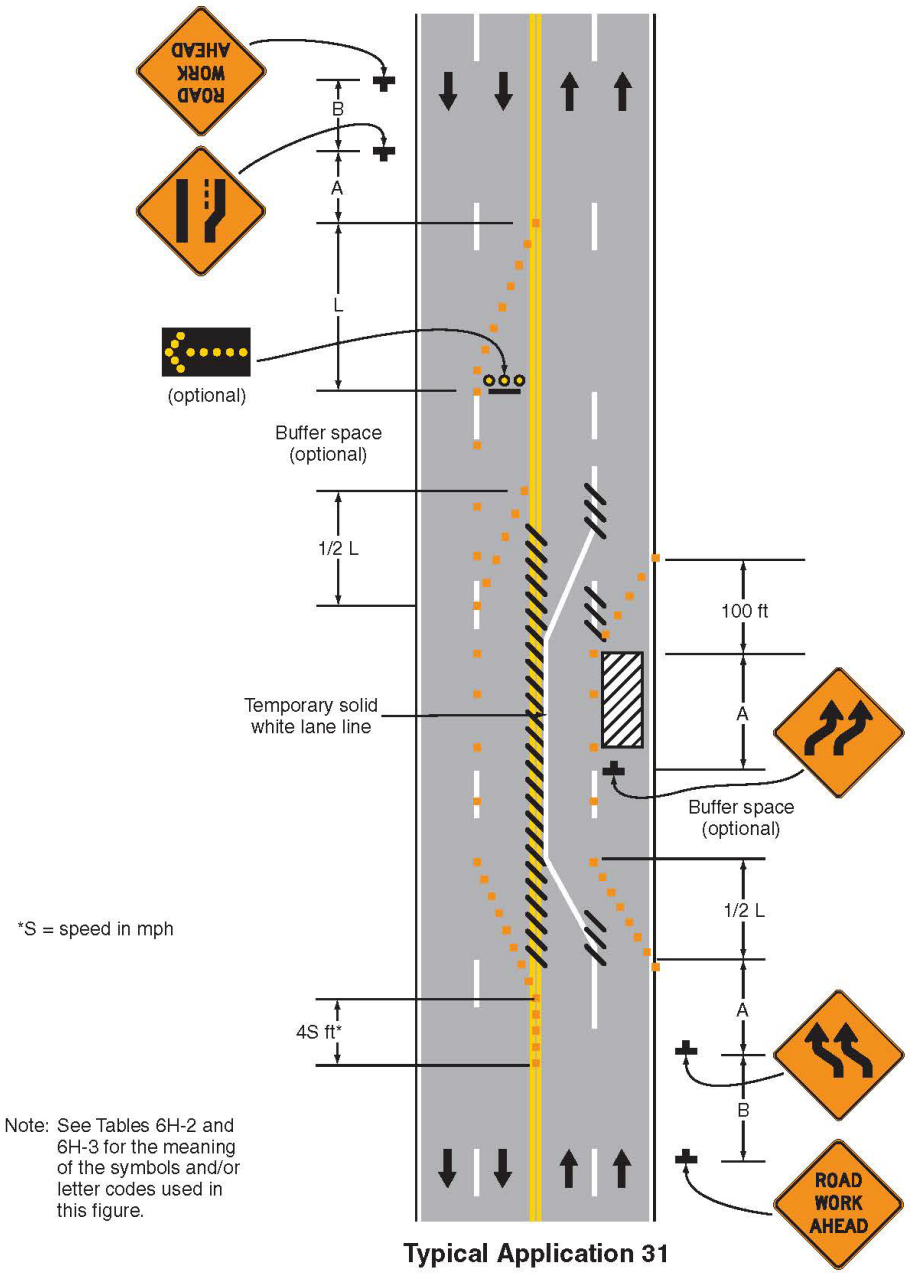
Standard:

8. The number of lanes illustrated on the Reverse Curve or Double Reverse Curve signs shall be the same as the number of through lanes available to road users, and the direction of the reverse curves shall be appropriately illustrated.

Option:

9. A longitudinal buffer space may be used in the activity area to separate opposing vehicular traffic.
10. Where two or more lanes are being shifted, a W1-4 (or W1-3) sign with an ALL LANES (W24-1cP) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) may be used instead of a sign that illustrates the number of lanes.
11. Where more than three lanes are being shifted, the Reverse Curve (or Turn) sign may be rectangular.
12. A work vehicle or a shadow vehicle may be equipped with a truck-mounted attenuator.

Figure 6H-31. Lane Closures on a Street with Uneven Directional Volumes (TA-31)



Typical Application 31

Notes for Figure 6H-32—Typical Application 32
Half Road Closure on a Multi-Lane, High-Speed Highway

Standard:

1. **Pavement markings no longer applicable shall be removed or obliterated as soon as practical. Except for intermediate-term and short-term situations, temporary markings shall be provided to clearly delineate the temporary travel path. For short-term and intermediate-term situations where it is not feasible to remove and restore pavement markings, channelization shall be made dominant by using a very close device spacing.**

Guidance:

2. *When paved shoulders having a width of 8 feet or more are closed, channelizing devices should be used to close the shoulder in advance of the merging taper to direct vehicular traffic to remain within the traveled way.*
3. *Where channelizing devices are used instead of pavement markings, the maximum spacing should be 1/2 S feet where S is the speed in mph.*
4. *If the tangent distance along the temporary diversion is less than 600 feet, a Double Reverse Curve sign should be used instead of the first Reverse Curve sign, and the second Reverse Curve sign should be omitted.*

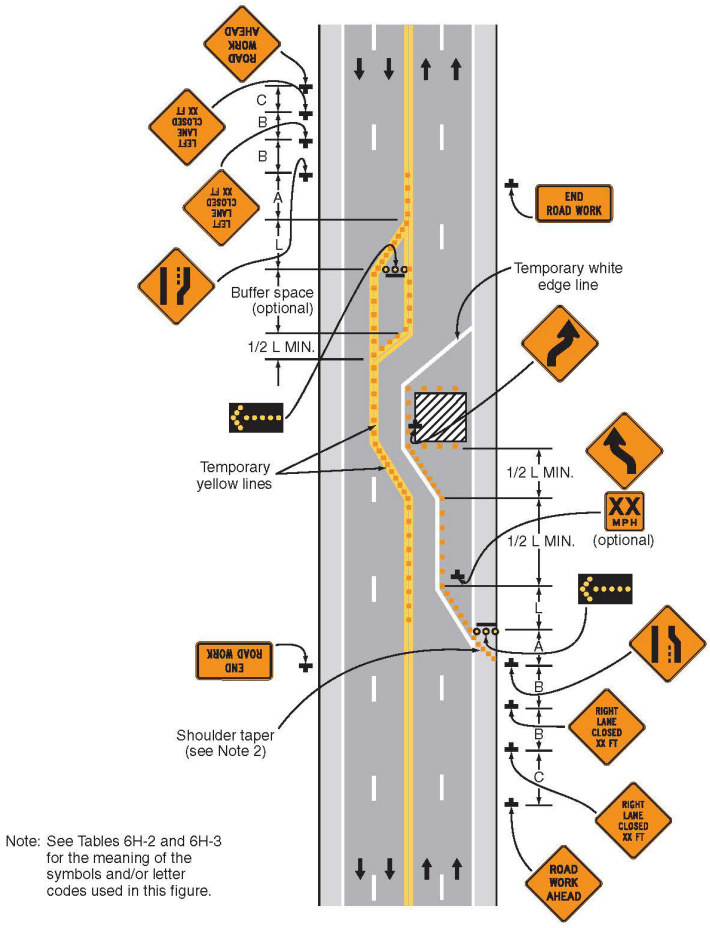
Option:

5. Warning lights may be used to supplement channelizing devices at night.
6. A truck-mounted attenuator may be used on the work vehicle and/or the shadow vehicle.

Guidance:

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-32. Half Road Closure on a Multi-Lane, High-Speed Highway (TA-32)



Typical Application 32

Notes for Figure 6H-33—Typical Application 33
Stationary Lane Closure on a Divided Highway

Standard:

1. **This information also shall be used when work is being performed in the lane adjacent to the median on a divided highway. In this case, the LEFT LANE CLOSED signs and the corresponding Lane Ends signs shall be substituted.**
2. **When a side road intersects the highway within the TTC zone, additional TTC devices shall be placed as needed.**

Guidance:

3. *When paved shoulders having a width of 8 feet or more are closed, channelizing devices should be used to close the shoulder in advance of the merging taper to direct vehicular traffic to remain within the traveled way.*

Option:

4. A truck-mounted attenuator may be used on the work vehicle and/or shadow vehicle.

Support:

5. Where conditions permit, restricting all vehicles, equipment, workers, and their activities to one side of the roadway might be advantageous.

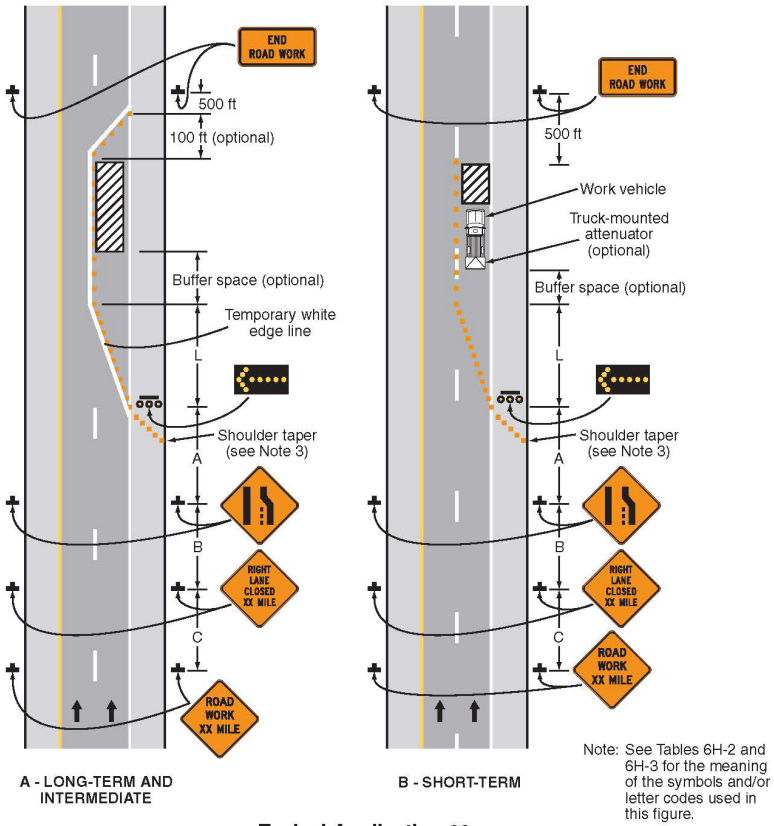
Standard:

6. **An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**

Guidance:

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-33. Stationary Lane Closure on a Divided Highway (TA-33)



Typical Application 33

Notes for Figure 6H-34—Typical Application 34
Lane Closure with a Temporary Traffic Barrier

Standard:

1. **This information also shall be used when work is being performed in the lane adjacent to the median on a divided highway. In this case, the LEFT LANE CLOSED signs and the corresponding Lane Ends signs shall be substituted.**

Guidance:

2. *For long-term lane closures on facilities with permanent edge lines, a temporary edge line should be installed from the upstream end of the merging taper to the downstream end of the downstream taper, and conflicting pavement markings should be removed.*
3. *The use of a barrier should be based on engineering judgment.*

Standard:

4. **Temporary traffic barriers, if used, shall comply with the provisions of Section 6F.85.**
5. **The barrier shall not be placed along the merging taper. The lane shall first be closed using channelizing devices and pavement markings.**

Option:

6. Type C Steady-Burn warning lights may be placed on channelizing devices and the barrier parallel to the edge of pavement for nighttime lane closures.
7. The barrier shown in this typical application is an example of one method that may be used to close a lane for a long-term project. If the work activity permits, a movable barrier may be used and relocated to the shoulder during non-work periods or peak-period vehicular traffic conditions, as appropriate.

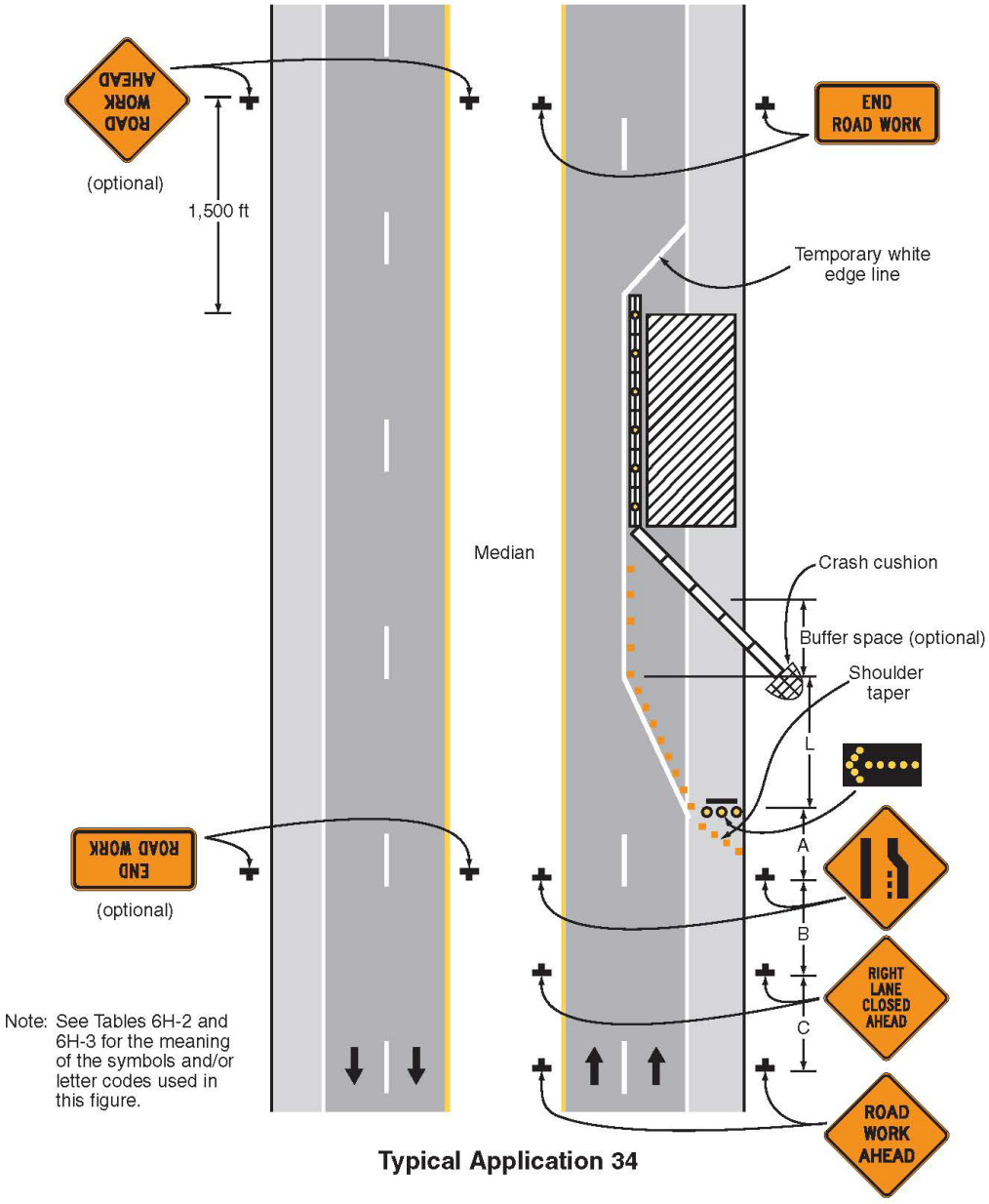
Standard:

8. **If a movable barrier is used, the temporary white edge line shown in the typical application shall not be used. During the period when the right-hand lane is opened, the sign legends and the channelization shall be changed to indicate that only the shoulder is closed, as illustrated in Figure 6H-5. The arrow board, if used, shall be placed at the downstream end of the shoulder taper and shall display the caution mode.**

Guidance:

9. *If a movable barrier is used, the shift should be performed in the following manner. When closing the lane, the lane should be initially closed with channelizing devices placed along a merging taper using the same information employed for a stationary lane closure. The lane closure should then be extended with the movable-barrier transfer vehicle moving with vehicular traffic. When opening the lane, the movable-barrier transfer vehicle should travel against vehicular traffic from the termination area to the transition area. The merging taper should then be removed using the same information employed for a stationary lane closure.*

Figure 6H-34. Lane Closure with a Temporary Traffic Barrier (TA-34)



Notes for Figure 6H-35—Typical Application 35
Mobile Operation on a Multi-Lane Road

Standard:

1. **Arrow boards shall, as a minimum, be Type B, with a size of 60 x 30 inches.**
2. **Vehicle-mounted signs shall be mounted in a manner such that they are not obscured by equipment or supplies. Sign legends on vehicle-mounted signs shall be covered or turned from view when work is not in progress.**
3. **Shadow and work vehicles shall display high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights.**
4. **An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**

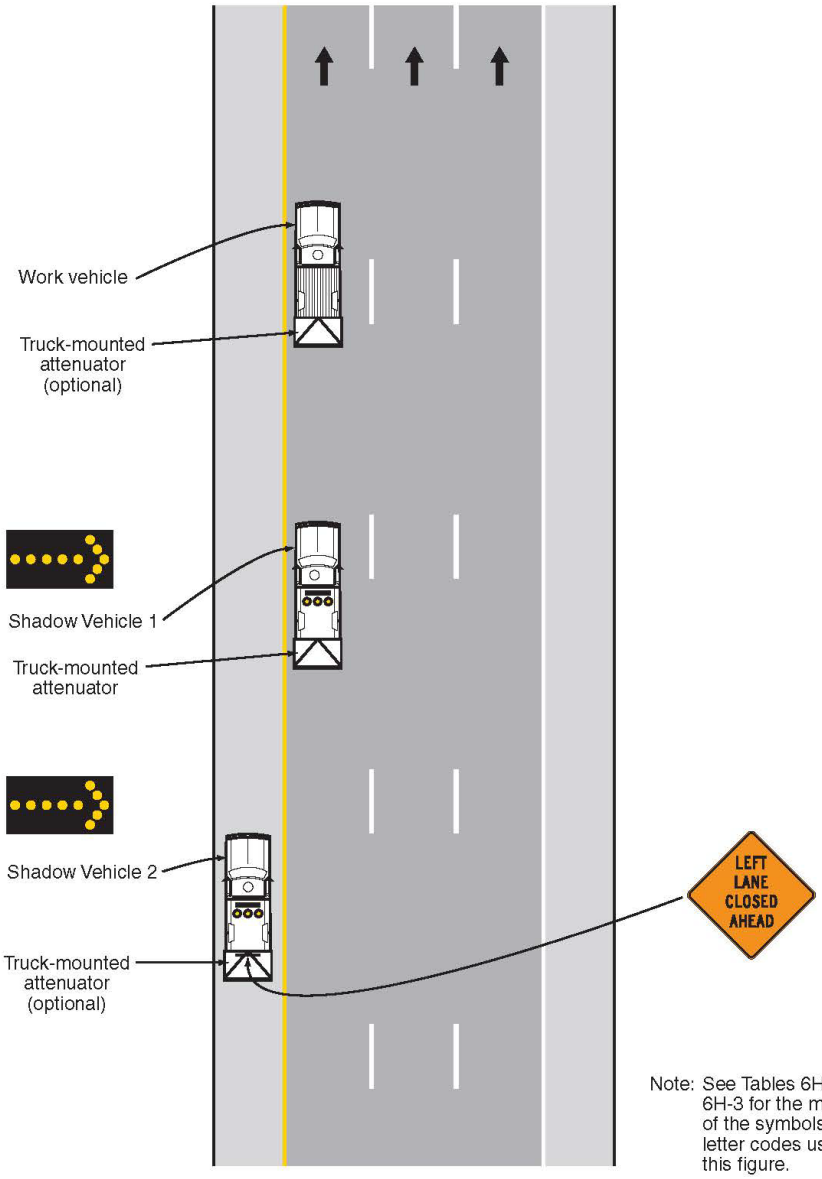
Guidance:

5. *Vehicles used for these operations should be made highly visible with appropriate equipment, such as flags, signs, or arrow boards.*
6. *Shadow Vehicle 1 should be equipped with an arrow board and truck-mounted attenuator.*
7. *Shadow Vehicle 2 should be equipped with an arrow board. An appropriate lane closure sign should be placed on Shadow Vehicle 2 so as not to obscure the arrow board.*
8. *Shadow Vehicle 2 should travel at a varying distance from the work operation so as to provide adequate sight distance for vehicular traffic approaching from the rear.*
9. *The spacing between the work vehicles and the shadow vehicles, and between each shadow vehicle should be minimized to deter road users from driving in between.*
10. *Work should normally be accomplished during off-peak hours.*
11. *When the work vehicle occupies an interior lane (a lane other than the far right or far left) of a directional roadway having a right-hand shoulder 10 feet or more in width, Shadow Vehicle 2 should drive the right-hand shoulder with a sign indicating that work is taking place in the interior lane.*

Option:

12. A truck-mounted attenuator may be used on Shadow Vehicle 2.
13. On high-speed roadways, a third shadow vehicle (not shown) may be used with Shadow Vehicle 1 in the closed lane, Shadow Vehicle 2 straddling the edge line, and Shadow Vehicle 3 on the shoulder.
14. Where adequate shoulder width is not available, Shadow Vehicle 3 may also straddle the edge line.

Figure 6H-35. Mobile Operation on a Multi-Lane Road (TA-35)



Typical Application 35

Notes for Figure 6H-36—Typical Application 36
Lane Shift on a Freeway

Guidance:

1. *The lane shift should be used when the work space extends into either the right-hand or left-hand lane of a divided highway and it is not practical, for capacity reasons, to reduce the number of available lanes.*

Support:

2. When a lane shift is accomplished by using (1) geometry that meets the design speed at which the permanent highway was designed, (2) full normal cross-section (full lane width and full shoulders), and (3) complete pavement markings, then only the initial general work-zone warning sign is required.

Guidance:

3. *When the conditions in Note 2 are not met, the information shown in the typical application should be employed and all the following notes apply.*

Standard:

4. **Temporary traffic barriers, if used, shall comply with the provisions of Section 6F.85.**
5. **The barrier shall not be placed along the shifting taper. The lane shall first be shifted using channelizing devices and pavement markings.**

Guidance:

6. *A warning sign should be used to show the changed alignment.*

Standard:

7. **The number of lanes illustrated on the Reverse Curve signs shall be the same as the number of through lanes available to road users, and the direction of the reverse curves shall be appropriately illustrated.**

Option:

8. Where two or more lanes are being shifted, a W1-4 (or W1-3) sign with an ALL LANES (W24-1cP) plaque (see Figure 6F-4) may be used instead of a sign that illustrates the number of lanes.
9. Where more than three lanes are being shifted, the Reverse Curve (or Turn) sign may be rectangular.

Guidance:

10. *Where the shifted section is longer than 600 feet, one set of Reverse Curve signs should be used to show the initial shift and a second set should be used to show the return to the normal alignment. If the tangent distance along the temporary diversion is less than 600 feet, a Double Reverse Curve sign should be used instead of the first Reverse Curve sign, and the second Reverse Curve sign should be omitted.*
11. *If a STAY IN LANE sign is used, then solid white lane lines should be used.*

Standard:

12. **The minimum width of the shoulder lane shall be 10 feet.**
13. **For long-term stationary work, existing conflicting pavement markings shall be removed and temporary markings shall be installed before traffic patterns are changed.**

Option:

14. For short-term stationary work, lanes may be delineated by channelizing devices or removable pavement markings instead of temporary markings.

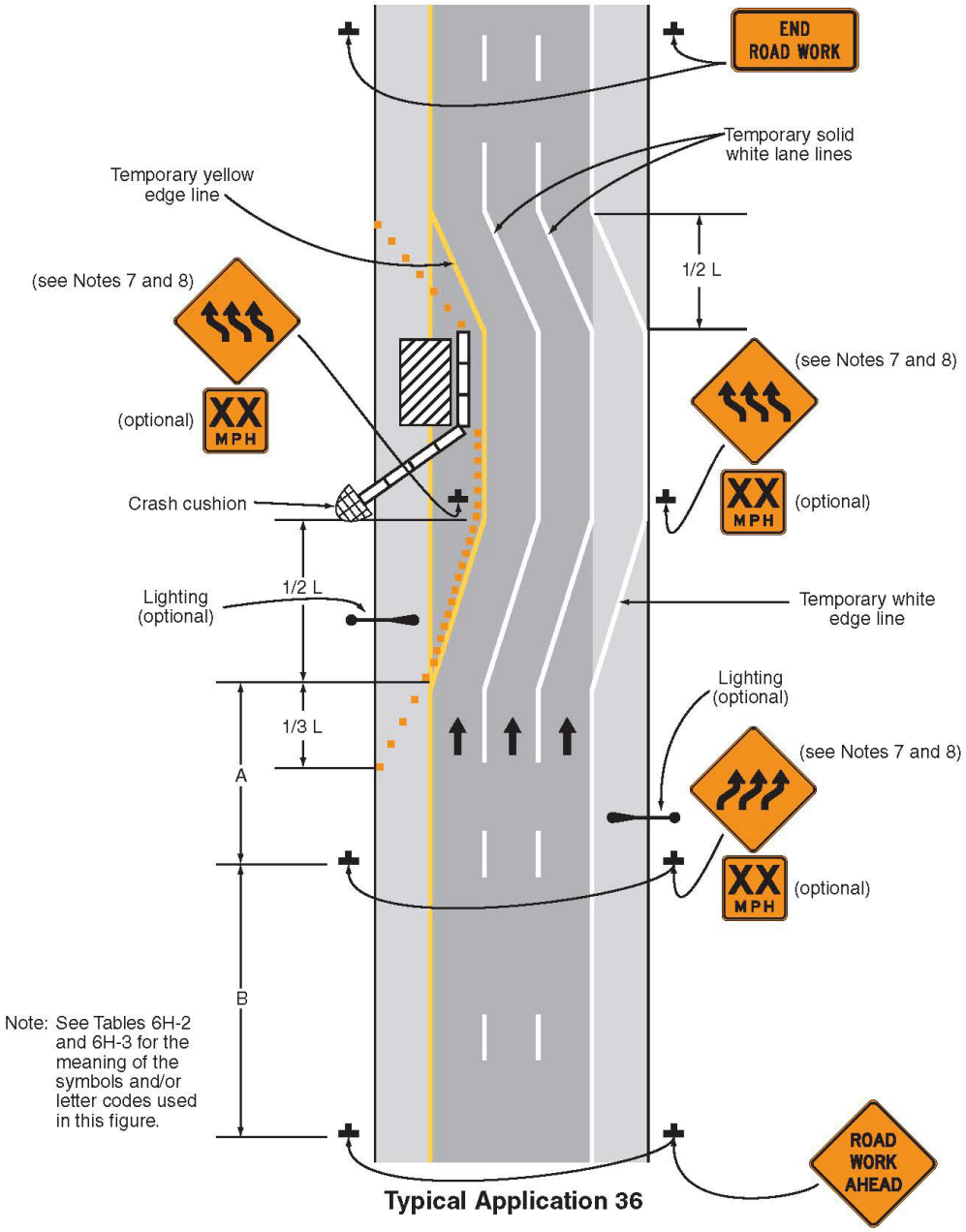
Guidance:

15. *If the shoulder cannot adequately accommodate trucks, trucks should be directed to use the travel lanes.*
16. *The use of a barrier should be based on engineering judgment.*

Option:

17. Type C Steady-Burn warning lights may be placed on channelizing devices and the barrier parallel to the edge of the pavement for nighttime lane closures.

Figure 6H-36. Lane Shift on a Freeway (TA-36)



Typical Application 36

Notes for Figure 6H-37—Typical Application 37
Double Lane Closure on a Freeway

Standard:

1. **An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**

Guidance:

2. *Ordinarily, the preferred position for the second arrow board is in the closed exterior lane at the upstream end of the second merging taper. However, the second arrow board should be placed in the closed interior lane at the downstream end of the second merging taper in the following situations:*
   a. *When a shadow vehicle is used in the interior closed lane, and the second arrow board is mounted on the shadow vehicle;*
   b. *If alignment or other conditions create any confusion as to which lane is closed by the second arrow board; and*
   c. *When the first arrow board is placed in the closed exterior lane at the downstream end of the first merging taper (the alternative position when the shoulder is narrow).*

Option:

3. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the initial warning signs.
4. A truck-mounted attenuator may be used on the shadow vehicle.
5. If a paved shoulder having a minimum width of 10 feet and sufficient strength is available, the left-hand and adjacent interior lanes may be closed and vehicular traffic carried around the work space on the right-hand lane and a right-hand shoulder.

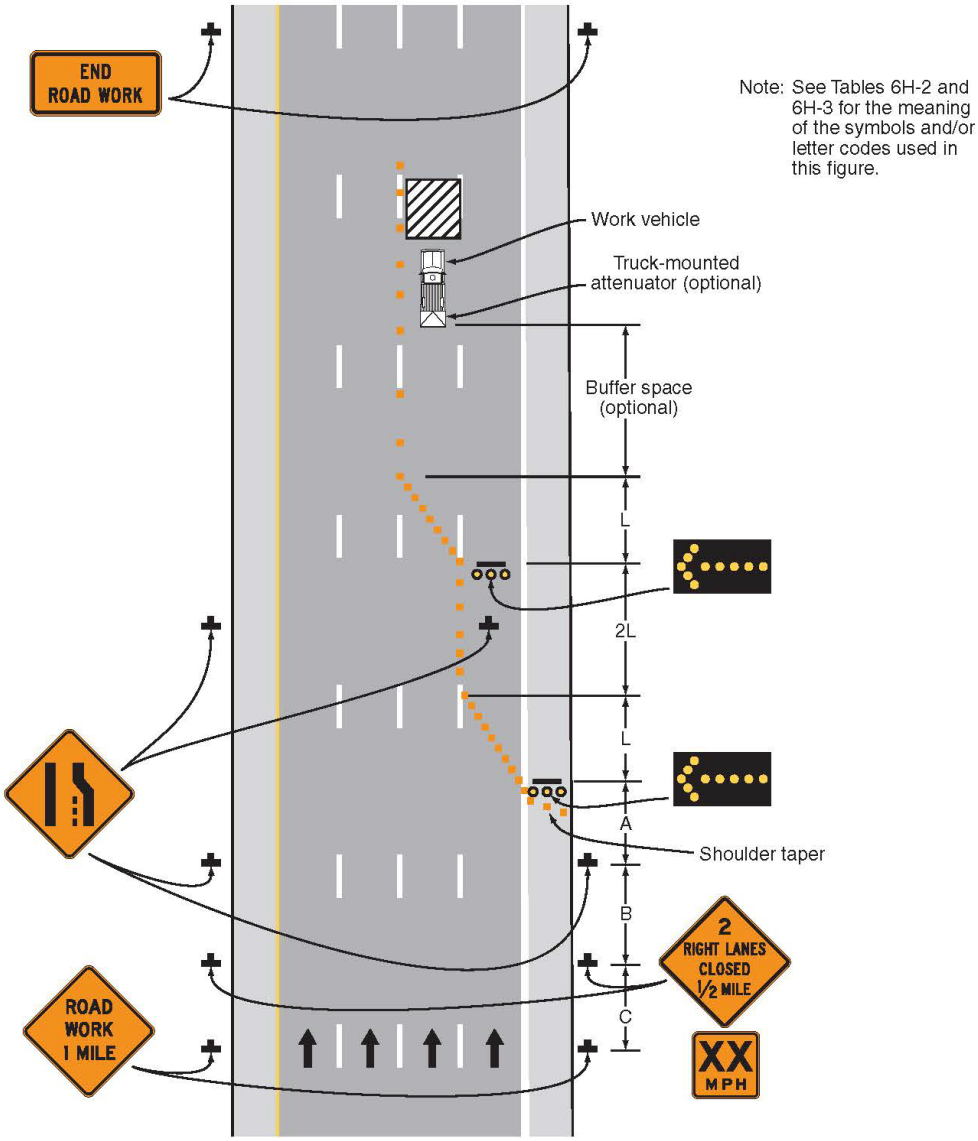
Guidance:

6. *When a shoulder lane is used that cannot adequately accommodate trucks, trucks should be directed to use the normal travel lanes.*

Guidance:

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-37. Double Lane Closure on a Freeway (TA-37)



Typical Application 37

Notes for Figure 6H-38—Typical Application 38
Interior Lane Closure on a Freeway

Standard:

1. **An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**
2. **If temporary traffic barriers are installed, they shall comply with the provisions and requirements in Section 6F.85.**
3. **The barrier shall not be placed along the shifting taper. The lane shall first be shifted using channelizing devices and pavement markings.**
4. **For long-term stationary work, existing conflicting pavement markings shall be removed and temporary markings shall be installed before traffic patterns are changed.**

Guidance:

5. *For a long-term closure, a barrier should be used to provide additional safety to the operation in the closed interior lane. A buffer space should be used at the upstream end of the closed interior lane.*
6. *The first arrow board displaying an arrow pointing to the right should be on the left-hand shoulder at the beginning of the taper. The arrow board displaying a double arrow should be centered in the closed interior lane and placed at the downstream end of the shifting taper.*
7. *If the two arrow boards create confusion, the 2L distance between the end of the merging taper and beginning of the shift taper should be extended so that road users can focus on one arrow board at a time.*
8. *The placement of signs should not obstruct or obscure arrow boards.*
9. *For long-term use, the dashed lane lines should be made solid white in the two-lane section.*

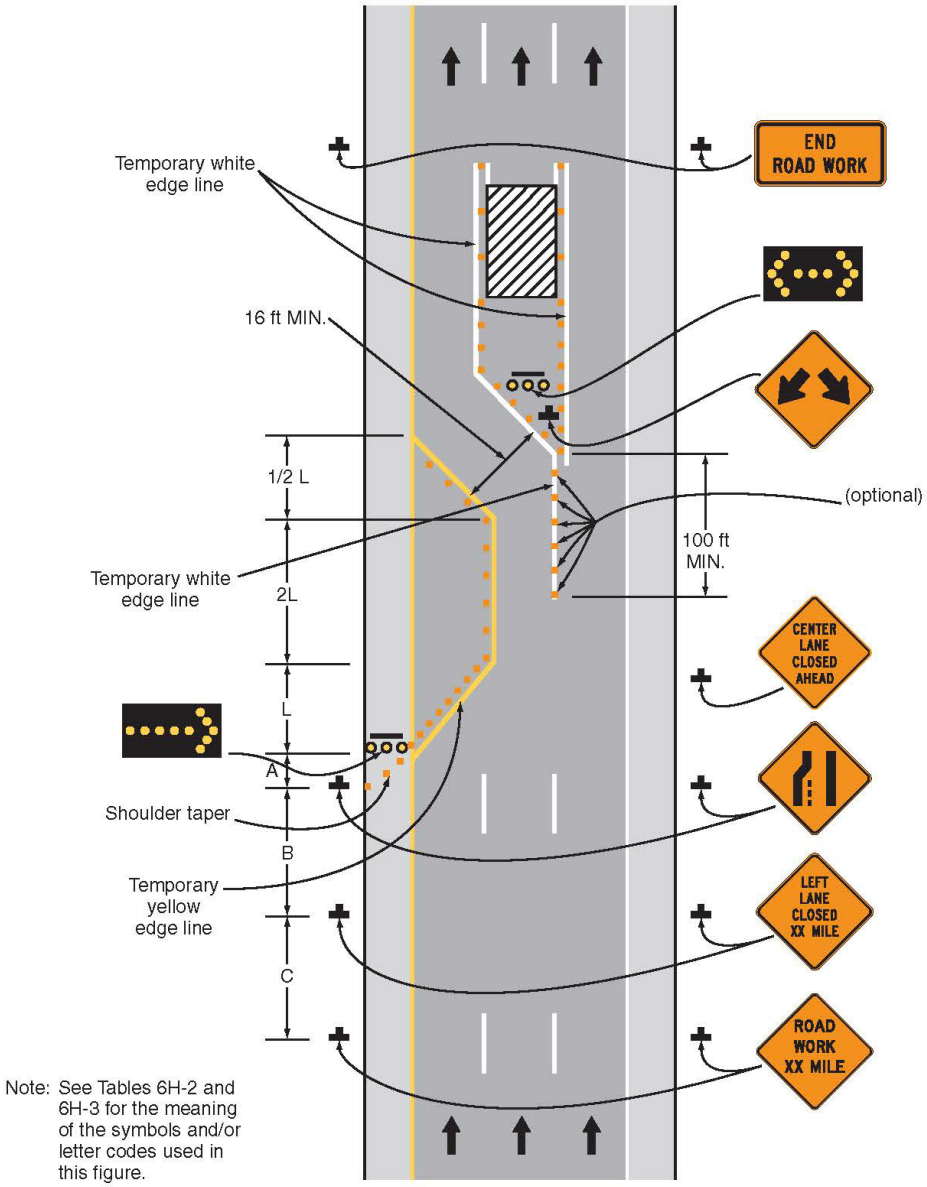
Option:

10. As an alternative to initially closing the left-hand lane, as shown in the typical application, the right-hand lane may be closed in advance of the interior lane closure with appropriate channelization and signs.
11. A short, single row of channelizing devices in advance of the vehicular traffic split to restrict vehicular traffic to their respective lanes may be added.
12. DO NOT PASS signs may be used.
13. If a paved shoulder having a minimum width of 10 feet and sufficient strength is available, the left-hand and center lanes may be closed and motor vehicle traffic carried around the work space on the right-hand lane and a right-hand shoulder.

Guidance:

14. *When a shoulder lane is used that cannot adequately accommodate trucks, trucks should be directed to use the normal travel lanes.*

Figure 6H-38. Interior Lane Closure on a Freeway (TA-38)



Typical Application 38

Notes for Figure 6H-39—Typical Application 39
Median Crossover on a Freeway

Standard:

1. **Channelizing devices or temporary traffic barriers shall be used to separate opposing vehicular traffic.**
2. **An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**

Guidance:

3. *For long-term work on high-speed, high-volume highways, consideration should be given to using a temporary traffic barrier to separate opposing vehicular traffic.*

Option:

4. When a temporary traffic barrier is used to separate opposing vehicular traffic, the Two-Way Traffic, DO NOT PASS, KEEP RIGHT, and DO NOT ENTER signs may be eliminated.
5. The alignment of the crossover may be designed as a reverse curve.

Guidance:

6. *When the crossover follows a curved alignment, the design criteria contained in the AASHTO "Policy on the Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" (see Section 1A.11) should be used.*
7. *When channelizing devices have the potential of leading vehicular traffic out of the intended traffic space, the channelizing devices should be extended a distance in feet of 2.0 times the speed limit in mph beyond the downstream end of the transition area as depicted.*
8. *Where channelizing devices are used, the Two-Way Traffic signs should be repeated every 1 mile.*

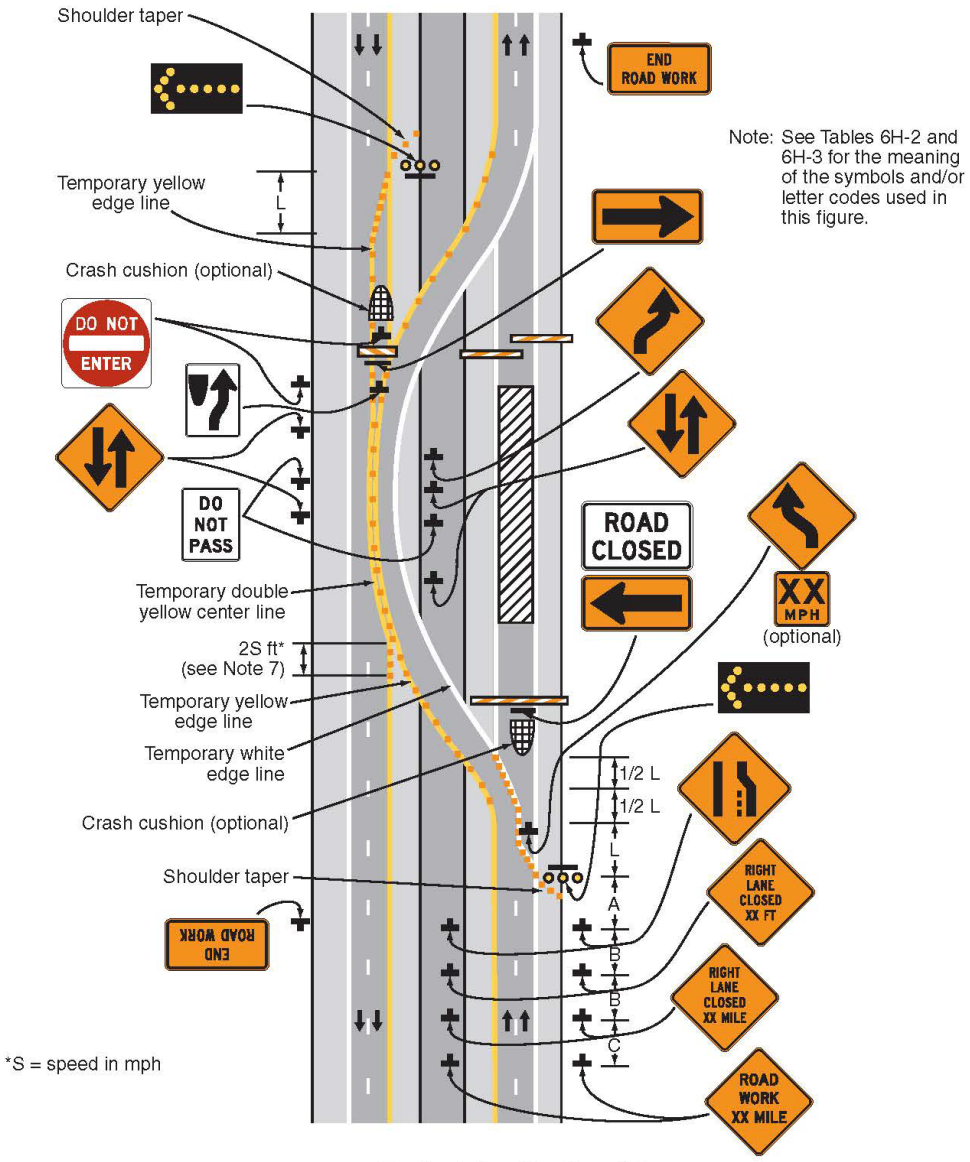
Option:

9. NEXT XX MILES Supplemental Distance plaques may be used with the Two-Way Traffic signs, where XX is the distance to the downstream end of the two-way section.

Support:

10. When the distance is sufficiently short that road users entering the section can see the downstream end of the section, they are less likely to forget that there is opposing vehicular traffic.
11. The sign legends for the four pairs of signs approaching the lane closure for the non-crossover direction of travel are not shown. They are similar to the series shown for the crossover direction, except that the left-hand lane is closed.

Figure 6H-39. Median Crossover on a Freeway (TA-39)



Typical Application 39

Notes for Figure 6H-40—Typical Application 40
Median Crossover for an Entrance Ramp

Guidance:

1. *The typical application illustrated should be used for carrying an entrance ramp across a closed directional roadway of a divided highway.*
2. *A temporary acceleration lane should be used to facilitate merging.*
3. *When used, the YIELD or STOP sign should be located far enough forward to provide adequate sight distance of oncoming mainline vehicular traffic to select an acceptable gap, but should not be located so far forward that motorists will be encouraged to stop in the path of the mainline traffic. If needed, yield or stop lines should be installed across the ramp to indicate the point at which road users should yield or stop. Also, a longer acceleration lane should be provided beyond the sign to reduce the gap size needed.*

Option:

4. If vehicular traffic conditions allow, the ramp may be closed.
5. A broken edge line may be carried across the temporary entrance ramp to assist in defining the through vehicular traffic lane.
6. When a temporary traffic barrier is used to separate opposing vehicular traffic, the Two-Way Traffic signs and the DO NOT ENTER signs may be eliminated.

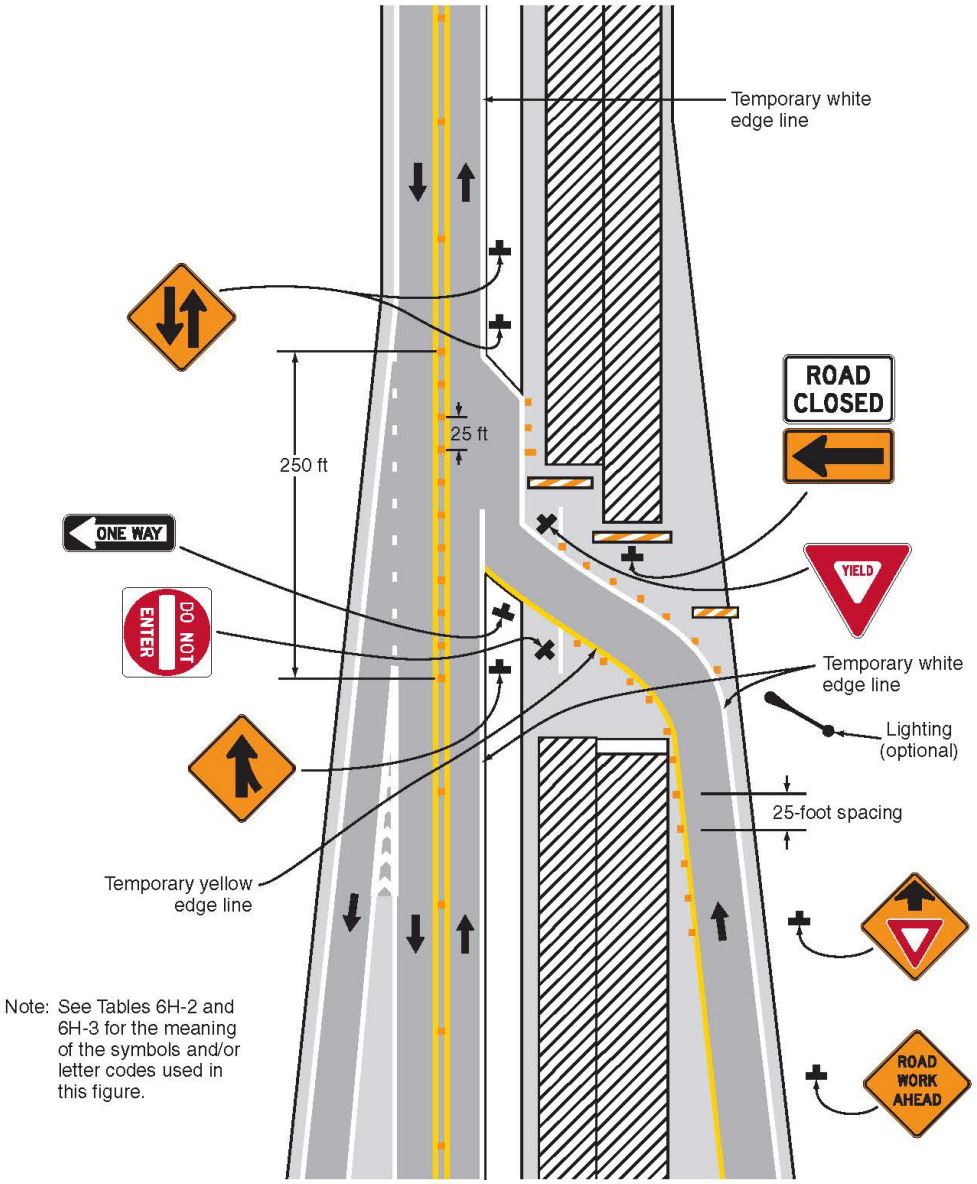
Option:

The acceleration lane may be omitted.

Guidance:

Use of a YIELD or STOP sign should be based on engineering judgment.

Figure 6H-40. Median Crossover for an Entrance Ramp (TA-40)



Typical Application 40

Notes for Figure 6H-41—Typical Application 41
Median Crossover for an Exit Ramp

Guidance:

1. *This typical application should be used for carrying an exit ramp across a closed directional roadway of a divided highway. The design criteria contained in the AASHTO "Policy on the Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" (see Section 1A.11) should be used for determining the curved alignment.*
2. *The guide signs should indicate that the ramp is open, and where the temporary ramp is located. Conversely, if the ramp is closed, guide signs should indicate that the ramp is closed.*
3. *When the exit is closed, a black on orange EXIT CLOSED sign panel should be placed diagonally across the interchange/intersection guide signs and channelizing devices should be placed to physically close the ramp.*
4. *In the situation (not shown) where channelizing devices are placed along the mainline roadway, the devices' spacing should be reduced in the vicinity of the off ramp to emphasize the opening at the ramp itself. Channelizing devices and/or temporary pavement markings should be placed on both sides of the temporary ramp where it crosses the median and the closed roadway.*
5. *Advance guide signs providing information related to the temporary exit should be relocated or duplicated adjacent to the temporary roadway.*

Standard:

6. **A temporary EXIT sign shall be located in the temporary gore. For better visibility, it shall be mounted a minimum of 7 feet from the pavement surface to the bottom of the sign.**

Option:

7. Guide signs referring to the exit may need to be relocated to the median.
8. The temporary EXIT sign placed in the temporary gore may be either black on orange or white on green.
9. In some instances, a temporary deceleration lane may be useful in facilitating the exiting maneuver.
10. When a temporary traffic barrier is used to separate opposing vehicular traffic, the Two-Way Traffic signs may be omitted.

Option:

The acceleration lane may be omitted.

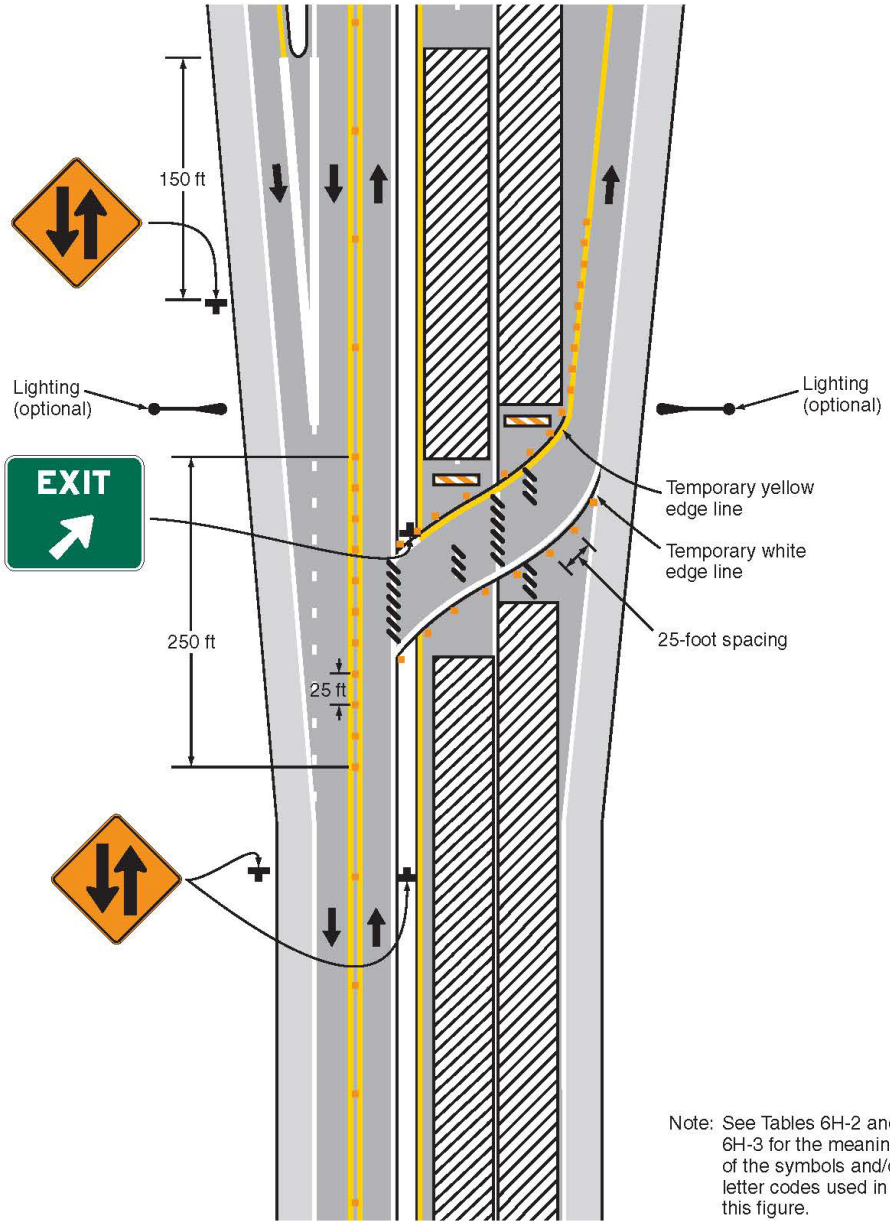
Guidance:

Use of a YIELD or STOP sign should be based on engineering judgment.

Option:

The EXIT CLOSED panel may be placed horizontally across or below the interchange/intersection guide signs.

Figure 6H-41. Median Crossover for an Exit Ramp (TA-41)



Typical Application 41

Notes for Figure 6H-42—Typical Application 42
Work in the Vicinity of an Exit Ramp

Guidance:

1. *The guide signs should indicate that the ramp is open, and where the temporary ramp is located. However, if the ramp is closed, guide signs should indicate that the ramp is closed.*
2. *When the exit ramp is closed, a black on orange EXIT CLOSED sign panel should be placed diagonally across the interchange/intersection guide signs.*
3. *The design criteria contained in the AASHTO "Policy on the Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" (see Section 1A.11) should be used for determining the alignment.*

Standard:

4. **A temporary EXIT sign shall be located in the temporary gore. For better visibility, it shall be mounted a minimum of 7 feet from the pavement surface to the bottom of the sign.**

Option:

5. The temporary EXIT sign placed in the temporary gore may be either black on orange or white on green.
6. An alternative procedure that may be used is to channelize exiting vehicular traffic onto the right-hand shoulder and close the lane as necessary.

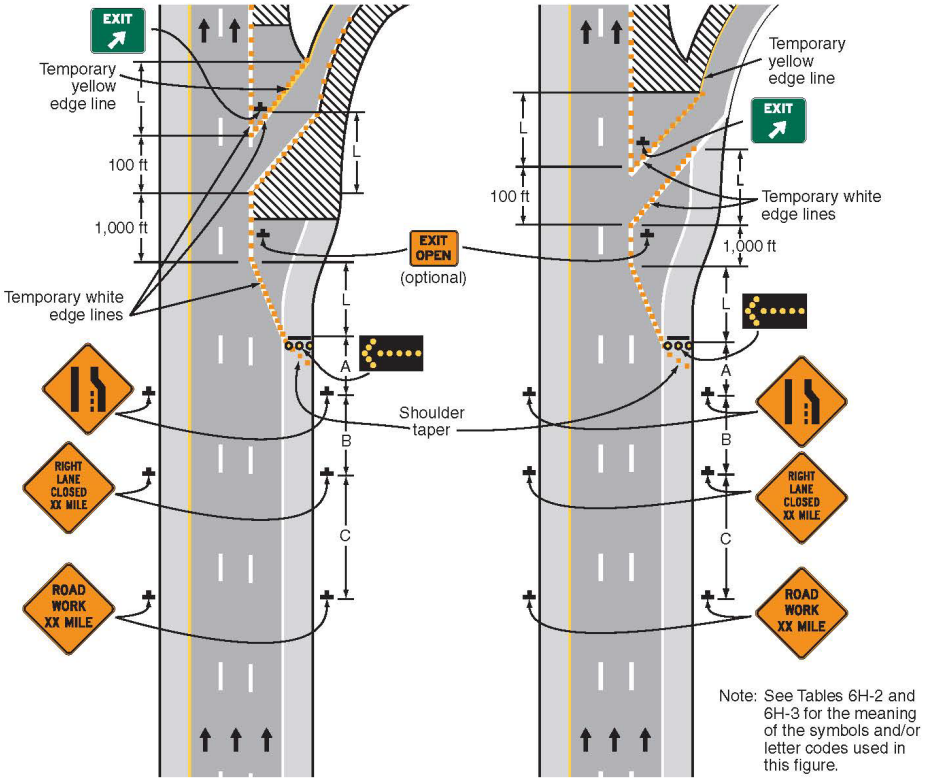
Standard:

7. **An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**

Option:

The EXIT CLOSED panel may be placed horizontally across or below the interchange/intersection guide signs.

Figure 6H-42. Work in the Vicinity of an Exit Ramp (TA-42)



Typical Application 42

Notes for Figure 6H-43—Typical Application 43
Partial Exit Ramp Closure

Guidance:

1. *Truck off-tracking should be considered when determining whether the minimum lane width of 10 feet is adequate (see Section 6G.08).*

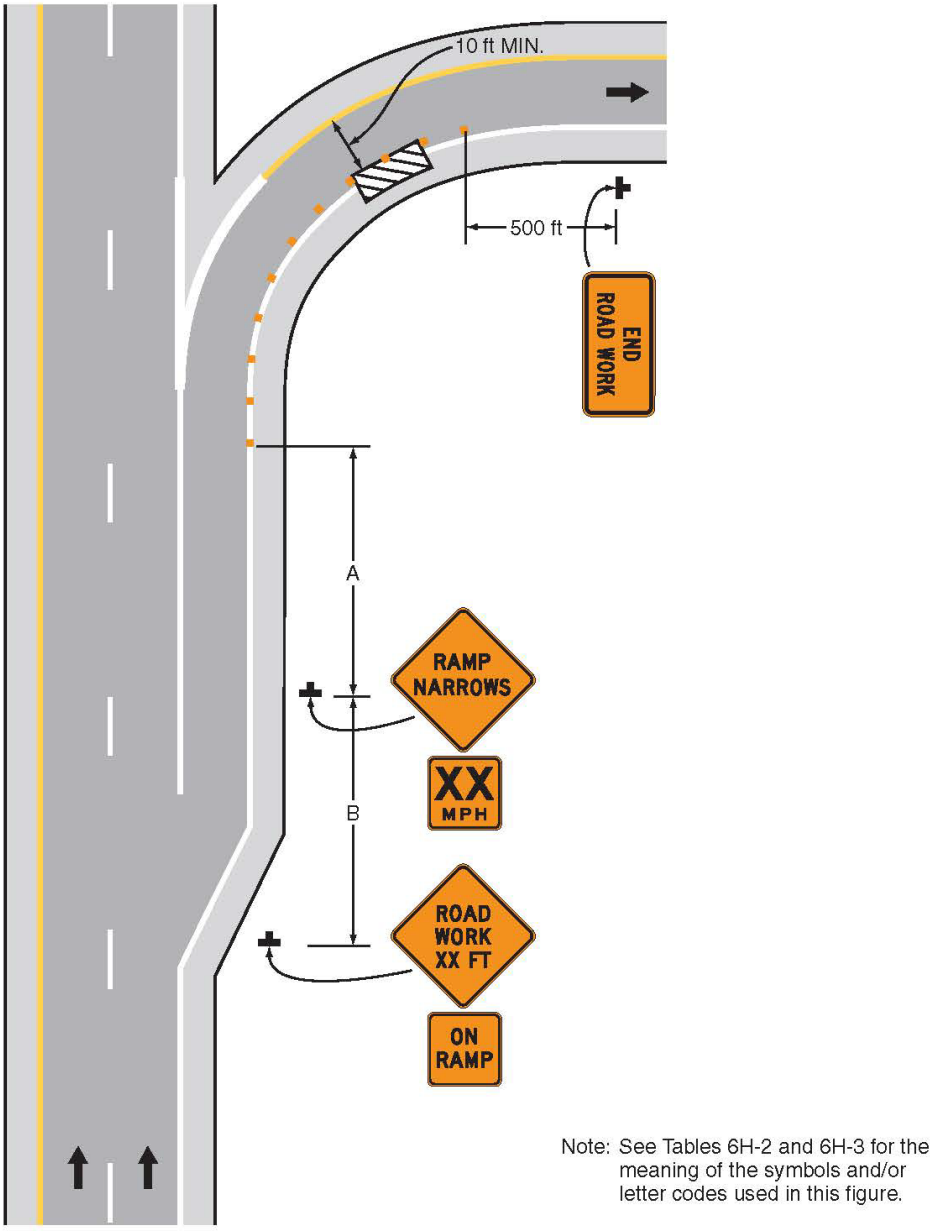
Option:

As an alternative to the ROAD WORK XXXX FT sign with supplementary ON RAMP plaque, a RAMP WORK XXXX FT or RAMP WORK AHEAD sign may be used.

Guidance:

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-43. Partial Exit Ramp Closure (TA-43)



Typical Application 43

Notes for Figure 6H-44—Typical Application 44
Work in the Vicinity of an Entrance Ramp

Guidance:

1. *An acceleration lane of sufficient length should be provided whenever possible as shown on the diagram on the left.*

Standard:

2. **For the information shown on the diagram on the right-hand side of the typical application, where inadequate acceleration distance exists for the temporary entrance, the YIELD sign shall be replaced with STOP signs (one on each side of the approach).**

Guidance:

3. *When used, the YIELD or STOP sign should be located so that ramp vehicular traffic has adequate sight distance of oncoming mainline vehicular traffic to select an acceptable gap in the mainline vehicular traffic flow, but should not be located so far forward that motorists will be encouraged to stop in the path of the mainline traffic. Also, a longer acceleration lane should be provided beyond the sign to reduce the gap size needed. If insufficient gaps are available, consideration should be given to closing the ramp.*
4. *Where STOP signs are used, a temporary stop line should be placed across the ramp at the desired stop location.*
5. *The mainline merging taper with the arrow board at its starting point should be located sufficiently in advance so that the arrow board is not confusing to drivers on the entrance ramp, and so that the mainline merging vehicular traffic from the lane closure has the opportunity to stabilize before encountering the vehicular traffic merging from the ramp.*
6. *If the ramp curves sharply to the right, warning signs with advisory speeds located in advance of the entrance terminal should be placed in pairs (one on each side of the ramp).*

Option:

7. A Stop Beacon (see Section 4L.05) or a Type B high-intensity warning flasher with a red lens may be placed above the STOP sign.
8. Where the acceleration distance is significantly reduced, a supplemental plaque may be placed below the Yield Ahead sign reading NO MERGE AREA.

Standard:

9. **An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**

Option:

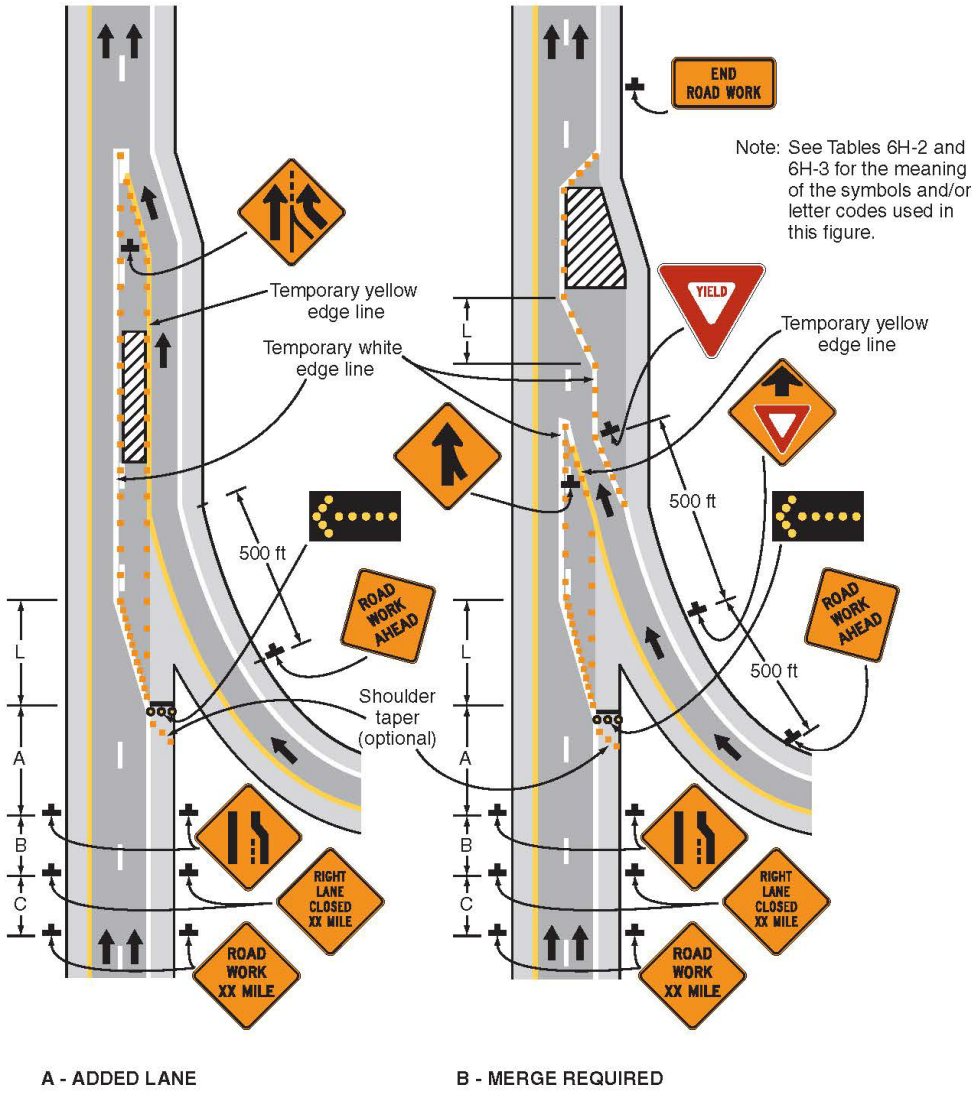
The acceleration lane may be omitted.

Guidance:

Use of a YIELD or STOP sign should be based on engineering judgment.

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-44. Work in the Vicinity of an Entrance Ramp (TA-44)



Typical Application 44

Notes for Figure 6H-45—Typical Application 45
Temporary Reversible Lane Using Movable Barriers

Support:

1. This application addresses one of several uses for movable barriers (see Section 6F.85) in highway work zones. In this example, one side of a 6-lane divided highway is closed to perform the work operation, and vehicular traffic is carried in both directions on the remaining 3-lane roadway by means of a median crossover.

   To accommodate unbalanced peak-period vehicular traffic volumes, the direction of travel in the center lane is switched to the direction having the greater volume, with the transfer typically being made twice daily. Thus, there are four vehicular traffic phases described as follows:

   a. Phase A—two travel lanes northbound and one lane southbound;
   b. Transition A to B—one travel lane in each direction;
   c. Phase B—one travel lane northbound and two lanes southbound; and
   d. Transition B to A—one travel lane in each direction.

   The typical application on the left illustrates the placement of devices during Phase A. The typical application on the right shows conditions during the transition (Transition A to B) from Phase A to Phase B.

Guidance:

2. *For the reversible-lane situation depicted, the ends of the movable barrier should terminate in a protected area or a crash cushion should be provided. During Phase A, the transfer vehicle should be parked behind the downstream end of the movable barrier for southbound traffic as shown in the typical application on the left. During Phase B, the transfer vehicle should be parked behind between the downstream ends of the movable barriers at the north end of the TTC zone as shown in the typical application on the right.*

   The transition shift from Phase A to B should be as follows:

   a. Change the signs in the northbound advance warning area and transition area from a LEFT LANE CLOSED AHEAD to a 2 LEFT LANES CLOSED AHEAD. Change the mode of the second northbound arrow board from Caution to Right Arrow.
   b. Place channelizing devices to close the northbound center lane.
   c. Move the transfer vehicle from south to north to shift the movable barrier from the west side to the east side of the reversible lane.
   d. Remove the channelizing devices closing the southbound center lane.
   e. Change the signs in the southbound transition area and advance warning area from a 2 LEFT LANES CLOSED AHEAD to a LEFT LANE CLOSED AHEAD. Change the mode of the second southbound arrow board from Right Arrow to Caution.

3. *Where the lane to be opened and closed is an exterior lane (adjacent to the edge of the traveled way or the work space), the lane closure should begin by closing the lane with channelizing devices placed along a merging taper using the same information employed for a stationary lane closure. The lane closure should then be extended with the movable-barrier transfer vehicle moving with vehicular traffic. When opening the lane, the transfer vehicle should travel against vehicular traffic. The merging taper should be removed in a method similar to a stationary lane closure.*

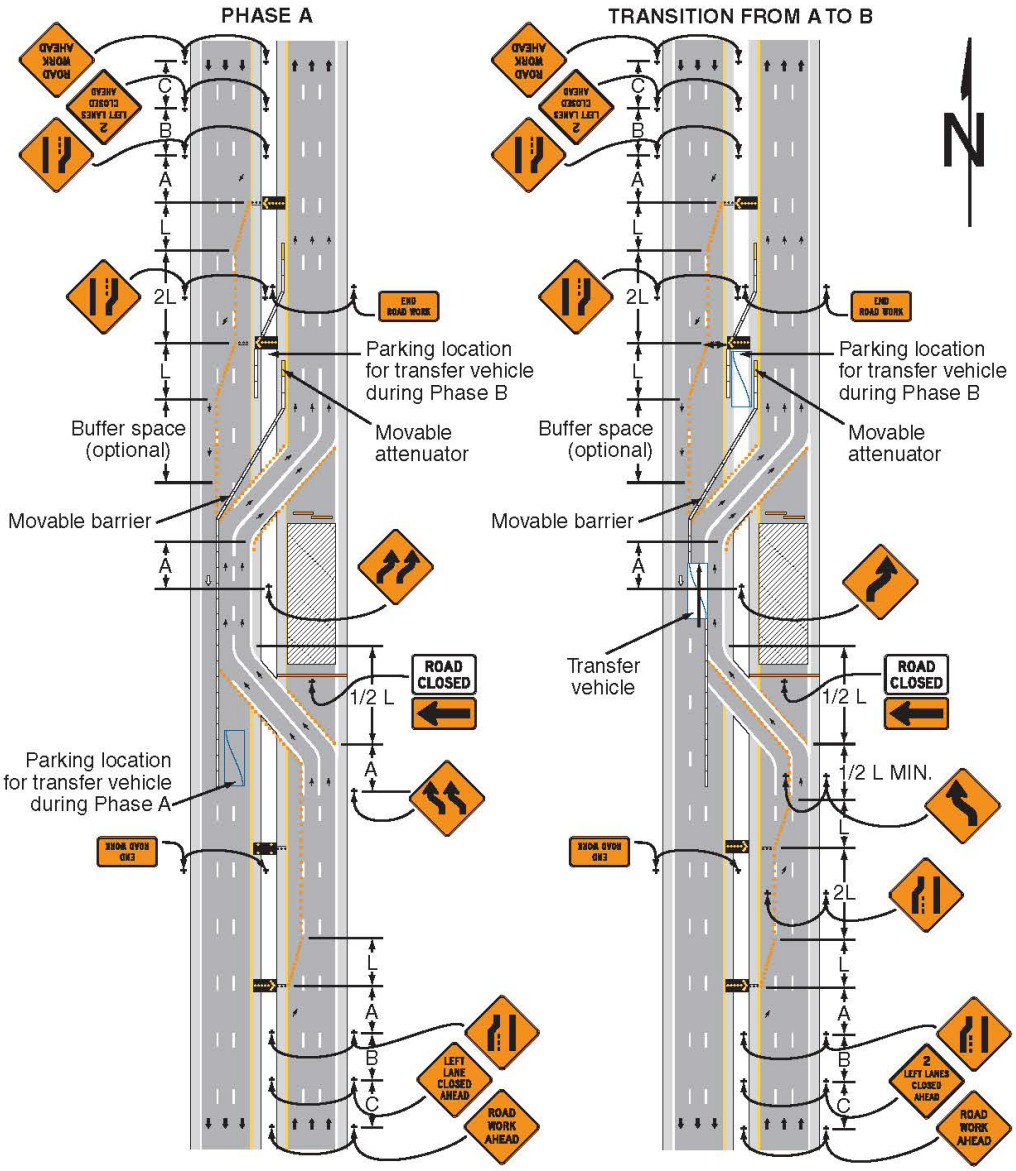
Option:

4. The procedure may be used during a peak period of vehicular traffic and then changed to provide two lanes in the other direction for the other peak.
5. A longitudinal buffer space may be used in the activity area to separate opposing vehicular traffic.
6. A work vehicle or a shadow vehicle may be equipped with a truck-mounted attenuator.

Standard:

7. **An arrow board shall be used when a freeway lane is closed. When more than one freeway lane is closed, a separate arrow board shall be used for each closed lane.**

Figure 6H-45. Temporary Reversible Lane Using Movable Barriers (TA-45)



Typical Application 45

Note: See Tables 6H-2 and 6H-3 for the meaning of the symbols and/or letter codes used in this figure. Although leader lines point to the signs on the right-hand side of the roadway, most of these signs should be installed on both sides of the roadway.

Notes for Figure 6H-46—Typical Application 46
Work in the Vicinity of a Grade Crossing

Guidance:

1. *When grade crossings exist either within or in the vicinity of roadway work activities, extra care should be taken to minimize the probability of conditions being created, by lane restrictions, flagging, or other operations, where vehicles might be stopped within the grade crossing, considered as being 15 feet on either side of the closest and farthest rail.*

Standard:

2. **If the queuing of vehicles across active rail tracks cannot be avoided, a uniformed law enforcement officer or flagger shall be provided at the grade crossing to prevent vehicles from stopping within the grade crossing (as described in Note 1), even if automatic warning devices are in place.**

Guidance:

3. *Early coordination with the railroad company or light rail transit agency should occur before work starts.*
4. *In the example depicted, the buffer space of the activity area should be extended upstream of the grade crossing (as shown) so that a queue created by the flagging operation will not extend across the grade crossing.*
5. *The DO NOT STOP ON TRACKS sign should be used on all approaches to a grade crossing within the limits of a TTC zone.*

Option:

6. Flashing warning lights and/or flags may be used to call attention to the advance warning signs.
7. A BE PREPARED TO STOP sign may be added to the sign series.

Guidance:

8. *When used, the BE PREPARED TO STOP sign should be located before the Flagger symbol sign.*

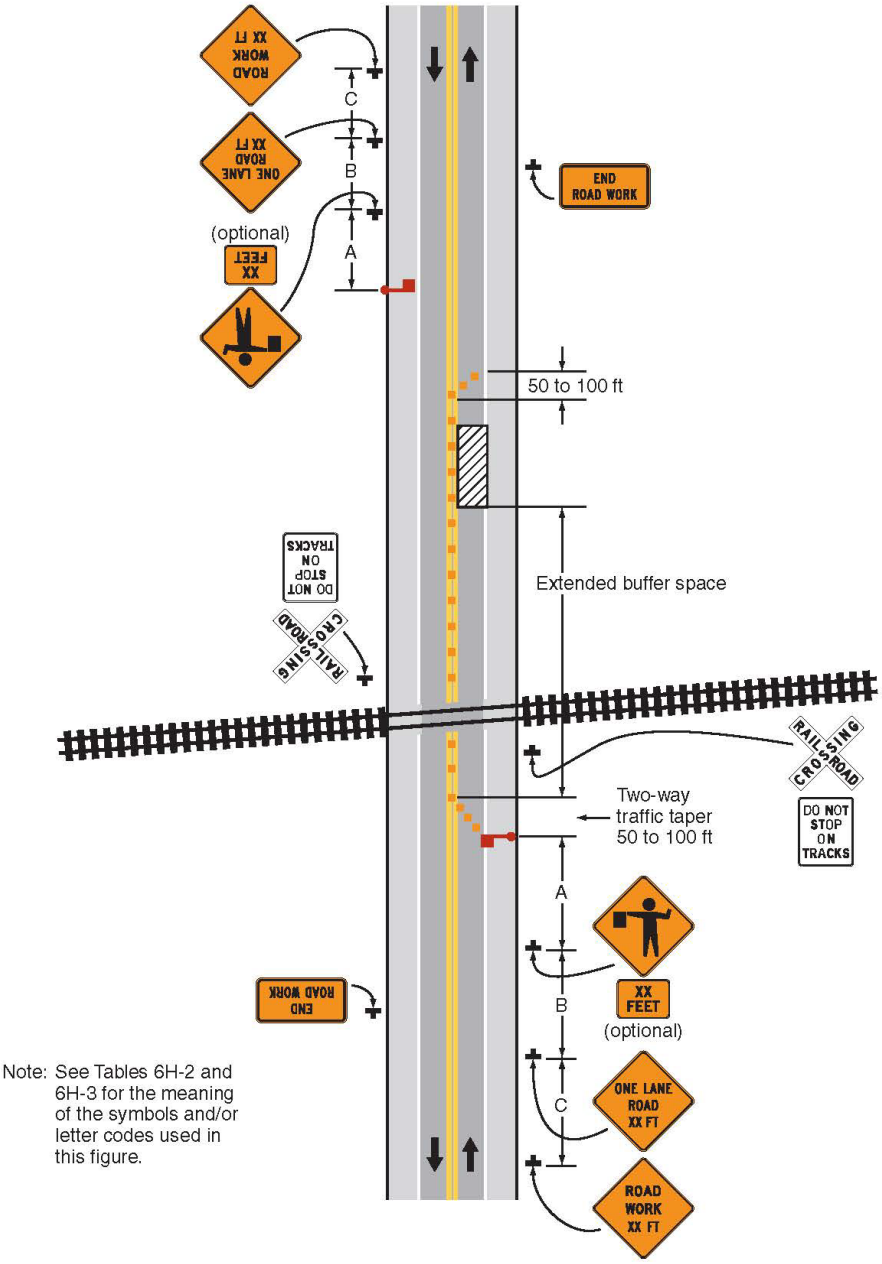
Standard:

9. **At night, flagger stations shall be illuminated, except in emergencies.**

Guidance:

The END ROAD WORK sign should be used on long-term stationary work lasting more than seven (7) days.

Figure 6H-46. Work in the Vicinity of a Grade Crossing (TA-46)



Typical Application 46

CHAPTER 6I. CONTROL OF TRAFFIC THROUGH TRAFFIC INCIDENT MANAGEMENT AREAS

Section 6I.01 General

Support:

1 The National Incident Management System (NIMS) requires the use of the Incident Command System (ICS) at traffic incident management scenes.

2 A traffic incident is an emergency road user occurrence, a natural disaster, or other unplanned event that affects or impedes the normal flow of traffic.

3 A traffic incident management area is an area of a highway where temporary traffic controls are installed, as authorized by a public authority or the official having jurisdiction of the roadway, in response to a road user incident, natural disaster, hazardous material spill, or other unplanned incident. It is a type of TTC zone and extends from the first warning device (such as a sign, light, or cone) to the last TTC device or to a point where vehicles return to the original lane alignment and are clear of the incident.

4 Traffic incidents can be divided into three general classes of duration, each of which has unique traffic control characteristics and needs. These classes are:

A. Major—expected duration of more than 2 hours,
B. Intermediate—expected duration of 30 minutes to 2 hours, and
C. Minor—expected duration under 30 minutes.

5 The primary functions of TTC at a traffic incident management area are to inform road users of the incident and to provide guidance information on the path to follow through the incident area. Alerting road users and establishing a well defined path to guide road users through the incident area will serve to protect the incident responders and those involved in working at the incident scene and will aid in moving road users expeditiously past or around the traffic incident, will reduce the likelihood of secondary traffic crashes, and will preclude unnecessary use of the surrounding local road system. Examples include a stalled vehicle blocking a lane, a traffic crash blocking the traveled way, a hazardous material spill along a highway, and natural disasters such as floods and severe storm damage.

Guidance:

6 *In order to reduce response time for traffic incidents, highway agencies, appropriate public safety agencies (law enforcement, fire and rescue, emergency communications, emergency medical, and other emergency management), and private sector responders (towing and recovery and hazardous materials contractors) should mutually plan for occurrences of traffic incidents along the major and heavily traveled highway and street system.*

7 *On-scene responder organizations should train their personnel in TTC practices for accomplishing their tasks in and near traffic and in the requirements for traffic incident management contained in this Manual. On-scene responders should take measures to move the incident off the traveled roadway or to provide for appropriate warning. All on-scene responders and news media personnel should constantly be aware of their visibility to oncoming traffic and wear high-visibility apparel.*

8 *Emergency vehicles should be safe-positioned (see definition in Section 1A.13) such that traffic flow through the incident scene is optimized. All emergency vehicles that subsequently arrive should be positioned in a manner that does not interfere with the established temporary traffic flow.*

9 *Responders arriving at a traffic incident should estimate the magnitude of the traffic incident, the expected time duration of the traffic incident, and the expected vehicle queue length, and then should set up the appropriate temporary traffic controls for these estimates.*

Option:

10 Warning and guide signs used for TTC traffic incident management situations may have a black legend and border on a fluorescent pink background (see Figure 6I-1).

Support:

11 While some traffic incidents might be anticipated and planned for, emergencies and disasters might pose more severe and unpredictable problems. The ability to quickly install proper temporary traffic controls might greatly reduce the effects of an incident, such as secondary crashes or excessive traffic delays. An essential part of fire, rescue, spill clean-up, highway agency, and enforcement activities is the proper control of road users through the traffic incident management area in order to protect responders, victims, and other personnel at the site. These

operations might need corroborating legislative authority for the implementation and enforcement of appropriate road user regulations, parking controls, and speed zoning. It is desirable for these statutes to provide sufficient flexibility in the authority for, and implementation of, TTC to respond to the needs of changing conditions found in traffic incident management areas.

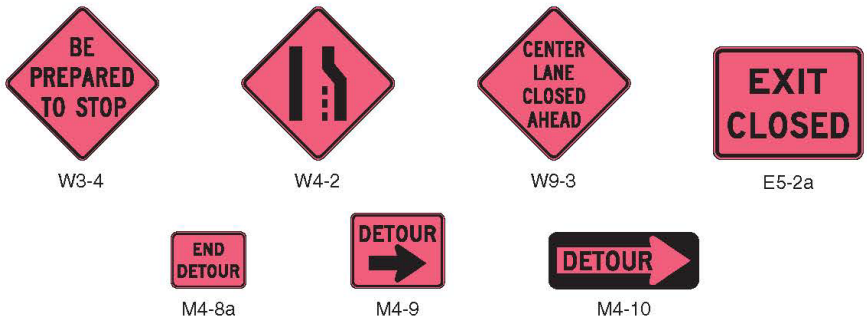
Standard:

Fluorescent pink Detour signs shall not be used.

Option:

12 For traffic incidents, particularly those of an emergency nature, TTC devices on hand may be used for the initial response as long as they do not themselves create unnecessary additional hazards.

Figure 6I-1. Examples of Traffic Incident Management Area Signs



Section 6I.02 Major Traffic Incidents

Support:

1 Major traffic incidents are typically traffic incidents involving hazardous materials, fatal traffic crashes involving numerous vehicles, and other natural or man-made disasters. These traffic incidents typically involve closing all or part of a roadway facility for a period exceeding 2 hours.

Guidance:

2 *If the traffic incident is anticipated to last more than 24 hours, applicable procedures and devices set forth in other Chapters of Part 6 should be used.*

Support:

3 A road closure can be caused by a traffic incident such as a road user crash that blocks the traveled way. Road users are usually diverted through lane shifts or detoured around the traffic incident and back to the original roadway. A combination of traffic engineering and enforcement preparations is needed to determine the detour route, and to install, maintain or operate, and then to remove the necessary traffic control devices when the detour is terminated. Large trucks are a significant concern in such a detour, especially when detouring them from a controlled-access roadway onto local or arterial streets.

4 During traffic incidents, large trucks might need to follow a route separate from that of automobiles because of bridge, weight, clearance, or geometric restrictions. Also, vehicles carrying hazardous material might need to follow a different route from other vehicles.

5 Some traffic incidents such as hazardous material spills might require closure of an entire highway. Through road users must have adequate guidance around the traffic incident. Maintaining good public relations is desirable. The cooperation of the news media in publicizing the existence of, and reasons for, traffic incident management areas and their TTC can be of great assistance in keeping road users and the general public well informed.

6 The establishment, maintenance, and prompt removal of lane diversions can be effectively managed by interagency planning that includes representatives of highway and public safety agencies.

Guidance:

7 *All traffic control devices needed to set up the TTC at a traffic incident should be available so that they can be readily deployed for all major traffic incidents. The TTC should include the proper traffic diversions, tapered lane closures, and upstream warning devices to alert traffic approaching the queue and to encourage early diversion to an appropriate alternative route.*

8 *Attention should be paid to the upstream end of the traffic queue such that warning is given to road users approaching the back of the queue.*

9 *If manual traffic control is needed, it should be provided by qualified flaggers or uniformed law enforcement officers.*

Option:

10 If flaggers are used to provide traffic control for an incident management situation, the flaggers may use appropriate traffic control devices that are readily available or that can be brought to the traffic incident scene on short notice.

Guidance:

11 *When light sticks or flares are used to establish the initial traffic control at incident scenes, channelizing devices (see Section 6F.63) should be installed as soon thereafter as practical.*

Option:

12 The light sticks or flares may remain in place if they are being used to supplement the channelizing devices.

Guidance:

13 *The light sticks, flares, and channelizing devices should be removed after the incident is terminated.*

Section 6I.03 Intermediate Traffic Incidents

Support:

1 Intermediate traffic incidents typically affect travel lanes for a time period of 30 minutes to 2 hours, and usually require traffic control on the scene to divert road users past the blockage. Full roadway closures might be needed for short periods during traffic incident clearance to allow traffic incident responders to accomplish their tasks.

2 The establishment, maintenance, and prompt removal of lane diversions can be effectively managed by interagency planning that includes representatives of highway and public safety agencies.

Guidance:

3 *All traffic control devices needed to set up the TTC at a traffic incident should be available so that they can be readily deployed for intermediate traffic incidents. The TTC should include the proper traffic diversions, tapered lane closures, and upstream warning devices to alert traffic approaching the queue and to encourage early diversion to an appropriate alternative route.*

4 *Attention should be paid to the upstream end of the traffic queue such that warning is given to road users approaching the back of the queue.*

5 *If manual traffic control is needed, it should be provided by qualified flaggers or uniformed law enforcement officers.*

Option:

6 If flaggers are used to provide traffic control for an incident management situation, the flaggers may use appropriate traffic control devices that are readily available or that can be brought to the traffic incident scene on short notice.

Guidance:

7 *When light sticks or flares are used to establish the initial traffic control at incident scenes, channelizing devices (see Section 6F.63) should be installed as soon thereafter as practical.*

Option:

8 The light sticks or flares may remain in place if they are being used to supplement the channelizing devices.

Guidance:

9 *The light sticks, flares, and channelizing devices should be removed after the incident is terminated.*

Section 6I.04 Minor Traffic Incidents

Support:

1 Minor traffic incidents are typically disabled vehicles and minor crashes that result in lane closures of less than 30 minutes. On-scene responders are typically law enforcement and towing companies, and occasionally highway agency service patrol vehicles.

2 Diversion of traffic into other lanes is often not needed or is needed only briefly. It is not generally possible or practical to set up a lane closure with traffic control devices for a minor traffic incident. Traffic control is the responsibility of on-scene responders.

Guidance:

3 *When a minor traffic incident blocks a travel lane, it should be removed from that lane to the shoulder as quickly as possible.*

Section 6I.05 Use of Emergency-Vehicle Lighting

Support:

1 The use of emergency-vehicle lighting (such as high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights) is essential, especially in the initial stages of a traffic incident, for the safety of emergency responders and persons involved in the traffic incident, as well as road users approaching the traffic incident. Emergency-vehicle lighting, however, provides warning only and provides no effective traffic control. The use of too many lights at an incident scene can be distracting and can create confusion for approaching road users, especially at night. Road users approaching the traffic incident from the opposite direction on a divided facility are often distracted by emergency-vehicle lighting and slow their vehicles to look at the traffic incident posing a hazard to themselves and others traveling in their direction.

2 The use of emergency-vehicle lighting can be reduced if good traffic control has been established at a traffic incident scene. This is especially true for major traffic incidents that might involve a number of emergency vehicles. If good traffic control is established through placement of advance warning signs and traffic control devices to divert or detour traffic, then public safety agencies can perform their tasks on scene with minimal emergency-vehicle lighting.

Guidance:

3 *Public safety agencies should examine their policies on the use of emergency-vehicle lighting, especially after a traffic incident scene is secured, with the intent of reducing the use of this lighting as much as possible while not endangering those at the scene. Special consideration should be given to reducing or extinguishing forward facing emergency-vehicle lighting, especially on divided roadways, to reduce distractions to oncoming road users.*

4 *Because the glare from floodlights or vehicle headlights can impair the nighttime vision of approaching road users, any floodlights or vehicle headlights that are not needed for illumination, or to provide notice to other road users of an incident response vehicle being in an unexpected location, should be turned off at night.*